Class G125
Book .M68
1850

1400
3609

STAGES OF SOCIETY.

MITCHELL'S SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY.

THIRD REVISED EDITION.

A SYSTEM OF

MODERN GEOGRAPHY,

COMPRISING A DESCRIPTION OF THE PRESENT STATE OF THE

WORLD,

AND ITS FIVE GREAT DIVISIONS,

AMERICA, EUROPE, ASIA, AFRICA AND OCEANICA,

WITH THEIR SEVERAL

EMPIRES, KINGDOMS, STATES, TERRITORIES, ETC.

EMBELLISHED BY NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS.

ADAPTED TO THE CAPACITY OF YOUTH.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
CITY OF WASHINGTON

ILLUSTRATED BY AN

ATLAS OF TWENTY-EIGHT MAPS,

DRAWN AND ENGRAVED TO ACCOMPANY THE WORK.

BY S. AUGUSTUS MITCHELL.

PHILADELPHIA:
THOMAS, COWPERTHWAIT & CO.
1850.

G125
.M68
1850

Entered, according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1849, by
S. AUGUSTUS MITCHELL,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States, for the Eastern District of Pennsylvania.

PRINTED BY SMITH AND PETERS,
Franklin Buildings, 6th St., below Arch.

ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE THIRD REVISED EDITION.

The various changes, political and territorial, that have occurred in our own country, as well as in other parts of the world, within the last few years, have rendered indispensable a new revision of the present Geography and Atlas. In making the necessary alterations and additions, the latest and most authentic sources of information have been in all cases consulted; and special care has been taken to avoid infringing in any manner upon the original arrangement and style of the work; while the improvements introduced into it are believed to be of such a nature as will assist in sustaining its high character, and materially increase its usefulness for the purposes of edueation.

The recent conquest of the Mexican provinces of Upper California and New Mexico, and their cession to the United States, as well as the organization of the new territory of Minnesota, have all been appropriately treated in the text, and their position and bounds correctly represented on the general map of the United States; while, at the same time, on many of the state maps, such improvements have been made by the insertion of New Counties, Railroads, Towns, &c., as are demanded by the rapid social increase of all sections of the Union. The Maps of Foreign Countries also have received such corrections as recent changes have rendered necessary. The addition of a new Map in the Atlas, comprising Mexico, Guatimala, and the West Indies, will still further enhance the value of that portion of the work, and render it the most complete of all the books of its class.

Since the first publication of the present work, ten years ago, it has undergone three distinct revisions, and very considerable additions have been made in every portion of it. The Maps of the Atlas have been increased from sixteen to twenty-eight in number, the geographical and statistical tables have been added entire, and a variety of necessary alterations have been made in the text, the whole of which the author and publishers are pleased to learn have been highly approved by their numerous friends among the Teachers in all parts of the Union; and they confidently hope that the present edition will be found still more entitled to the high degree of popular favour with which the former impressions have been every where received.

Philadelphia, October 1st, 1849.

INTRODUCTION.

GEOGRAPHY is a description of the world, with its inhabitants and productions. It is not only an entertaining and curious, but highly useful study. It opens and enlarges the mind; gives a true knowledge of the various situations of countries, with their rivers, mountains, &c.; and is of such importance in history, that without it, nothing can be understood with either satisfaction or correctness.

It must have attracted the attention of mankind at a very early period. The desire to become acquainted with the country they lived in, and to determine and establish its boundaries, would naturally direct their attention to it.

The study of Geography will enable young persons, when they hear of distant countries, to tell where they are situated—what are their productions—how they are governed, and what kind of people live there. To know these things is very important, and will give all who are acquainted with them an advantage over those who possess not such knowledge: it will be a satisfaction to themselves and to their parents; and will be a proof that they have attended well to their studies.

TO THE PUPIL.

The engraving on the opposite page is a picture of one side of our earth, as it would appear if seen from a great distance. It rolls like an immense ball through the heavens, surrounded on every side by the planets and the countless myriads of stars, all performing their stated motions under the guidance of the great Creator who first called them into existence.

Men live on, and are constantly walking about, this great ball, the earth. Cities and towns are built on it; trees and plants grow on it; and ships sail on the sea: yet the earth is all the time turning round and round, as if you rolled a ball or an apple on the floor, or threw it from you into the air. All this is true; but it is hard to understand. It is done by the power of God, who made us, and all things on the earth, with the sun, the moon, and the vast multitude of stars we see in the sky. "In the beninning, God created the heaven and the earth: the heavens, and all the host of them." Gen. I. II.

MITCHELL'S SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY.

PART FIRST.

GEOGRAPHICAL DEFINITIONS.

—— 1 ——

1. What is Geography?

Ans. A description of the surface of the Earth.

2. What is the surface of the Earth?

A. It is the outside part.

3. How is the surface of the Earth divided?

A. Into land and water.

4. How much of the earth's surface is Land?

A. About one-fourth.

On the map of the World, No. 1., in the Atlas, you will see that there is a great deal more water than land on the earth. The coloured part shows the land; the rest is water.

5. How much more water than land is there on the Earth?

A. There is at least three times more.

6. What is the name given to the chief part of the water on the surface of the earth?

A. The Sea, or Ocean.

7. Is the water of the Ocean salt or fresh?

A. It is salt.

8. How does the Ocean appear?

A. Blue and boundless, like the sky.

9. How wide is it?

A. In some places, 10,000 miles wide; in others, 3000 and 4000, so that ships may sail for weeks, and even months, without coming to land.

10. In what way does the Ocean benefit mankind?

A. It furnishes an abode for innumerable fishes, which are the means of supplying millions of mankind with food and employment: besides this, the ocean renders intercourse between distant countries easy and rapid.

11. For what purpose do ships sail on the Ocean?

A. They carry the productions of our own country to other parts of the world, and bring back in return things that are useful to us.

12. What do our ships take to other countries?

A. They take cotton, flour, tobacco, rice, and many other articles.

13. What do they bring back in return?

A. From some countries, they bring woollen, cotton, and silk goods, which are useful to us for clothing; from some, coffee and sugar; and from others, gold and silver.

— 2 —

14. What is the trade carried on in ships called?

A. It is called Commerce, and is highly useful to mankind.

15. How is it useful?

A. It gives employment to vast numbers of men; and by it we become acquainted with other parts of the Earth.

16. In what other way does the Ocean benefit mankind?

A. The vapour or fog which rises from the ocean, forms rain, which waters the earth, and fills our springs and rivers.

17. What else may be observed of the Ocean?

A. Its saltness prevents it from becoming corrupt, and the constant agitation of its waters, by the winds, preserves it from the extremes of heat and cold.

This shows how wisely God has created all things.

NATURAL DIVISIONS OF WATER.

The Ocean.

18. How is the Ocean divided?

A. Into five great parts, likewise called Oceans.

19. Which are the five Oceans?

A. They are the Northern, Southern, Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans.

20. What other names have some of the Oceans?

A. The Northern is often called the Arctic, and the Southern, the Antarctic Ocean; and the Pacific Ocean is sometimes called the South Sea.

21. Into what other parts is the water divided?

A. Into Seas, Archipelagoes,* Bays, Gulfs, Sounds, Straits, Channels, Lakes, and Rivers.

22. What is a Sea?

A. It is a collection of water, smaller than an ocean, and

---

* Archipelagoes, pronounced Ar-ke-pel-a-goes.

surrounded by land, as the Mediterranean Sea, the Black Sea, &c.

23. What is an Archipelago?

A. A sea filled with islands, as the Grecian Archipelago, east of Greece, or the West Indies, which is sometimes called the Columbian Archipelago.

24. What is a Gulf or Bay?

A. A part of the Sea, extending into the land, as the Gulf of Mexico, Hudson's Bay.

25. What is a Strait?

A. A narrow passage, connecting different bodies of water, as the Strait of Gibraltar, &c.

26. What is a Sound?

A. A small sea, so shallow that its depth may be measured by a line dropped from the surface to the bottom, as Long Island Sound, Pamlico Sound.

A Harbour.

27. What is a Channel?

A. A passage of water, wider than a Strait, as the English Channel.

28. What is a Harbour or Haven?

A. A small bay, where vessels may remain at anchor in safety.

A Lake.

29. What is a Lake?

A. A collection of water, surrounded by land, as Lake

Superior, Lake Winnipeg, or the Lake of Geneva, in Switzerland.

30. Where are the largest Lakes to be found?

A. In North America: they are so wide and deep, that the largest ships may sail on them.

31. Is the water of lakes salt or fresh?

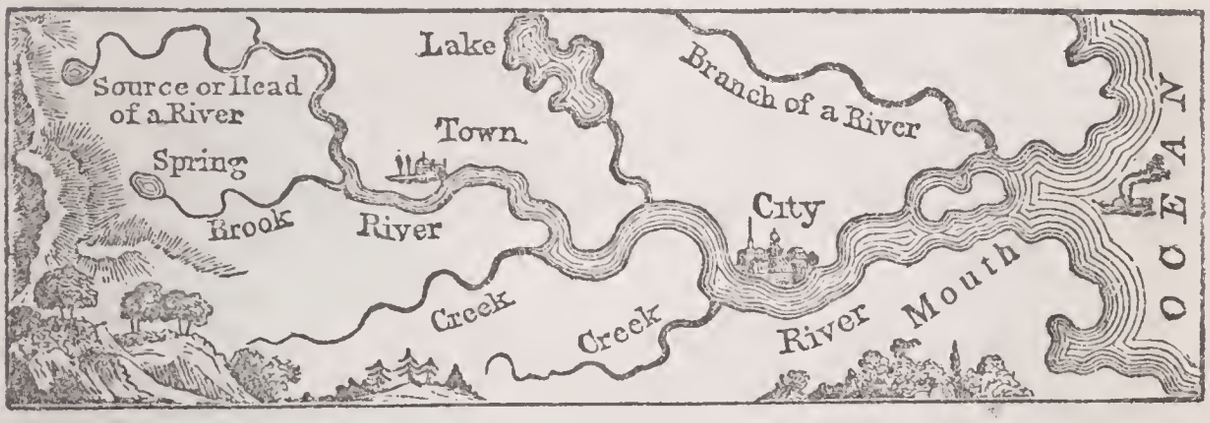
A. Lakes are both salt and fresh: of the latter, the largest is Lake Superior.

32. Which is the largest salt lake?

A. The Caspian Lake, or sea, in Asia. Salt lakes, when large, are commonly called seas, as the Sea of Aral, and the Dead Sea.*

33. How do lakes discharge their waters?

A. Fresh-water lakes generally discharge their waters through a river into the ocean; but salt lakes have seldom any outlet.



34. What is a river?

A. A stream of water, running from springs or from lakes, into the ocean, as the Mississippi, the Amazon, &c.

35. How are rivers formed?

A. By small branches, flowing from mountains or hills.

36. What are the small branches of rivers called?

A. Brooks and creeks.

38. What is the place where a river empties into the sea called?

A. Its mouth; where it rises, its source or head.

37. What is the place through which a river flows called?

A. Its bed, or channel.

* The largest of the salt lakes, that is not called a sea, is the Great Salt Lake of Upper California, explored by Captain Fremont; it is 180 miles in circuit.

Fall, or Cataract.

When rivers flow down steep or perpendicular banks, they form falls or cataracts, as the falls of Niagara, the falls of the Passaic, and others.

39. What is a Canal?

A. A wide ditch or channel, filled with water, through which boats convey travellers and goods from one town to another.

Canal and Lock.

40. Where are Canals most numerous?

A. In the United States, Great Britain, and Holland.

41. Which is the largest Canal in the world?

A. The Imperial Canal, in China.

42. Which are the most important Canals in the United States?

A. The Erie Canal, in New York; the Pennsylvania Canal, in Pennsylvania; and the Ohio Canal, in Ohio.

— 4 —

NATURAL DIVISIONS OF LAND.

43. How is the land surface of the earth divided?

A. Into the Eastern and Western continents.

44. What does the Eastern continent comprise?

A. Europe, Asia, and Africa.

45. What does the Western continent comprise?

A. North America and South America.

46. What other division is there on the earth?

A. Oceanica, which comprises the islands of the Pacific Ocean.

47. What are the Eastern and Western continents sometimes called?

A. The Eastern and Western Hemispheres. The word hemisphere signifies half a globe.

The map of the world, No. 1., in the Atlas, shows the Eastern and Western Hemispheres.

48. Into what division is the earth divided by the Equator?

A. Into the Northern and Southern Hemispheres.

49. What does the Northern Hemisphere comprise?

A. That part of the earth between the Equator and the North Pole.

50. What does the Southern Hemisphere comprise?

A. That part of the Earth between the Equator and the South Pole.

The map of the world, No. 2., in the Atlas, shows the Northern and Southern Hemispheres.

51. What are the natural divisions of the land surface of the earth?

A. Continents, Peninsulas, Isthmuses, Islands, Capes, and Promontories.

52. Why are these called natural divisions?

A. To distinguish them from political divisions, such as Empires, Kingdoms, and Republics.

53. What is a Continent?

A. A great extent of land, containing many countries. America is a continent.

54. What is a Peninsula?

A. A portion of land, nearly surrounded by water. Africa and South America are peninsulas.

55. What is an Isthmus?

A. A narrow neck of land, which joins two parts of a continent, or a peninsula to a continent; as the Isthmus of Darien, and the Isthmus of Suez.

56. What are Islands?

A. Portions of land, entirely surrounded by water, as the British Islands, or Newfoundland.

57. What is a Cape?

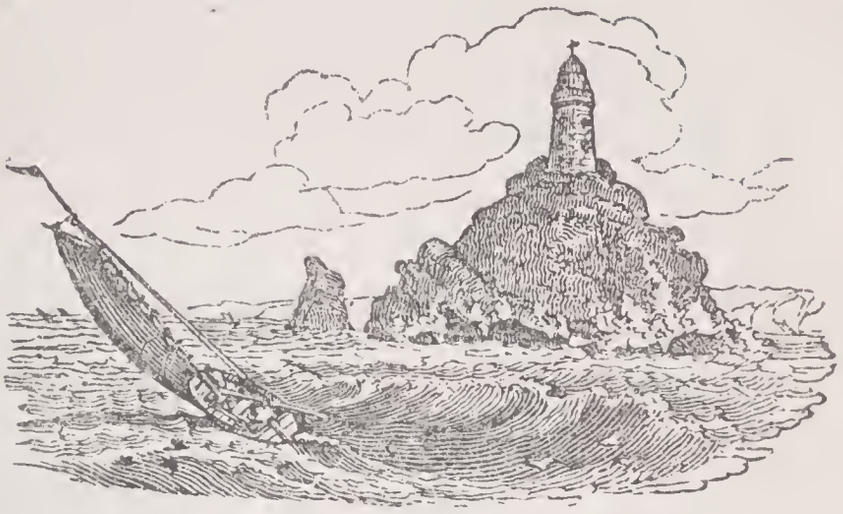
A. A point of land extending into the sea, as the Cape of Good Hope, and Cape Horn.

58. What is a Promontory?

A. A high point of land, extending into the sea, the extreme end of which is sometimes called a cape, sometimes a point, and sometimes a headland.

— 5 —

Some Capes and Promontories have light-houses built on them: these are so called because they have a bright light burning on the top of them after dark, that ships may not sail too near the land.



A Promontory and Light-House.

59. What is a Mountain?

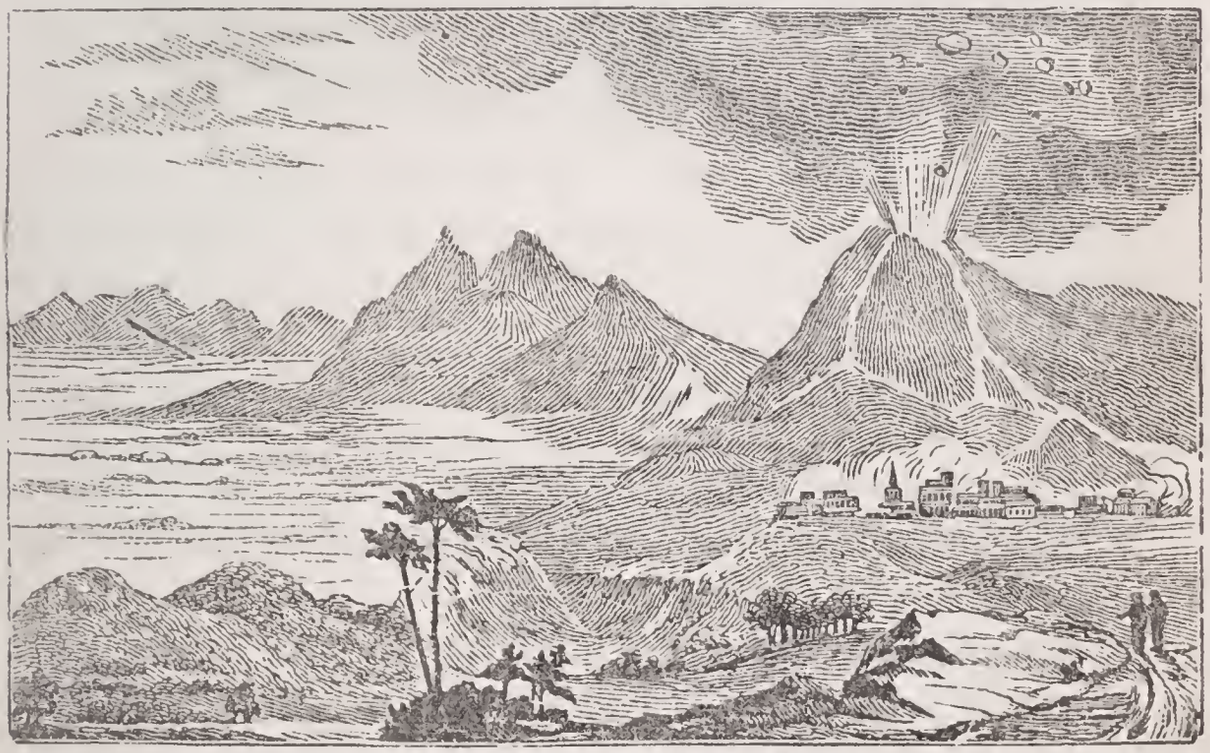
A. A portion of land, raised up to a great height.

60. How high are the highest mountains in the world?

A. They are about five and a half miles high; others are two, three, and four miles high.

61. What is a chain or range of Mountains?

A. A number of mountains joined together, and extending many hundreds, and even thousands of miles in length.



Plains. Range of Mountains. Mountains. Valley. Hills. Volcano. City on Fire.

62. What is a Volcano?

A. A burning mountain, with an opening at the top, called a crater.

63. What rises from the crater of a Volcano?

A. Fire and smoke constantly rise from many Volcanoes.

64. What are sometimes thrown out by Volcanoes?

A. Melted lava, large stones, ashes, and often floods of water.

65. How many Volcanoes are there in the world?

A. More than 200: of which upwards of one-half are in America.

Cities and towns are sometimes set on fire by the burning lava which flows down the sides of volcanoes: others have been destroyed by floods of water; and some by vast showers of hot ashes.

Ascent of Mont Blanc.

Some mountains are so steep and rugged, that it is difficult to ascend to the top of them. The picture represents a party of men going up Mont Blanc, the highest mountain in Europe. They were more than two days in getting to the top, and were almost frozen with cold. The summits of the highest mountains, even those in the hottest parts of the earth, are always covered with ice and snow.

66. What is a hill?

A. A portion of land raised up, but not so high as a mountain.

67. What is a Valley?

A. A low portion of country between mountains or hills.

68. What is a Plain?

A. A portion of country nearly flat or level.

69. Are all plains alike in appearance?

A. No; some are covered with grass, some with trees, and some only with sand.

— 6 —

70. What are plains covered with sand called?

A. They are denominated deserts; some are also covered with stones and gravel. Deserts are generally destitute of water.

71. Which are the largest deserts in the world?

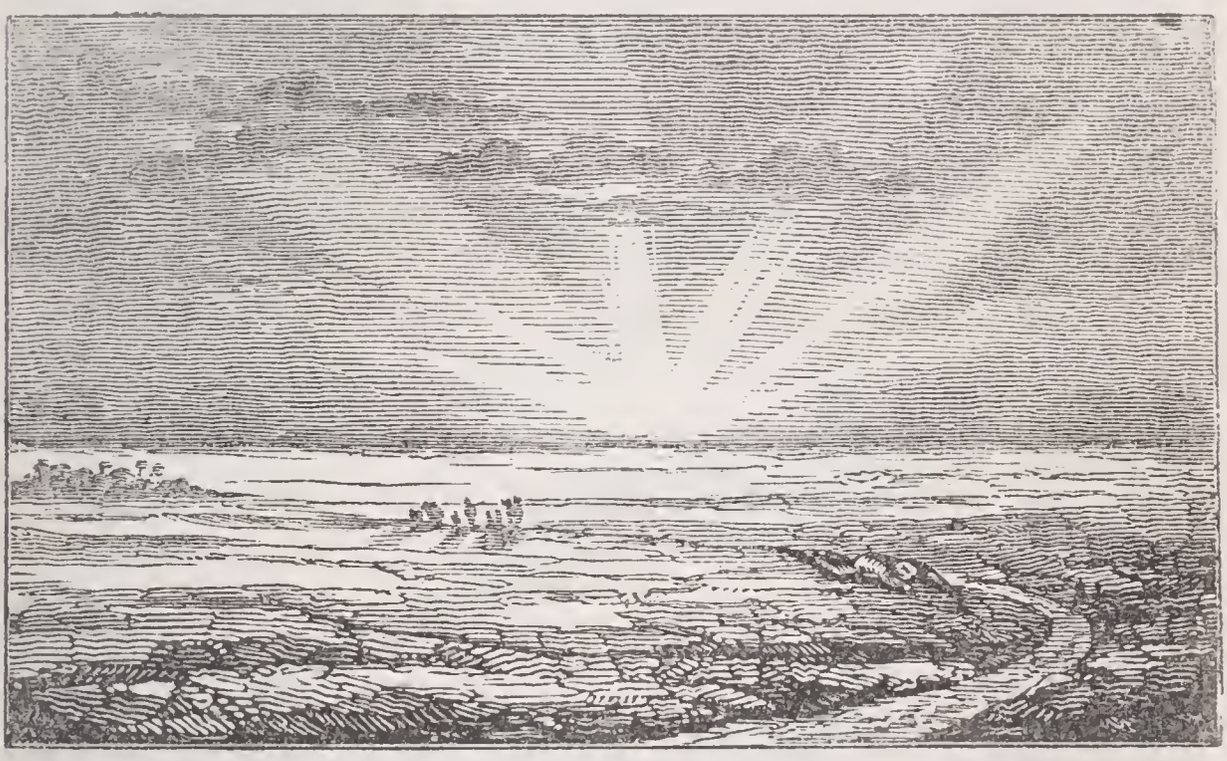
A. The great African desert, and the desert of Cobi, in Asia.

72. With what is the African desert interspersed?

A. Various fertile spots that are scattered here and there over the surface, like islands in the ocean.

73. What are these called?

A. They are called Oases: they are generally inhabited, and serve as resting places for travellers.

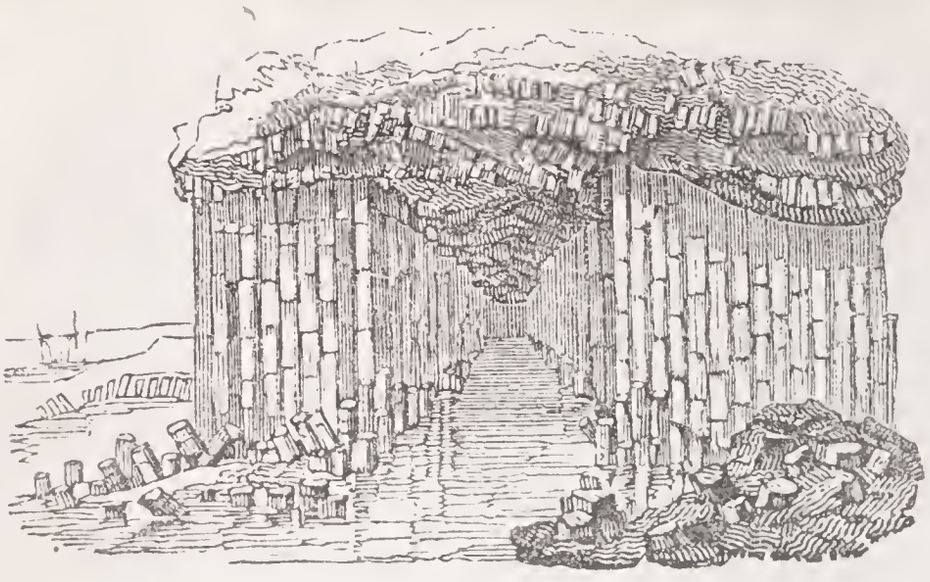


The Great Desert.

The Great Desert is frequently crossed by parties of travellers, with camels; these are called caravans; both men and beasts often suffer greatly from want of water, and sometimes perish from thirst. The picture represents a small caravan crossing the desert, one of the people of which appears to have just expired.

74. What are Caves or Caverns?

A. They are openings in the earth, often wonderful on account of their great size and extent.



Fingal's Cave.

One of the most remarkable is Fingal's Cave, in Staffa, an island on the west coast of Scotland. Its sides are formed with the regularity of walls of hewn stone. It is 227 feet in length, and 42 feet wide, and presents a most striking example of the sublime and beautiful creations with which God has adorned the world.

75. What are public roads?

A. Pathways used for travelling from place to place.

76. Are roads useful to mankind?

A. They are highly useful, for without them the people in different parts of the same country would not know each other.

77. What is a rail-road?

A. An improved kind of road, now much used in the United States, and also in some parts of Europe.

Rail Road.

The cars or carriages used on them, are drawn by steam locomotive engines, at the rate of 20 or 30 miles an hour, and sometimes even more. Vast numbers of people, and great quantities of merchandise, are conveyed by them from place to place, in a manner much more convenient than by the old method.

— 7 —

PRODUCTIONS OF THE EARTH.

78. What are the productions of the earth?

A. They are either vegetable, animal, or mineral.

79 What are vegetable productions?

A. Those things that grow out of the ground, as trees, plants, grain, fruits and flowers.

80. What are the vegetable productions most useful to mankind?

A. Wheat, corn, rye, rice, potatoes, bread-fruit, &c.

81. What are the chief classes of the animal kingdom?

A. Beasts, birds, fishes, reptiles, and insects.

82. What are minerals?

A. They consist of substances of various kinds, that are dug out of the earth.

83. What are the principal classes of minerals?

A. Four: the metallic, the inflammable, precious stones, and building-stones.

84. What are the most important metallic minerals?

A. They are gold, silver, iron, copper, and lead.

85. What are the principal inflammable minerals?

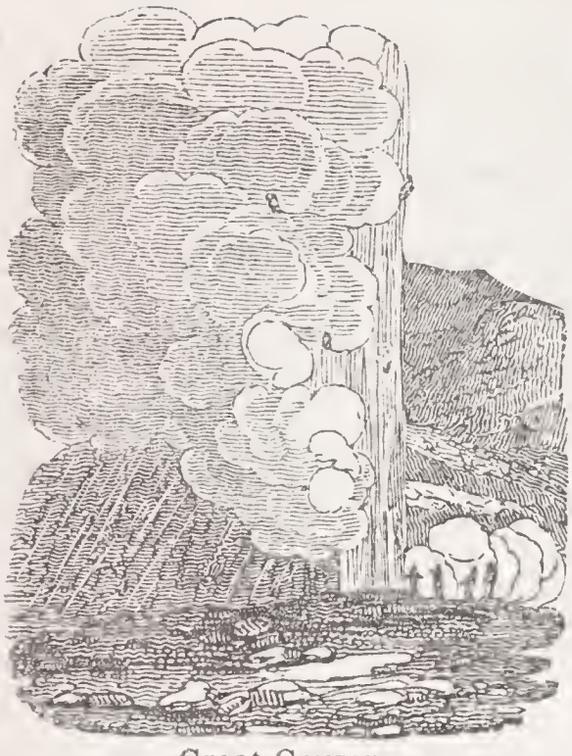
A. Pitcoal, peat, sulphur, bitumen, and asphaltum.

86. What are the most valuable precious stones?

A. Diamonds, sapphires, rubies, and emeralds.

Diamond River.

Diamonds are highly valuable, and are often found amongst the earth, at the bottoms of rivers. The engraving represents a river in



Great Geyser.

South America, from which the water has been nearly all pumped out by the machine on the right hand of the picture, and negro slaves are examining the earth for diamonds.

87. What are some of the principal building-stones?

A. Granite, limestone, marble, chalk, slate, and sandstone.

Mineral springs, both hot and cold, occur in many parts of the earth. The most remarkable are the Geysers, or Spouting springs of Iceland, which throw up volumes of hot water, with a noise like cannon, to the height of 90 or 100 feet.

— 8 —

ON THE FORM AND MOTIONS OF THE EARTH.

88. What is the earth?

A. It is the planet we inhabit.

89. What are the planets?

A. Immense bodies, which revolve round the sun and receive their light from him.

90. What is the shape or form of the earth?

A. It is like an orange, being slightly flattened at the poles.

91. By what other names is the earth known?

A. It is also called the World, the Globe, and the Sphere.

92. How many motions has the earth, and what are they?

A. Two; the daily and the yearly.

93. What is the daily motion of the earth?

A. That in which it turns round every twenty-four hours.

94. What is the yearly motion of the earth?

A. That in which it goes round the sun once every year.

95. What takes place during the earth's yearly motion?

A. A change of seasons.

96. What is a change of seasons?

A. The change from winter to spring, from spring to summer, from summer to autumn, and from autumn to winter again.

97. What is the length of the path travelled over by the earth every year, in its passage round the sun?

A. Upwards of 567 millions of miles, or more than a thousand miles every minute.

98. What is the effect of the earth's daily motion?

A. It produces a change from day to night.

99. If the earth did not turn round on its axis, what effect would be produced?

A. The day and night would then each be six months long, and, consequently, there would be but one day and one night in the year. In that case, our earth would be scarcely habitable.

100. What do these things teach us?

A. That the works of the Almighty are directed by infinite wisdom and goodness.

— 9 —

101. What is the axis of the earth?

A. It is an imaginary line passing through its centre North and South.

102. What are the poles of the earth?

A. The ends of the axis.

103. How many poles are there?

A. Two; the North, and the South Pole.

104. Where are the poles situated?

A. The North Pole is the north point of the earth's axis, and the South Pole is the south point.

Point out on Map of the World, No. 1, of the Atlas, the North Pole and the South Pole. You will perceive that this map consists of the Eastern and Western Hemispheres, that is, a map of both sides of the earth presented to view at once; and although the words North Pole and South Pole are engraved twice, yet there is but one North Pole and one South Pole.

105. How far distant are the poles situated from each other?

A. One hundred and eighty degrees.

106. How many miles is that?

About 12,500 miles, which is half round the world.

107. What is the size or bulk of the earth?

A. It is nearly 25,000 miles in circumference, and 8,000 in diameter.*

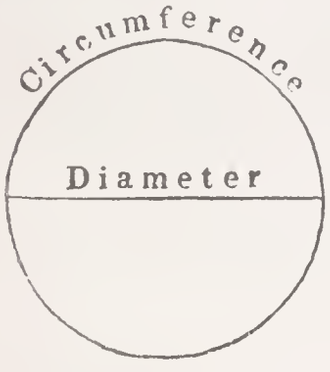
108. What is meant by the circumference of the earth?

Circumference is the distance round the middle of its surface or outside.

109. What is meant by diameter?

The distance across or through the middle part of it.

110. If you were to run a thread round the outside of an apple, the length of it would be the extent of the circumference; and if you were to cut the apple through the middle and measure it across the cut part, that would be the diameter.



111. So great is the circumference of the earth, that if a man could travel without interruption from water, it would take him one thousand days, or three years, to come round to the place he started from, reckoning that he travelled twenty five miles every day.

— 10 —

112. What are the circles of the earth?

The equator, the tropics, the polar circles, and the parallels and meridians.

113. Are these circles alike in extent?

The equator and meridians only are of the same extent, and are called the great circles.

114. What are the other circles?

The Tropical and Polar circles, and the Parallels. These being smaller in extent than the former are called small circles.

115. What is the Equator?

An imaginary great circle extending east and west round the globe, and at an equal distance from each pole.

On map of the World, No. 1, the Equator is the line that passes through the middle of both hemispheres. You will find the word equator near it.

116. What is the distance of the Equator from the Poles?

It is 90 degrees, or about 6250 miles from the North Pole, and the same from the South Pole.

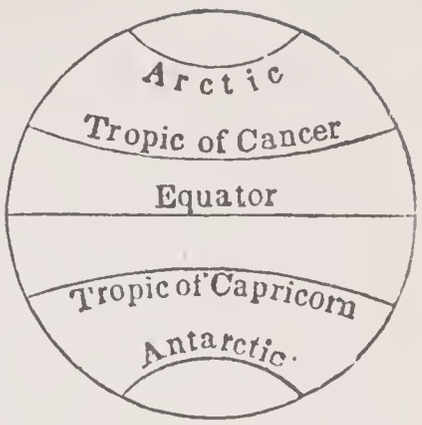
* The exact size and figure of the earth are not yet known: further measurements on all parts of its surface are necessary to determine these points rigidly.

117. What are the Tropics?

They are two smaller circles running like the Equator East and West.

118. Where are they placed?

At the distance of $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees, or 1637 miles, north and south from the equator.



Circles.

119. What are the names of the Tropics?

The northern tropic is called the Tropic of Cancer, and the southern is called the Tropic of Capricorn.

Point out on map of the World, No. 1., the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn. You will find them between the figures 20 and 30 that are printed on the edge of the map.

— 11 —

120. What are the Polar Circles?

Two small circles running east and west.

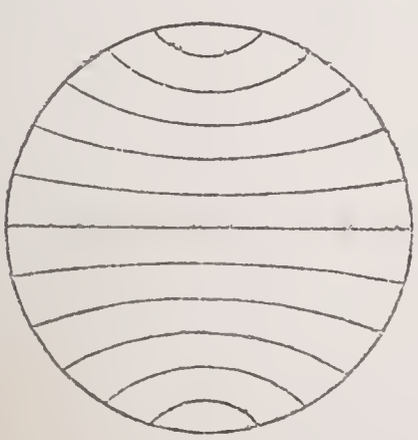
121. Where are they placed?

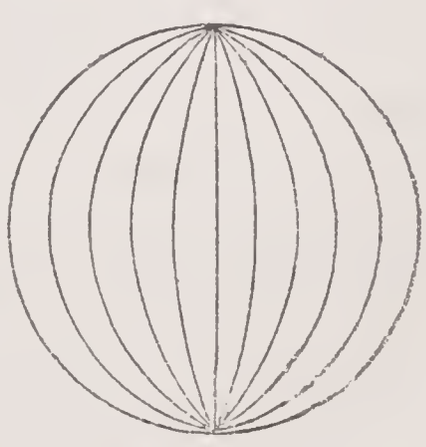
At the distance of $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees from each Pole.

122. What are their names?

The Arctic Circle is the northern polar circle, and the Antarctic Circle is the southern polar circle.

Point out on map of the World, No. 1, the Arctic and Antarctic circles. They are between the figures 60 and 70, which are engraved on the edge of the map.


Parallels.


Meridians.

123. What are the Parallels?

Circles extending east and west.

124. How are they represented on the Maps?

By lines crossing from side to side.

125. What are the Meridians?

Circles extending from Pole to Pole through the Equator.

126. How are they represented on the Maps?

By lines extending from the top to the bottom.

Point out on map No. 1., the Parallels and Meridians.

127. How are geographical circles divided?

A. Every circle is supposed to be divided into 360 degrees and every degree into 60 geographical miles or minutes.

128. What is the length of a degree of a great circle?

A. Sixty-nine and a quarter common miles.

129. How will you find the number of miles in any given number of degrees?

A. By multiplying the degrees by $69\frac{1}{4}$.

— 12 —

LATITUDE.

130. What is latitude?

A. It is distance from the Equator either north or south.

131. How is latitude divided?

A. Into north and south latitude. All countries situated north of the Equator, are in north latitude; and those south of it, are in south latitude.

132. How is latitude represented on maps?

A. By lines drawn across the map from side to side. These are called parallels.

133. How is latitude numbered?

A. The numbers are marked on the sides of the map, at the ends of the lines of latitude.

134. How is latitude counted?

A. In degrees from the Equator towards the poles, from 1 to 90.

135. How can you distinguish between north and south latitude?

A. If the numbers increase from the bottom towards the

top of the Map, it is North Latitude; but if they increase from the top towards the bottom, it is South Latitude.

136. On Map of the World, No. 1, Eastern Hemisphere. In what latitude is Europe? Ans. N. Le.

137. In what latitude is Australia? Ans. S. Le.

138. In what latitude is Africa? Ans. Partly in N. and partly in S. Le.

139. In what latitude is Asia? Ans. N. Le.

140. On the Western Hemisphere. In what latitude is North America? Ans. N. Le.

141. In what latitude is South America? Ans. N. Le. and S. Le.

142. What latitude have places on the Equator?

A. They have no latitude, for latitude begins on the Equator.

143. What is the latitude at the Poles?

A. It is 90 degrees, which is the full extent to which latitude is carried.

144. What is the meaning of the word latitude?

A. It means breadth; it was applied long ago to distances north and south, because the world was supposed to be much less in extent in that direction than from east to west.

145. Do the degrees of latitude vary in length?

A. They are nearly all alike, being about 69¼ miles each.

In consequence of the earth being flattened at the poles, the degrees of latitude increase slightly in extent in going either north or south; but 69¼ miles is a fair average of their extent.

13

LONGITUDE.

146. What is longitude?

A. It is distance east or west from an established meridian.

147. How is longitude represented?

A. By lines running from the top to the bottom of the map.

148. How is it reckoned?

A. In degrees east and west; on our maps it is reckoned from the meridians of Greenwich and Washington.

149. How is it counted?

A. From the place of beginning, 180 degrees each way

therefore the longitude of a place cannot be more than 180 degrees east or west.

150. How is it marked?

A. Generally in numbers on the top and bottom of the map, at the end of the meridians.

On map of the world, No. 1, the longitude is marked on the Equator, in consequence of a want of room at the ends of the lines; but on maps, Nos. 3, 4, 5, 6, &e., it is marked at the top and bottom of the maps.

151. How can you distinguish between east and west longitude?

A. If the numbers increase towards the right hand, it is east longitude; but if they increase towards the left hand, it is west longitude.

152. Are the degrees of longitude of the same length as those of latitude?

A. On the Equator they are very nearly of the same length as those of latitude, but no where else.

153. How do they differ from those of latitude?

A. They constantly decrease as we go either north or south from the equator towards the poles, where the meridians all meet, and the longitude ceases.

— 14 —

154. What is the meaning of the word longitude?

A. It signifies length. It was used for this purpose because formerly the earth was supposed to be much longer from East to West than from North to South.

155. On some of the maps the longitude is marked on the top from Greenwich, and on the bottom from Washington, the difference being 77 degrees. The same lines serve to express the longitude of both places, and are numbered accordingly.

156. How do nations generally reckon longitude?

A. From the capital of their own country.

157. We reckon ours from the city of Washington; the English from Greenwich; the French from Paris; and the Spaniards from Madrid.

158. On the Equator a degree of longitude is 69¼ miles in length; at 42 degrees of latitude it is only three-fourths of that extent; at 60 degrees it is one-half; at 75 degrees one quarter; and at the poles it is nothing.

159. Places on the Equator have no latitude, and those on the first meridian no longitude; therefore, at the point where the first meridian crosses the Equator, there is neither latitude nor longitude.

160. What is the difference of longitude between Washington and Greenwich?

161. What is the length of a degree of longitude on the Equator?

162. What is it on the 42d degree of latitude? on the 60th degree? on the 75th degree? and at the Poles?

163. Where is there no latitude?

164. Where is there no longitude?

On maps Nos. 1 and 25, you will find that the meridian marked 0, crosses the Equator in the Gulf of Guinea. In that spot, there is neither latitude nor longitude.

15

MAPS.

165. What is a map?

A. A picture of a part or the whole of the earth's surface.

166. What are a number of maps made into a book, called?

A. An Atlas.

167. In what way are maps usually drawn?

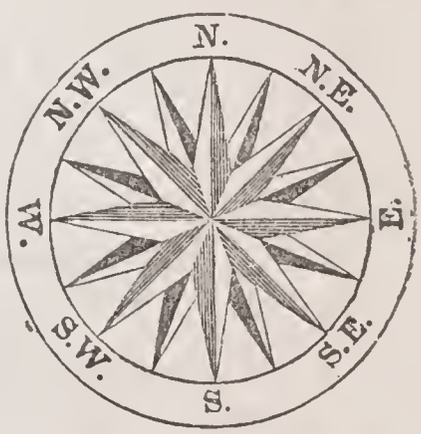
A. The top of the map is north, the bottom south, the right hand is east, and the left hand west.

168. What is meant by North, South, East, and West?

A. They are the four cardinal or principal points of the compass.

169. What is a compass?

A. An instrument used by navigators at sea, to point out their course.



170. How does it point out their course?

A. The needle, or bar of the compass, always points to the north.

171. In what direction are North and South.

A. The north is towards the North Pole, and the south is towards the South Pole.

172. In what direction does East and West lie?

A. East is towards that point where the sun rises, and West where he sets.

173. If you stand with your face towards where the sun rises, the

North will be on your left hand, the South on your right hand, and the West will be behind you.

A Map.

— 16 —

174. On maps, rivers are shown by black lines winding according to their course.

175. Mountains are shown by lines which form a shade in the direction in which they extend.

176. Cities and towns are shown by a black dot, and the capitals of countries by a large dot and eight smaller ones around it.

177. The boundaries of countries are made by dotted lines.

178. Sandy deserts and sand banks in the ocean, are shown by a great number of dots resembling sand. The ocean, or sea, is shaded by lines to separate it from the land.

179. The latitude is shown by lines extending on the maps from side to side, and the longitude by lines running from the top to the bottom, except on map No. 2, of the world, where the latitude is shown by circular lines, extending in succession farther and farther from the centre, and longitude by straight lines extending from the centre to the circumference.

180. Point out on map No. 4, of the Atlas, the Mississippi, the Missouri, the Rio Grande, and the Columbia rivers.

181. Point out the cities of Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, New Orleans, Havanna, La Puebla, and Guanaxuato.

182. Point out the capitals, Montreal, Washington, Mexico, St. Salvador, and Port au Prince

183. Point out the boundary between the United States and Mexico, between the United States and British America, and between British America and Russian America.

184. Point out the great American Desert, the Sandy Desert in Mexico, and the Grand Bank of Newfoundland.

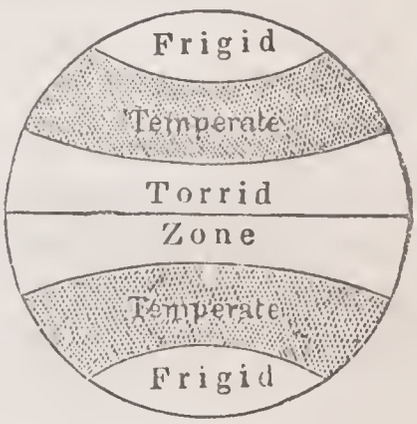
185. Point out the Rocky Mountains, the Alleghany Mountains, the Snowy Range, and the Mexican Cordilleras.

— 17 —

ZONES.

186. What are Zones?

A. Sections or divisions of the earth's surface, formed by the tropics and the polar circles.



Zones.

187. What does the word Zone mean?

A. A belt or girdle, because it passes round the earth.

188. How many Zones are there?

A. Five: one torrid, two temperate, and two frigid zones.

TORRID ZONE.

189. What part of the earth's surface is occupied by the Torrid Zone?

A. The part which lies on both sides of the Equator and between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn.

190. What is the meaning of the word Torrid?

A. It means very hot, parched, or dried up.

191. What is the breadth of the Torrid Zone?

A. It is 3243 miles in breadth from North to South.

192. Why is the Torrid Zone the hottest part of the earth?

A. Because it is more exposed to the heat of the sun than any other part of the earth.

193. What are the seasons of the Torrid Zone?

A. Two; the wet and the dry.

194. To which of our seasons do they correspond?

A. The wet season corresponds to our winter, and the dry to our summer.

195. What is the climate of the Torrid Zone?

A. During some parts of the year it is delightful; but at other times the heat is very oppressive, and the earth is parched and dried up.

— 18 —

196. To what is the Torrid Zone subject?

A. To the most violent storms of wind, which destroy almost every thing within their reach.

197. To what else is the Torrid Zone subject?

A. It is more subject to earthquakes than the other parts of the earth, and is also the seat of dangerous and deadly diseases.

198. For what is the Torrid Zone remarkable?

A. For the finest fruits, many of the most useful vegetable productions, and the largest and most ferocious animals.

199. What are some of the principal fruits of the Torrid Zone?

A. Oranges, lemons, pine-apples, cocoa-nuts, and the bread-fruit.

200. What are some of the most useful vegetable productions?

A. Coffee, tea, sugar, indigo, cinnamon, cloves, nutmegs, and pepper.

201. Which are the most remarkable animals?

A. The elephant, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, camelopard, lion, and tiger.

202. What are some of the other remarkable animals?

A. The ostrich and condor, with numerous birds of splendid

plumage, and the largest and most venomous serpents and insects.

203. What are the complexion and habits of the people of the Torrid Zone?

A. They are generally of a dark or black colour, and indolent and effeminate in their habits.

204. What is their character?

A. They are but seldom distinguished for industry, enterprise, or learning.

— 19 —

TEMPERATE ZONES.

205. Where are the Temperate Zones situated?

A. Between the tropics and the polar circles.

206. How are they distinguished from each other?

A. The one north of the equator is called the north temperate, and the one south of the equator the south temperate Zone.

207. What does the word temperate mean when applied to climate?

A. Mild, moderate; neither too hot nor too cold.

208. Where is the north temperate Zone situated?

A. Between the tropic of Cancer and the arctic circle.

209. Where is the south temperate Zone situated?

A. Between the tropic of Capricorn and the antarctic circle.

210. What is the breadth of the temperate Zones?

A. They occupy a breadth of about 2970 miles each.

211. What are the seasons of the temperate Zones?

A. They are four; Spring, Summer, Autumn or Fall, and Winter.

212. What climate does the temperate Zones enjoy?

A. They enjoy a more equal and healthy climate than any other parts of the earth.

213. Do the temperate Zones equal the torrid Zone in the number of their vegetable productions?

A. The vegetable productions of the temperate Zones are neither so numerous nor luxuriant as those of the torrid Zone.

214. What are the principal vegetable productions of the temperate Zones?

A. Corn, wheat, and rice, with apples, peaches, pears, olives, and figs.

215. Are the animals of the temperate Zones like those of the torrid Zone?

A. No: they are generally of smaller size, and are less numerous and ferocious.

216. Of what kinds are the animals of the temperate Zones?

A. Of the domestic and useful kinds mostly.

217. What are some of the domestic animals?

A. The horse, camel, ox, ass, mule, sheep, hog, and dog.

218. What are some of the wild animals?

A. The bear, wolf, buffalo, elk, deer, and fox.

219. What are the colour and character of the inhabitants of the temperate Zones?

A. Those of the north temperate Zone in particular have white or fair complexions, and generally more strength of body and mind than the inhabitants of the other Zones.

220. For what are they distinguished?

A. For industry, enterprise, and learning.

221. What do they comprise?

A. The most civilized and improved portion of mankind.

222. What Zone lies south of this country?

223. What Zone separates the north temperate and south temperate Zones from each other?

224. In what Zone do we live?

— 20 —

FRIGID ZONES.

225. Where are the frigid Zones situated?

A. Between the polar circles and the poles.

226. How are they distinguished?

A. The one north of the equator is called the north frigid Zone, and that south of the equator the south frigid Zone.

227. Where is the north frigid Zone situated?

A. Between the arctic circle and the North Pole.

228. Where is the south frigid Zone situated?

A. Between the antarctic circle and the South Pole.

229. Why are the Zones about the poles called frigid?

A. Because the climate is excessively cold.

230. Why is the climate of these Zones colder than that of other parts of the earth?

A. Because the rays of the sun are less direct, and impart a smaller degree of heat than in countries nearer the Equator.

231. What are the Frigid Zones covered with?

A. Chiefly with ice and snow.

232. What are the seasons of the Frigid Zones?

A. The seasons are two; a long cold winter and a short summer, without spring or autumn.

233. What fruits are found in the Frigid Zones?

A. Only a few small berries which grow in those parts nearest to the temperate Zones.

234. What kind of animals live there?

A. None but the most hardy, as the White Bear, Musk Ox, Reindeer, &c.

235. What are the number, stature, and colour of the inhabitants?

A. They are but few in number, of short stature, and have dark complexions.

236. In what are they deficient?

A. In intelligence, being ignorant of reading, and writing, learning.

— 21 —

QUESTIONS ON THE DIFFERENT ZONES,

(*The first Map of the Atlas before the learner.*)

237. On map of the world, No. 1, Western Hemisphere, point out the countries that are in the Torrid Zone.

A. They are part of Mo.,* the whole of Ga., Ca., Ga., Pu., Bl.

238. Point out the Islands in the Torrid Zone, beginning at the left hand side of the map.

A. They are Sh., Me., Ns., Fy., Fe., N.-Ca., Sy., Gn., Ms., Gs., W.-Is., C. Ve.

239. Point out the countries in the Torrid Zone, on the Map of the Eastern Hemisphere.

A. They are part of the Gt.-Dt., the whole of Sa., Ga., L.-Ga., Sn., Ea., Zr., part of Aa., part of Hn., Sm., part of Ca.

240. Point out the Islands in the Torrid Zone, in the Eastern Hemisphere, beginning at the left hand.

A. They are S.-Ha., part of Mr., Ma., Cn., Sa., Ja., part of Fa., Hn., Pe., Le., Ce., Bo., Cs., Se., Tr., N.-Ga., N.-Id., N.-Bn., Le., part of Aa.

241. Point out the countries in the North Temperate Zone, of the Western Hemisphere.

A. They are a part of Aa., part of N.-Bn., Lr., part of Gd., Ca., U.-Ss., part of Mo.

---

*The letters Mo.,Ga.,Ca.,&c., are the first and last letters of the names of those countries that the learner is required to point out on the map.

242. Point out the islands.

A. They are the An., Vs.,* Nd., As.

243. Point out the countries in the North Temperate Zone of the Eastern Hemisphere.

A. They are a part of Sa., Fe., Sn., By., part of the Gt.-Dt., Et., Aa., Iy., Ty., Pa., part of Aa., Ty., part of Hn., Tt., part of Ca.

244. Point out the islands.

A. They are Id., Bh.-Is., Sn., Jo., Nn., Ku., Lo., part of Fa.

245. Point out the countries in the South Temperate Zone of the Western Hemisphere.

A. They are Ci., Bs.-As., Pa.

246. Point out the Islands.

A. They are N.-Zd., Ce., Fd., Ta.-Fo., S.-Sd., S.-Oy., S.-Ld., part of Gs.-Ld.

247. Point out the countries in the South Temperate Zone of the Eastern Hemisphere.

A. They are Ce.-Cy., Ca.

248. Point out the islands.

A. They are Tn.-Aa., Mn., and Cs., Ks., part of Mr., part of Aa., Vn.-Ds.-Ld.

249. The countries in the North Frigid Zone of the Western Hemisphere, are part of Aa., part of Nw.-Bn., part of Gd.

250. The countries in the North Frigid Zone of the Eastern Hemisphere, are Ld., part of Aa., with the islands Sn., Na., Za., N.-Sa.

251. The only land in the South Frigid Zone of the Western Hemisphere, is a part of Gs.-Ld., Va.-Ld.; and in the South Frigid Zone of the Eastern Hemisphere there is Es.-Ld. and the Ac.-Ct.

In what Zone does the United States lie? N. Te.

What Zone contains the largest animals? Td.

Which Zones contain the most useful animals? Te.

Which Zones produce the most hardy animals? Fd.

Which Zone is most subject to violent storms of wind? Td.

In which Zone are the people the most industrious? N. Te.

Which Zone is the most subject to earthquakes? Td.

In which Zones is the climate most healthy? Te.

Which of the Temperate Zones contains the most powerful and civilized nations? N. Te.

* The proper name of this island is Quadra and Vancouver's, but it is usually called Vancouver's only.

— 22 —

POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

252. The inhabited parts of the earth have been from very early times divided into Empires, Kingdoms, Republics, and States, of various kinds.

253. What is an Empire?

A. A state composed of several countries governed by an Emperor.

254. How are Empires sometimes composed?

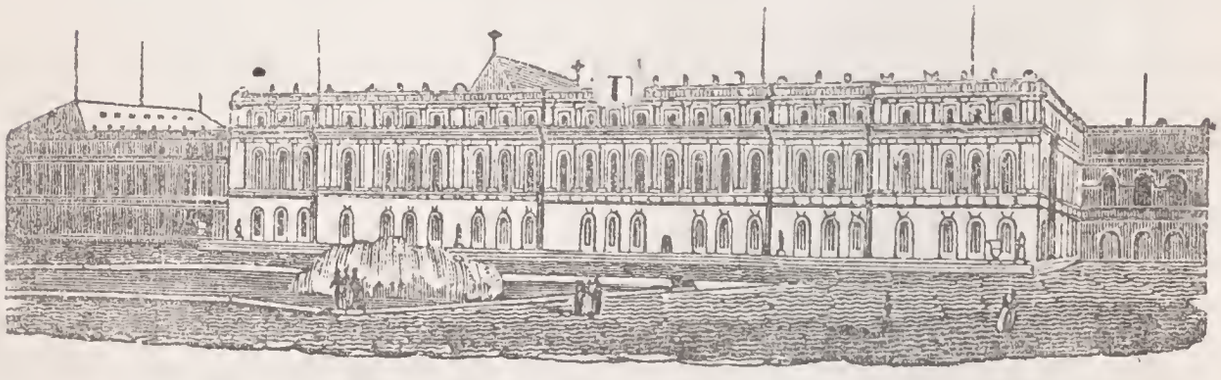
A. Of countries immediately joining each other, which form a compact body; as the Empire of Austria.

255. What do other Empires comprise?

A. Territories separated by vast oceans, and situated in distant parts of the earth, as the British Empire.

256. What is a kingdom?

A. A country governed by a king, as Prussia, Spain, &c.



Palace at Versailles.

257. What are Palaces?

A. Buildings inhabited by Emperors or Kings. They are generally of great extent, and cost vast sums of money.

258. What is a Republic?

A. A country whose laws are made by representatives chosen by the people; as the United States, &c.

259 How are Empires, Kingdoms, Republics, &c. subdivided?

A. Into governments, as in Russia; departments, as in France; cantons, as in Switzerland; provinces, as in Spain and Portugal; and states, as in the United States, Mexico, &c.

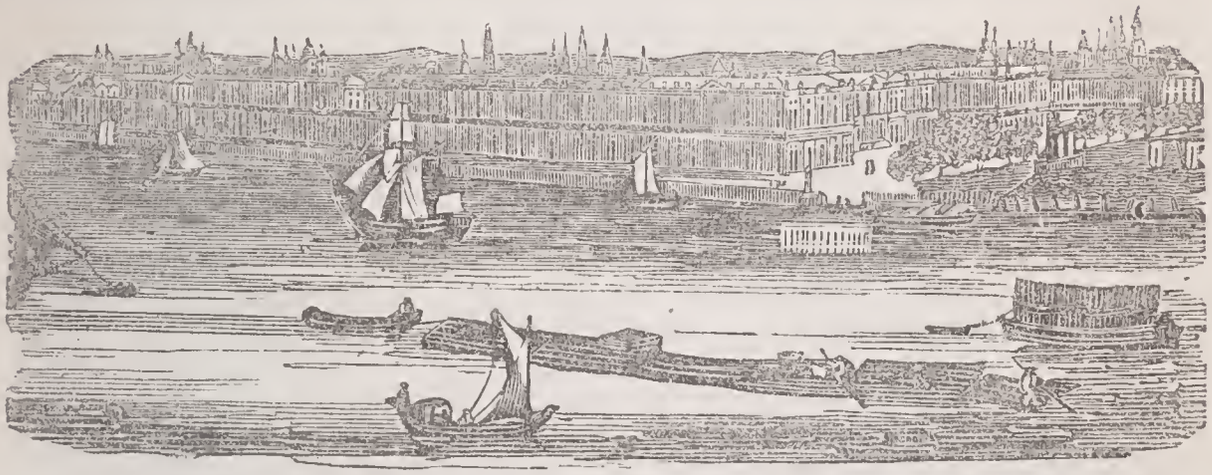
260. What are the subdivisions of the various states which form our Republic?

A. Into counties, except in South Carolina, where they are

called districts, and in Louisiana, where they are called parishes.

261. How are counties subdivided?

A. Into towns in New England, and into townships in the Middle and some of the Western States.



City of St. Petersburg.

262. What is a City?

A large collection of houses and inhabitants.

Cities differ greatly in extent; some have no more than 3000 or 4000 inhabitants, while others, such as New York, &c., have a hundred times more.

263. In what way is a city particularly distinguished from a town?

A. By being incorporated with peculiar privileges, and in being governed by a Mayor, Aldermen, &c.

264. What is a town, and a village?

A town is a collection of houses and inhabitants, smaller than a city. A village is smaller than a town.

— 23 —

265. What is a township?

A. A tract of country generally divided into farms, and often containing towns, villages, and even cities, within its limits.

266. What is a county?

A. A division belonging to a State, comprising in many cases a large extent of country.

267. What does a county contain?

A. Nearly every county in the United States contains a county town, and Court-house.

268. What is done there?

A. Courts of justice are held there, and those who break the laws are tried and punished.

269. What is the capital of a State?

A. The city or town chosen for the meeting of the State Legislature.

270. What do the capitals of States usually contain?

A. The State House, State Prison, Governor's residence, and other offices connected with the government of the State.

271. In some states, the most important place in it is chosen for the capital, without any regard to its position, as Boston, in Massachusetts. In most instances, however, a central position is adopted.

272. What is the State House?

A. The building where the Legislature of the State meets.

273. What is the Legislature of a State?

A. A body composed of men who have power to make laws.

274. Who is the Governor of a State?

A. The person who executes the laws of the State.

275. What is the capital of the United States?

A. The city of Washington, the place adopted by the American people for the annual meeting of the National Congress.

276. After whom was it named?

A. General Washington.

277. What is the National Congress?

A. An assembly composed of the Representatives elected by the people.

278. For what length of time are the Representatives elected by the people.

A. The members of the Senate are elected for six years, and those of the House of Representatives for two.

24

279. What two bodies does Congress comprise?

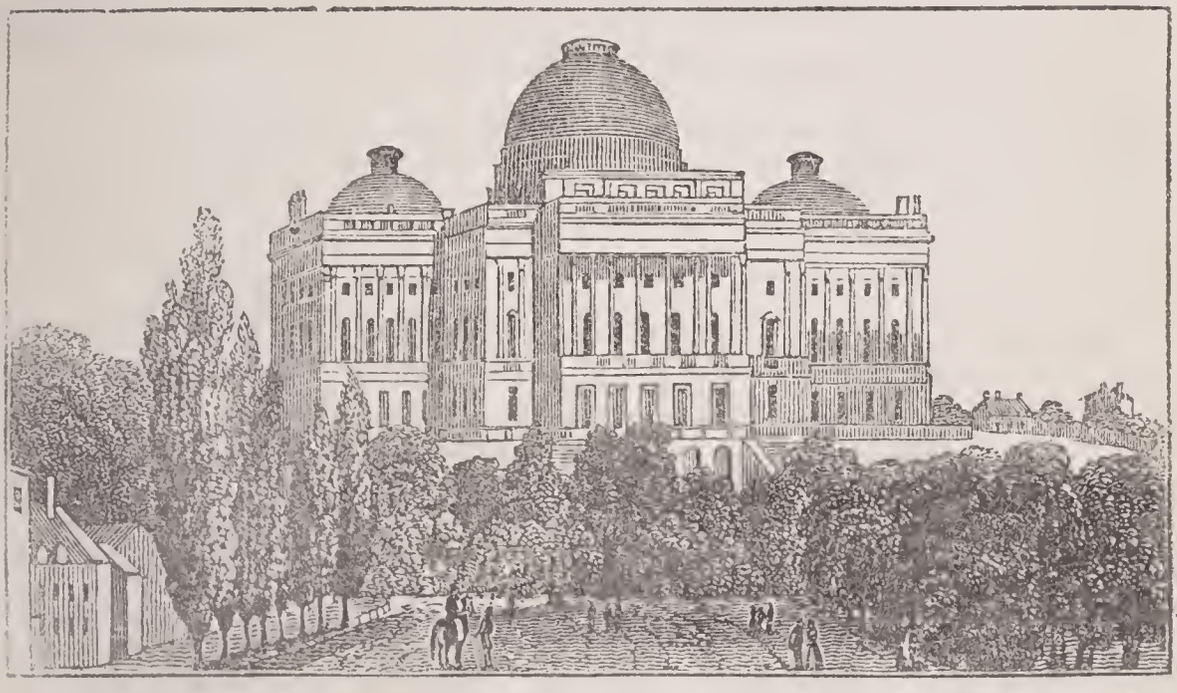
A. The Senate and the House of Representatives.

280. What are the duties of Congress?

A. To make the laws by which the nation is governed.

281. In what building in the city of Washington does Congress hold its meetings?

A. In the Capitol, which is one of the finest edifices in America.



Capitol at Washington.

282. Who executes the laws passed by Congress?

A. The President, with the aid of the other officers of government.

283 Who is the President of the United States?

A. The chief magistrate, or head of the government.

284. By whom is he chosen to that office?

A. The people of the United States.

285. During what period does he hold his office?

A. He holds his office during the term of four years.

286. What forms the American nation?

A. The whole of the people of the United States.

287. The word nation signifies a distinct body of people living under one government.

288. What is a Country?

A. A large tract of land, a region, one's native soil.

289. What are the boundaries of a country?

A. Those parts of land and water which lie next to the line which separates it from another country.

290. What is the interior of a country?

A. The central or inland parts.

291. What is the frontier of a country?

A. Those parts which lie near the border or boundary, the outside portions.

292. Thus we say, the Northern frontier, the Southern frontier, &c., according as the parts are situated to the North, South, East, or West.

293. What are the maritime parts of a country?

A. Those parts which border on the sea coast.

Asiatic. Malay. European. African. American.

25

RACES OF MEN.

294. Man is the most perfect of the works of God, being created in his own image, and formed by his wisdom, to subdue and exercise dominion over all the earth.

295. From whom has the whole human race descended?

A. From our first parents, Adam and Eve.

296. What does the human race present?

A. Several varieties, differing greatly from each other in colour, form, and features.

297. What is the cause of the varieties in the human race?

A. It is probably owing to a difference in climate, food, and mode of life, and no doubt partly to causes which we do not understand.

298. What are the various races of mankind?

A. They are five, the European or Caucasian, Asiatic or Mongolian, American, Malay, and African or negro.

299. How may they be classed in regard to their colour?

A. Into the White, Yellow, Red, Brown, and Black races.

300. What nations does the European or White race include?

A. The nations of Europe, Western Asia, the North of Africa, with all the white inhabitants of America and other regions.

301. What nations does the Asiatic or Yellow race include?

A. All the nations of Asia east of the Ganges river, (excepting the Malays of Malacca.)

302. What other nations belong to this race?

A. The Finns and Laplanders of Europe, and the Esquimaux of America, also belong to the Asiatic race.

303. What part of the earth does the American or copper-coloured race inhabit?

A. The whole of the American continent, except those parts occupied by the descendants of Europeans, with the Esquimaux and Negroes.

304. What nations does the Malay or Brown race include?

A. The people of Malacca and Malaysia, with those of Polynesia and New Zealand.

305. What part of the earth does the African or Black race inhabit?

A. All Western, Central, and Southern Africa, with a considerable part of Madagascar and Australasia.

306. A large number of this race are found in both North and South America, where they are chiefly in a state of slavery.

307. The European or Caucasian is the most noble of the five races of men. It excels all others in learning and the arts, and includes the most powerful nations of ancient and modern times. The most valuable institutions of society, and the most important and useful inventions have originated with the people of this race.

Which is the most noble of the five races of men?

In what does it excel all others?

What does it include?

What has originated with the people of this race?

To which of the races of men do the greater part of the people of the United States belong?

To which race do you belong?

— 26 —

STAGES OF SOCIETY.

308. Nations live in various stages of society, and their condition is found to depend materially on the progress they have made in knowledge, learning, and refinement, and in their skill in the mechanic arts.

309. How may nations be divided according to their habits of life and state of improvement?

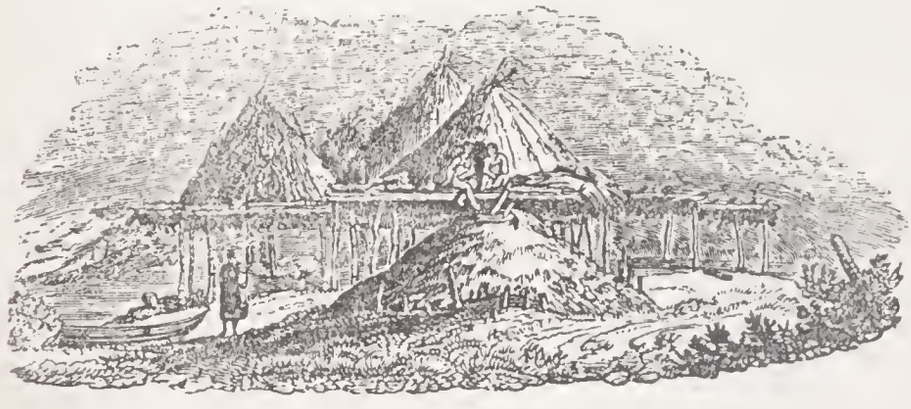
A. Into five classes, viz: savage, barbarous, half-civilized, civilized, and enlightened.

310. How do men live in the savage state?

A. By hunting, fishing, and on the spontaneous productions of the ground. They are generally clad in the skins of wild animals, and reside in miserable huts, or dens, and caves in the earth.

311. What is the general character of savage nations?

A. They are bloodthirsty and revengeful, often eat the flesh of the enemies they take in war, and treat their women as slaves.



Habitations of the Kamtschatdales.

312. What degree of knowledge do they possess?

They possess little or no knowledge of agriculture, or the mechanic arts, and are ignorant of reading, writing, and a regular form of government.

313. What nations are examples of this class?

A. The nations of Australia, or New Holland, and New Guinea, most of the Indian tribes of North and South America, and the Kamtschatdales or people of Kamtschatka.

314. In what manner do barbarous nations live?

A. By agriculture and the pasturage of cattle, sheep, &c.

315. They understand a few of the most simple arts, and are acquainted with reading and writing only to a very limited extent.

316. What nations are examples of this class?

A. The roving tribes of Tartary, Arabia, Central Africa, and the people of Abyssinia.

— 27 —

317. How are the half-civilized nations distinguished?

A. They understand agriculture and many of the arts tolerably well, have written languages, with some knowledge of learning and books.

318. They have also established laws and religion, some little foreign commerce, but are very jealous of strangers, and treat their women generally as slaves.

319. What nations may be considered as belonging to the half-civilized class?

A. China, Japan, Birmah, Siam, Turkey, Persia, &c.

320. How are civilized nations distinguished?

A. The arts and sciences are well understood, and the inhabitants derive their subsistence principally from agriculture, manufactures, and commerce.

321. What is the condition of the great body of the people in some civilized states?

A. They are very ignorant and superstitious, and there is likewise a vast difference between the condition of the upper and lower classes of society.

322. What countries rank among the civilized nations?

A. Russia, Spain, Portugal, Greece, Mexico, &c.

323. What is the character of enlightened nations?

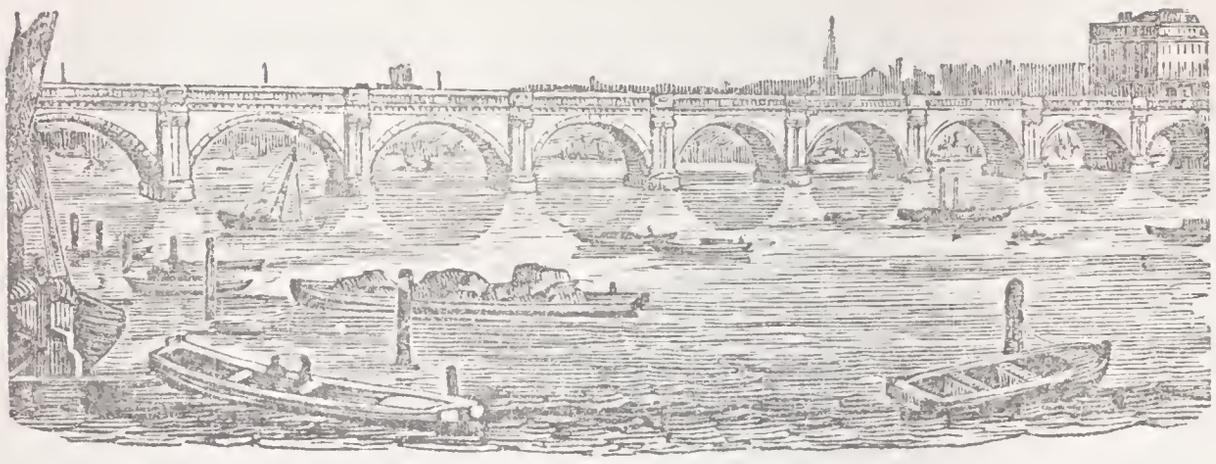
A. They are noted for the intelligence, enterprise, and industry of their inhabitants; among them also the arts and sciences are carried to a high state of perfection.

324. How are they otherwise noted?

A. Females are treated with politeness and respect, the principles of free government are well understood, and education and learning are more general than among other nations.

325. What nations belong to this class?

A. The United States, Great Britain, France, Switzerland, and some of the German States.



Waterloo Bridge.

326. Enlightened and civilized nations are distinguished by the number and variety of their public buildings, and works of national utility; of these, colleges, hospitals, libraries, bridges, canals, rail-roads, &c., are amongst the most prominent.

28

GOVERNMENT.

327. In every part of the earth it has been found necessary to have some system of government, or some power or authority, that shall protect the good and punish the wicked.

328. Without government, no one could be secure either in his person or property, and the world would be a scene of confusion and bloodshed.

329. What is government?

A. The power or system by which the laws of a country are made and executed.

330. What is the object of government?

A. To afford protection to life and property, and ensure the happiness of the people.

331. What are the different kinds of government?

A. Three; Monarchy, Aristocracy, and Democracy.

332. What is Monarchy?

A. That form of government in which an Emperor or King rules during his life. Emperors, Kings, &c. are also called Sovereigns.

333. What are the forms of Monarchy?

A. Two; absolute and limited Monarchy.

334. What is an absolute Monarchy?

A. Where the monarch governs according to his own will.

335. What countries are ruled in this manner?

A. China, Turkey, Persia, and generally all the states of Asia and Africa.

336. Some countries are ruled by tyrants, who use their people with great cruelty, and in consequence are afraid to go abroad without being surrounded by soldiers.

Emperor of Morocco.

337. The picture represents the Emperor of Morocco, who is one of the most despotic sovereigns in existence. When he appears in public, every one he meets must fall with their faces to the earth, and there remain until the despot has passed.

338. What is a limited monarchy?

A. Where the power of the monarch is limited by a constitution.

339. What states are ruled by a limited monarchy?

A. Great Britain, Holland, Sweden, &c.

— 29 —

340. What is an aristocracy?

A. A government where the power is vested in a few persons called nobles.

This does not at present exist as a distinct form of government, but is frequently found combined with others.

341. How is aristocracy frequently found combined?

A. With monarchy and democracy.

342. This is the case in Great Britain and other limited monarchies. The king represents the monarchy, the nobles the aristocracy, and the representative body the democracy.

343. What is a Democracy?

A. A free government, in which the people choose their own rulers for stated periods of time.

344. What states have democratic governments?

A. The United States, Mexico, and all the Spanish American States.

345. What was the first kind of government?

A. The Patriarchal, in which every father or patriarch rules his own family or servants.

346. Does this kind of government still exist?

A. Yes; but it is found only amongst rude and barbarous tribes.

347. What tribes are governed in this manner?

A. The Bedouins of Arabia and the Great Desert, the Laplanders, and some others.

348. How did Patriarchs become chiefs?

A. In process of time families increased in numbers, and patriarchs became chiefs and rulers.

349. How did chiefs, &c., become monarchs?

A. Some chiefs being ambitious and powerful, conquered others, and became monarchs of empires, kingdoms, &c.

350. What titles do rulers assume in different parts of the world?

A. In Asia, they are called Nabobs, Sultans, Shahs, Rajahs, Imams, Khans, &c.

351. What are they called in Europe?

A. Emperors, Kings, Princes, Dukes, Electors, &c.

352. What are they called in America?

A. In America the chief magistrate of the different republics takes the name of President.

— 30 —

RELIGION.

353. All races of men, even the most savage, appear to believe in the existence of some invisible being possessed of power superior to man. The various methods in which this faith is manifested, form so many different modes of religion, and exhibit one of the most striking diversities by which nations are distinguished from each other.

354. How may the different forms of religion be divided?

A. Into true and false.

355. In what does true religion consist?

A. In worshipping God, according to his revealed will.

356. In what does false religion consist?

A. In the worship of idols, and the rejection of the true God.

357. What are the principal systems of religion?

A. The Christian, Mahomedan, Pagan, and Jewish.

358. Who are Christians?

A. Those who believe in Christ, as the Saviour of mankind.

A Christian Church.

359. Into what churches are Christians divided?

A. Three: Catholic, Greek, and Protestant.

360. In what do these agree?

A. In the necessity of redemption through the Saviour.

361. In what do they differ?

A. In points of doctrine, and modes of worship.

362. How are Protestants divided?

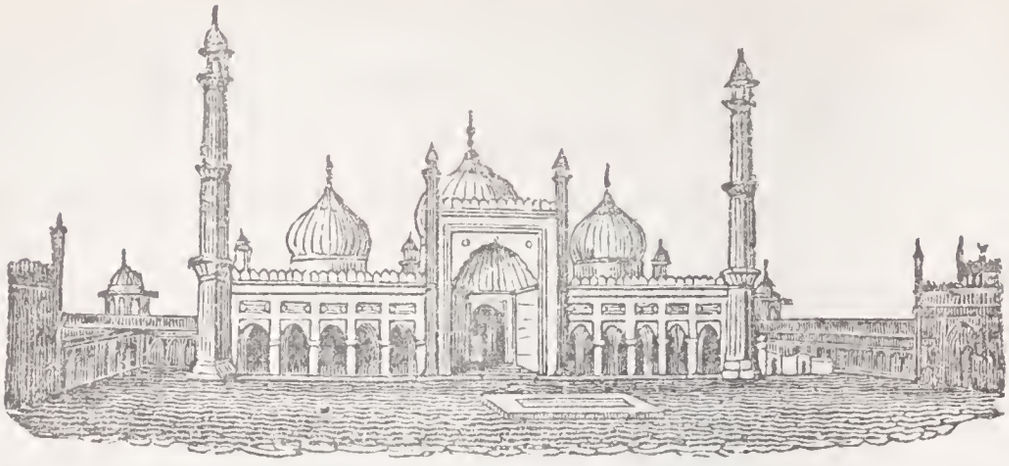
A. Into various sects; of which the chief are Episcopalians, Lutherans, Presbyterians, Baptists, Methodists, Friends, &c.

363. Who are Mahomedans, or Mussulmans?

A. Those who believe in Mahomed, a religious impostor, who lived in Arabia, about 600 years after Christ.

364. How are Mahomedans divided?

A. Into two sects: the sect of Ali, and the sect of Omar.



A Mahomedan Mosque.

— 31 —

365. Who are Pagans or Heathens?

A. Those who believe in false Gods, and who worship idols, beasts, birds, serpents, &c.

366. They comprise several classes, such as Bramins, Buddhists, worshippers of the Grand Lama, &c., and number more than one half the inhabitants of the earth.

A Pagan Temple.

367. Who are the Jews?

A. They are those who believe in the Old Testament, but reject the new, and expect a Saviour yet to come.

368. The Christian nations are much superior in knowledge and power to all others, and through the increase of their colonies, the influence of the press, and the exertions of the Missionaries, will no doubt, in the course of a few generations, spread their religion ever the greater part of the earth.

369. The importance attached by mankind, in all quarters of the world, to the worship of the Deity, is most strikingly displayed by the numbers of costly and splendid edifices erected for religious purposes.

What nations are superior in knowledge and power to all others?

What will cause their religion to be spread over the greater part of the earth?

To what do mankind, in all quarters of the world, attach importance?

How is it most strikingly displayed?

370. These are called among Christians, churches, cathedrals, and chapels; amongst the Mahomedans, they take the name of Mosques; and among the Pagan Hindoos, they are termed Pagodas.

32

LANGUAGES.

371. The diversities of language form one of the most striking points of distinction between the various nations of the earth, and their arrangement into a general system constitutes an important branch of geography. The languages of cultivated nations are both written and spoken; while those of savage and barbarous races are merely verbal, and are not reduced to writing.

372. The number of original languages in the world, is about 80, but the various dialects or branches derived from them, amounts to upwards of 3000, of which more than 1200 are American, and about 550 European. In Asia and Oceanica, there are nearly 1000, and in Africa, 276.

How many original languages are there in the world?

How many branches or dialects are derived from them?

How many of these are American?

How many are European?

How many are there in Asia and Oceanica?

How many are there in Africa?

373. The Chinese language is spoken by the greatest number of people, but the English is the most widely spread, and will probably become more general than any other. It is now spoken in every quarter of the globe, and is distinguished for its simplicity, conciseness, and strength.

374. The number of books printed in the English is, probably, greater than in any other language; and the influence of English literature is more extensive than any other existing.

What language is spoken by the greatest number of people?

Which is the most widely spread? Where is it spoken?

For what is it distinguished?

In what language is it probable that the greatest number of books is printed?

— 33 —

EXERCISES ON THE MAPS.

MAP OF THE WORLD, No. 1, BEFORE THE LEARNER.

Of what Hemispheres does this Map consist? En. and Wn.

What does the Eastern Hemisphere comprise?

A. All that part of the earth lying east of longitude 20 degrees west from Greenwich.

Hemisphere signifies half a globe.

What great divisions does the Eastern Hemisphere contain? Ee., Aa., Aa.

These divisions form the Eastern Continent, or Old World.

What does the Western Continent comprise?

A. All that part of the earth lying west of longitude 20 degrees west from Greenwich.

What great divisions does the Western Hemisphere contain? N.-Aa., S.-Aa.

These divisions form the Western Continent, or the New World.

What is a Continent? Refer to No. 53, page 14.

What great division lies partly in the Eastern and partly in the Western Hemisphere? Oa.

This division is composed entirely of islands.

Which Hemisphere contains the greatest amount of land? En.

Which Hemisphere contains the greatest amount of water? Wn.

Which Hemisphere contains the largest islands? En.

Which is the largest island in the world? Aa.

Which are the two next largest? Bo., N.-Ga.

Which is the largest division of the Eastern Hemisphere? Aa.

Which is the smallest division? Ee.

Which division of the Eastern Hemisphere extends farthest south? Aa.

Which extends farthest to the north? Aa.

Which extends farthest south, Europe or Asia? Aa.

Which extends farthest west? Aa.

Which extends farthest east? Aa.

— 34 —

Which is the most southern land in the Eastern Hemisphere? Es.-Ld., Ac.-Ct.

The most southern in the Western Hemisphere? Va.-Ld., Gs.-Ld.

What is an Ocean?

A. A vast body of salt water.

What five Oceans in the Eastern Hemisphere? Nn., Sn., Pc., Ac., In.

What four Oceans in the Western Hemisphere? Nn., Sn., Pc., Ac.

There are five Oceans, of which four extend into both Hemispheres. The Indian is the only Ocean that is wholly in one Hemisphere.

Which is the largest Ocean? Pc.

Which is the second in extent? Ac.

Which is the third in extent? In.

Which is the fourth in extent? Sn. or Antarctic.

Which is the fifth in extent? Nn. or Arctic.

Which is the largest division of the Western Hemisphere? N.-Aa.

Which extends farthest East? S.-A.

Which extends farthest West? N.-A.

Is North America in North or South Latitude? N.-Le.

Why is it in North Latitude?

Is South America mostly in North or in South Latitude? S.-Le.

Why is it mostly in South Latitude?

In what direction does South America lie from North America? S.

What regions lie south and south-east of South America? S.-Sd., S.-Oy., S.-Ld., G.-Ld.

What region lies south-west of South America? Va.-Ld.

35

MAP OF THE WORLD, NO. 2.

What Hemispheres does this map comprise? Nn. and Sn.

Which Hemisphere contains the greatest quantity of land? Nn.

Which Hemisphere contains the greatest quantity of water? Sn.

What great divisions are wholly in the Northern Hemisphere? Aa., Ee., N.-A.

What great divisions are partly in the Northern Hemisphere? Aa., S.-Aa., Oa.

What does the Northern Hemisphere comprise?

A. All that part of the earth north of the Equator.

What does the Southern Hemisphere comprise?

A. All that part of the earth south of the Equator.

What great divisions are partly in the Southern Hemisphere? Aa., S.-Sa., Oa.

What four regions lie nearest the North Pole? N.-Sa., N.-Za., Sn., Gd.

Nearest the South Pole? Va.-Ld., Ac.-Ct., Gs.-Ld., Es.-Ld.

The Antarctic Continent was discovered in 1840 by the United States Exploring Expedition, commanded by Lieutenant Wilkes; it is the most extensive region yet known south of the great continents.—*See Map No.* 3.

What navigator has sailed nearest the South Pole?

A. Captain James C. Ross, in 1840.

What other navigator sailed nearly as far south?

A. Captain James Weddel, in 1823.

Captain Ross sailed within 830 miles of the South Pole. Some navigators have gone still nearer to the North Pole: Captain Parry went within 500 miles of it, but was stopped by the ice from approaching closer. He found the sea, even in the middle of summer, covered with ice, and no signs of either birds or beasts were to be seen.

— 36 —

MAP NO. 4.—NORTH AMERICA.

What Ocean bounds North America on the East? Ac.

What Ocean bounds it on the West? Pc.

What Ocean bounds it on the North? Ac.

An Ocean is a vast body of salt water.

What Sea is north of British and Russian America? Pr.

What Sea between the West Indies and South America? Cn.

Tell what a Sea is. Refer to Question 22, page 9.

What great Gulf lies east of Mexico? Mo.

What Gulf between Mexico and California? Ca.

What Gulf west of Newfoundland? S.-Le.

What Gulf south-east of Boothia Felix? Ba.

What great Bay separates Pr. William's Land from Greenland? Bs.

What great Bay is south-west of Prince William's Land? Hs.

What Bay south of Hudson's Bay? Js.

What Bay between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? Fy.

What two Bays on the east coast of the United States? De., Ce.

What Bay east of Yucatan? Hs.

What Bay west of Yucatan? Ce.

What Bay east of Guatimala? Ga.

What Bay west of Alaska? Bl.

Describe a Bay. 24.

What Strait between America and Asia? Bs.
What Strait west of Greenland? Ds.
What does it connect? B.-By. and the A.-On.
What three Straits north of Labrador? Hs., Fs., Cd.
What Strait separates Newfoundland from Labrador? Be.
What is a Strait? 25.

What two Sounds in Baffin's Bay? Ss., Ls.
What Sound on the east coast of Greenland? Ds.
What two Sounds in Russian America? Nn., P.-Ws.
What Sound between Washington or Queen Charlotte's and Quadra and Vancouver's Island? Q.-Cs.
What Sound north of Cape Hatteras? Ae.
Describe a Sound. 26.

What five Lakes are in the northern part of the United States? Sr., Mn., Hn., Ee., Oo.
What river do they all flow into? S.-Le.
Name the principal Lakes in British America? Wg., Aa., G.-Se., G.-Br.
What Lake in the northern part of California? G. S. L.
What Lake is in the southern part of Guatimala? Na.
Tell what a Lake is. 29.

37

What River flows into the Polar Sea? Ms.
Name the two chief Rivers that flow into Hudson's Bay. Nn., Cl.
What River of the United States flows into the Pacific Ocean? Ca.
What River flows into the Gulf of California? Co.
Which two large Rivers flow into the Gulf of Mexico? Mi., Ne.
What River flows into the Gulf of St. Lawrence? S.-Le.
What River flows into the Gulf of Georgia? Fs.
What Rivers flow into San Francisco Bay? So., S.-Jn.
What River flows from Lake Chapala? Ge.
What River flows from Lake Nicaragua? S.-Jn.
Describe a River. 34.
How are Rivers shown on Maps? 174.

What Peninsula is in the south part of Russian America? Aa.
What Peninsula north of Hudson's Bay? Me.
What Peninsula in the southern part of British America? N. Sa.

What Peninsula in the southern part of the United States? Fa.

What Peninsula in the western part of Mexico? Ca.

What Peninsula in the eastern part of Mexico? Yn.

What is a Peninsula? 54.

What Island lies east of Greenland? Id.

What Island west of Greenland? Do.

What Island in Hudson Bay? Sn.

What Islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence? Nd., Ai., C.-Bn., P.-Es.

What Islands east of Savannah? Bs.

What Islands south-east from Florida? Ba.

What Islands between North and South America? W.-Is.

Which are the four largest of the West India Islands? Ca., Hi., Ja., P.-Ro.

These are called the Great Antilles.

Which are the two chief Islands on the west coast of British America? Qa. and Vs., and Wn. or Q. Ce.

Tell what Islands are. 56.

Which is the most western Cape of North America? P.-Ws.

Which is the most eastern Cape? Re.

Which is the most southern Cape? Ga.

Which is the most southern Cape of Greenland? Fl.

What three Capes on the east coast of the United States? Cd., Hs., Cl.

Which is the most southern Cape of the United States? Se.

The most southern Cape of California? Ls.

The most eastern Cape of Guatimala? G.-Ds.

What is a Cape? 57.

38

What Mountains extend through the whole of North America? Ry

In Mexico and Guatimala the continuation of the Rocky Mountains is called the Sierra Madre.

What Mountains extend along the W. coast of the U. States? C. R. and C. Mts.

What Mountains extend through the eastern part of the United States? Ay.

What two Mountains are in the southern part of Russian America? S.-Es., Fr.

In the western part of British America? Bn., Hr.

What is a Mountain? 59.

What Highlands are in the northern part of Greenland? A.-Hs.

Mountains and Hills are often called Highlands.

What three Peaks are in the western part of the United States? Fs., Ls., Ps.

Fremont's Peak is named after Captain Fremont of the United States Army. In the year 1842 that officer ascended to its summit, and ascertained its height.

Mountains that are higher than those around them are sometimes called Peaks.

What range of Mts. extend through Mexico and Guatimala? S. Mc.

What Volcano is in the southern part of Mexico? Pl.

What two Volcanoes are in Guatimala? Wr., Ca.

What is a Volcano? 62.

What Desert lies in the western part of the United States? G.-An.

What Desert lies west of the Colorado river? Sy.

What is a Desert? 70.

Which is the most western division of North America? R.-Aa.

This is called Russian America because it belongs to Russia.

Which is the most eastern division of North America? Gd.

This is sometimes called Danish America because it belongs to Denmark.

Which is the largest division in the North? B.-Aa.

This is called British America because it belongs to Great Britain.

Which is the largest division in the Centre? U.-S.

Which is the largest division in the South? Mo.

Which division lies south of Mexico? Ga.

This division is likewise called Central America.

What small division lies north of Guatimala? Be.

What great Archipelago lies east of Mexico and Guatimala? W.-Is.

What is an Archipelago? 23.

What is the capital of British America? Ml.

What is the capital of the United States? Wn.

What is the capital of Mexico? Mo.

What is the capital of Guatimala? S.-Sr.

What part of North America is crossed by the Tropic of Cancer? Mo.

What parts are crossed by the Arctic Circle? Gd., B.-Aa., R.-Aa.

In what Zone is the middle part of North America? N.-Te.

In what Zone is the southern part? Td.

In what Zone is the northern part? N.-F.

What countries of North America are in the North Frigid Zone? Gd., B.-Aa., R.-Aa.

What countries are in the North Temperate Zone? B.-Aa., U.-S., Mo.

What countries are in the Torrid Zone? Mo., Ga., W.-Is.

In what Zone is the largest part of North America? N.-Te.

— 39 —

MAP NO. 5.—UNITED STATES.

What country bounds the United States on the North? B.-Aa.

What Ocean bounds it on the East? Ac. On the West? Pc.

What Gulf bounds it on the South? Mo.

What Country south of the western part of the United States? Mo.

What five great Lakes are in the northern part of the United States? Sr., Hn., Mn., Ec., Oo.

What Lake lies east of Lake Ontario? Cn.

What Lake lies north-west of Lake Superior? Ws.

What Lake in the north-eastern part of Upper California? G. St.

What great River extends through the middle of the U. States? Mi.

Which are its three great western branches? Mi., As., Rd.

Which is its principal eastern branch? Oo.

Into what Gulf does the Mississippi flow? Mo.

What River with two names in the western part of the United States? On. or Ca.

What Rivers flow into San Francisco Bay? So., S.-Jn.

Which is the largest River of Upper California? Co.

What branch of the Colorado forms part of the south-western boundary of the United States? Ga.

What three Rivers flow into the Atlantic Ocean north of Cape Cod? Pt. Kc., Mc.

What three between Cape Cod and Cape Charles? Ct., Hn., De.

What three flow into Chesapeake Bay? Sa., Pc., Js.

What River flows into Albemarle Sound? Re.

What two flow into Pamlico Sound? Tr., Ne.

What seven Rivers flow into the Atlantic between Cape Lookout and Cape Cannaveral? C.-Fr., G.-Pe., Se., Sh., Aa., S.-Ms., S.-Js.

What three Rivers flow into the Gulf of Mexico east of the mouth of the Mississippi? Pl., Pa., Aa.

— 40 —

There are eight Capes on the Atlantic coast of the United States.

What are they? Cd., Mr., Cs., Hy., Hs., Lt., Fr., Cl

What two Capes are on the west side of Florida? Rn., Se.

What Cape west of Apalachee Bay? S.-Bs.

What four Capes are on the Pacific coast of the United States? Fy., Fr., Od., Mo.

What Points on the same coast? S.-Ge., Cn.

What Bays between Cape Cod and C. Hatteras? N.-Y., De., Ce.

What four Bays are on the west coast of Florida? Cm., Ta., Vr., Ae.

What three Bays between Cape St. Blas and the mouths of the Mississippi River? Pa., Me., Bk.

What Bays on the coast of Texas? Gn., Ma., E.-S., Ns.

What Sounds between Cape Lookout and C. Cod? Po., Ae., L.-Id.

What Island lies on the coast of Maine? M.-Dt.

What two Islands lie south of Massachusetts? Nt., M.-Vd.

What Island lies south of Rhode Island? Bk.

What Island lies south of Connecticut? L.-Id.

What Islands lie south of Florida? F.-Rs. and T.-Is.

Reefs signify low sandy islands.

What Islands near the south coast of Upper California? S.-Ba.

What Mts. in the western part of the United States? Ry.

What ranges in Oregon and Upper California lie near the coast of the Pacific? Ce., Ct.

What three ranges of Mountains are in the eastern part of the United States? Cd., Ay., B.-Re.

These three ranges are called sometimes the Apalachian Mountains.

In what State is the Black Mountain? N.-Ca.

This is the highest mountain in the eastern part of the United States.

What Mountains are in Pennsylvania and New Jersey? Be.

What Mountains are in Vermont and New Hampshire? Gn., We.

The White Mountains are the highest in New England.

Between what Mountains does the Gold Region of California lie? Ct., S.-Na.

41

How many States are there in the United States? 30.

How many Territories? Six. Ma., Mo., On., U.-Ca., N.-Mo., In.

There is also a District, called the District of Columbia, which you will see on Map No. 11. In 1846 it was diminished in extent: it contains Washington city, the capital of the United States. Thus the United States contains 37 separate divisions.

There are 14 States lying along the Atlantic Ocean between New Brunswick and the Florida Reefs.

What are they? Me., N.-H., Ms., R.-I., Ct., N.-Y., N.-J., De., Md., Va., N.-C., S.-C., Ga., Fa.

What State lies north of Long Island Sound? Ct.

To what State does Long Island belong? N.-Y.

What five States lie on the Gulf of Mexico? Ts., La., Mi., Aa., Fa.

What three States lie west of the Mississippi River? As., Mi., Ia.

What Territories between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mts.? Mo., In., Ma. N. Mo. the Rocky Mts. and the Pacific Ocean? On. Ca.

What five States lie directly east of the Mississippi River? Mi., Te., Ky., Is., Wn.

What State lies on both sides of the Mississippi? La.

What State is bounded in part by Lakes Huron, Michigan, and Superior? Mn.

What three States are bounded in part by Lake Erie? N.-Y., Pa., Oo.

What State is bounded in part by Lake Ontario? N.-Y.

What two States does Lake Champlain separate? N.-Y., Vt.

What two States are separated by the Connecticut River? N.-H., Vt.

What two States are separated by the Delaware River? Pa., N.-J.

What two States are separated by the Potomac River? Va., Md.

What two States are separated by the Savannah River? S.-C., Ga.

What two States are separated by the Chattahoochee River? Ga., Aa.

What five States are bounded in part by the Ohio River? Ia., Is., Oo., Ky., Va.

What two States are separated in part by the Cumberland Mountains? Va., Ky.

What two States are separated by the Alleghany Mountains? N.-C., Te.

42

Which is the largest State? Ts.

The smallest? R.-I.

What is the capital of the United States? Wn.

Which of the Eastern States have each two capitals? Ct., R.-I.

The six Eastern States are Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut.

What is the capital of each? Aa., Cd., Mr., Bn., Pe., Nt., Hd., N.-Hn.

The four Middle States are New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware.

What is the capital of each? Ay., Tn., Hg., Dr.

The ten Southern States are Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina,

South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas.

The capital of each? As., Rd., Rh., Ca., Me., My., Ta., Jn., B.-Re., An.

The ten Western States are Ohio, Kentucky, Tennessee, Michigan, Indiana, Illinois, Missouri, Arkansas, Wisconsin, and Iowa.

What is the capital of each? Cs., Ft., Nc., Lg., Is., Sd., J.-Cy., L.-Rk., Mn., I.-Cy.

Through what States does the 40th parallel of Latitude pass? N., Jy., Pa., Va., Oo., Ia., Is., Mo.

Through what Territory does it pass? In.

Through or near what Cities and Towns does it pass? Pa., Lr., Bd., Wg., Zc., Cs., Bn., Qy. These places have all the same or very nearly, the same latitude.

What six places have nearly the same latitude as Washington City? Wk., Ph., Mn., Vs., Va., S.-Cs.

By placing a ruler on the Map directly on the place named, keeping it parallel with the lines that cross the Map from east to west, the learned will see at once all those places that have the same latitude.

What places have the same latitude as the City of New-York? Nk., Br., Br., Pu., Lt., Pa., Bn.

What places have the same latitude as Boston? Wr., Dt., S.-Jh., Ga.

Through what States does the meridian of Washington pass? N.-Y., Pa., Md., Va., N.-C.

Through or near what Cities or Towns does it pass? Ea., Ga.

These places therefore have the same longitude as Washington City.

What four places have about the same longitude as Boston? Sm., Nt., Ph., Dr.

43

MAP NO. 17.—SOUTH AMERICA.

What Ocean bounds South America on the East? Ac.

What on the West? Pc.

What Sea bounds it on the North? Cn.

What are the principal Mountains of South America? As.

What is their length?

The highest peak, Mount Sorato, is nearly 5 miles high. It is the highest Mountain in America.

What is the next highest Mountain? Ii.

On what side of South America are the Andes? Wt.

What Mountains are on the East? Bn.

How long are they?

What Mountains are in the west part of Brazil? Gl.
What Mountains are between Brazil and Guiana? Ay.

Which is the largest River in South America? An.
Which is its largest branch? Ma.
Which is the second River in length? R.-Pa.
Which is the third? Oo.
Which is the fourth? S. Fo.
Into what Ocean do these flow? Ac.
What River flows into the Caribbean Sea? Ma.

Which is the most northern Cape of South America? Gs.
Which is the most southern Cape? Hn.
Which is the most eastern? S.-Re.
Which is the most western? Bo.

What two Gulfs are on the Caribbean Sea? Dn., Va.
What two are on the west coast? Gl., Ps.
What are the principal Bays on the west coast? Pa., Co.
What are the principal Bays on the east coast? A.-Ss., S.-Ms., S.-Ge.

What Islands are in the Caribbean Sea? B.-Ae., Ma.

These are a part of the Little Antilles, which form the southern division of the West Indies. Margarita belongs to Venezuela, and is the only West Indian Island that is owned by a South American power.

What five Islands north of South America? Td., To., Ga., Bs., S.-Vt.

These form a part of the Caribbee Islands.

What Island lies between the Amazon and Para rivers? Js.

What Islands on the coast of Brazil south of the Equator? Ia., As., S.-Sn., Ca., S.-Ca., Ti.

What Islands east of Patagonia? Fd.
What Island south of Patagonia? T.-Fo.
What Island east of Terra del Fuego? S.-Ld.
What Island east of Staten Land? S.-Ga.
What Islands south of Terra del Fuego? Cn.
What Island south of Chili? Ce.
What three Archipelagoes south of Chiloe? Cs., M.-Ds., Q.-As.
What Island south of the Gulf of Penas? Wn.
What Islands west of Chili? J.-Fs., S.-Fx.
What Island in the Gulf of Guay quil? Po.

— 44 —

What Lake lies in the north-west part of Venezuela? Mo.

What Lake forms part of the boundary between Peru and Bolivia? Ta.

What two Lakes are in Bolivia? Uy., Xs.

What three Lakes are in Buenos Ayres? Ve., Ps., Ia.

What two Lakes are in the southern part of Brazil? Ps., Mm.

What Lake in Peru forms the source of the Amazon River? Rs.

What are the extensive grassy plains in the east part of Brazil called? The Sm.

What are the elevated plains in the west part of Brazil called? C.-Ps.

Point out in Venezuela the word Llanos, and in Buenos Ayres the word Pampas. These are the names given to extensive plains in those parts of South America. They are, like the Sertam in Brazil, the Prairies in North America, and the Steppes of Asia, covered with grass, on which vast herds of cattle roam and feed.

The three most northern divisions on the west side of South America are called the Colombian States.

Which are they? Va., N.-Ga., Er.

The two next lying immediately south of these are called the Peruvian States.

What are their names? Pu., Ba.

Which is the largest division of South America? Bl.

Which is the smallest division? Py.

Which division belongs to the British, Dutch, and French? Ga.

Which is the most northern division of South America? N.-Ga.

Which is the most western division? Er.

Which is the most eastern division? Bl.

Which is the most southern division? Pa.

Which two divisions are separated by the Andes? B.-As. and Ci.

What is the Capital of New Granada? Ba. Of Venezuela? Cs.,

Of Equador? Qo. Of Peru? La.

Of Bolivia? Ca. Of Brazil? R.-Jo. Of Paraguay? An.

Of Uruguay? Mo. Of Buenos Ayres? B.-As. Of Chili? So.

What States does the Equator pass through? Bl., Va., N.-Ga., Er.

What is the Equator? 115.

What States does the Tropic of Capricorn pass through? Bl., Py., B.-As., Ba.

In what Zone is that part of South America that lies north of the Tropic of Capricorn? Td.

In what Zone is that part south of the Tropic of Capricorn? S. Te.

What portion of South America is in the Torrid Zone, the largest or smallest? Lt.

How do you know it is in the Torrid Zone? 189.

In what Latitude is the greatest part of South America? S. Lc.

Why is it in South Latitude? 131.

What is Latitude? 130.

In what Longitude is South America, reckoning from Greenwich? W. Lc.

How do you know it is in West Longitude? 151.

What is Longitude? 146.

45

MAP NO. 18. — EUROPE.

What Ocean bounds Europe on the West? Ac.

What Ocean bounds it on the North? Ac.

What Sea bounds it on the South? Mn.

What Mountains bound it on the East? Ul.

There are eight Seas in Europe. What are they? We., Bc., Nh., Ih., Mn., Ma., Bk., Av.

What Sea is on the north of Russia? We.

What Sea between Russia and Sweden? Bc.

What Sea between Scotland and Denmark? Nh.

What Sea between England and Ireland? Ih.

What Sea between Europe and Africa? Mn.

What Sea south of Turkey? Ma.

What two Seas south of Russia? Bk., Av.

What is the name of the Sea between Greece and Asia? Ao.

What is an Archipelago? 23.

What large Islands lie west of Europe? B.-Is.

The Island containing England, Scotland, and Wales, is called Great Britain.

What Island lies west of Great Britain? Id.

What four groups of Islands are west and north of the British Isles? Hs., Oy., Sd., Fe.

What large Island lies west of Norway? Id.

What Islands are in the Baltic Sea? Ad., Do., Ol., Gd., Od., Rn., Zd., Fn.

What Islands in the Mediterranean belong to Spain? Bc.

What Islands belong to France? Ca. To Great Britain? Ma., In. To Egypt? Ca.

What Island south of Italy? Sy.

What Mountain do you observe on it? Ea.

What Island east of Greece? Nt.

What small Island between Tuscany and Corsica? Ea.

This island is remarkable for being the place to which Napoleon Bonaparte was banished in 1814.

What Island bears the same name as a kingdom in Italy? Sa.

What small Island between England and Ireland? Mn.

What Gulf between Sweden and Russia? Ba.

What two Gulfs in the Baltic Sea? Fd., Ra.

What Gulf south of France? Ls.

What Gulf south of the Kingdom of Sardinia? Ga.

What Gulf east of Italy? Ve.

What Gulf in the Black Sea? Bs.

What Bay north of Spain? By.

46

What Channel between France and England? Eh.

What Channel between Wales and Ireland? S.-Gs.

What Channel between Ireland and Scotland? Nh.

What Channel between Denmark and Norway? S.-Rk.

What Channel between Denmark and Sweden? Ct.

What Channel between the Marmora and Black Seas? Ce.

What Strait between France and England? Dr.

What Strait between Europe and Africa? Gr.

What Strait between Corsica and Sardinia? Bo.

What Strait between the Mediterranean and the Sea of Marmora? Ds.

What Strait between the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov? Ee.

What Strait between Italy and Turkey? Oo.

What Mountains form the boundary between Europe and Asia? Ul.

What Mountains divide Sweden and Norway? Sn.

What Mountains divide France and Spain? Ps.

What Mountains in France? Cs., Ac.

What Mountains in the north of Spain? Cn.

What Mountains in the south of Spain? Sa.-Ma., Sa.-Na.

What Mountains in Switzerland? As., these are the highest in Europe. Mt. Blanc is the highest of the Alps, it is near three miles high.

What Mountains extend through Italy? Ac.

What Mountains in the east of Austria? Cn.

What Mountains extend through Turkey? Bn.

Which is the most northern cape of Europe? Nh.

Which is the most southern? Mn.

Which is the most southern cape of Norway? Ne.

Which is the most southern cape of England? Ld.-Pt.

Which is the most southern cape of Ireland? Cr.

Which is the most northern cape of Spain? Ol.

Which is the most western cape of Spain? Fe.

Which is the most southern cape of Portugal? S.-Vt.

Which is the most southern cape of Greece? Mn.

What Rivers flow into the White Sea? Oa., Da., Me.

What Rivers flow into the Gulf of Bothnia? Ua., Ta., Kx., La., Sa. Il., La., Dl.

What Rivers flow into the Baltic Sea? Da., Nn., Va., Or.

What Rivers flow into the North Sea? Ec., Wr., Es., Re.

What Rivers flow into the Atlantic Ocean? Sn., Sc., Le., Ge., Mo., Do., Ts., Ga., Gr.

What Rivers flow into the Mediterranean Sea? Eo., Re., Tr.

What River flows into the Gulf of Venice? P.

What Rivers flow into the Black Sea? De., Dr., Bg., Dr.

What River flows into the Sea of Azov? Dn.

47

What Peninsula lies west of the Baltic Sea and the Gulf of Bothnia? Sn. Ny.

What Peninsula lies south of Norway? Dk.

What Peninsula lies south of France? Sn., Pl.

What Peninsula lies west of the Gulf of Venice? Iy.

What Peninsula lies south of Turkey? Ge.

What Peninsula lies west of the Sea of Azov? Ca.

What grand division of the earth lies east of Europe? Aa.

What country lies east of the Ural Mountains? Sa.

What is the largest division in Europe? Ra.

What divisions lie west of the Baltic Sea and the Gulf of Bothnia? Sn., Ny.

What division lies south of the Baltic Sea? Pa.

What division lies west of the Black Sea? Ty.

What division lies west of the Archipelago? Ge.

What division lies west of the Gulf of Venice? Iy.

What division lies north of the Gulf of Venice? Aa.

What division lies north of the Mediterranean Sea? Fe.

What divisions lie west of the Mediterranean Sea? Sn., Pl.

What divisions lie on the Black Sea? Ty., Ra.

What seven divisions lie on the North Sea? Ny., Sd., Ed., Dk., Hr., Hd., Bm.

What divisions lie on the Baltic Sea? Sn., Dk., Ra., Pa.

What divisions lie on the Atlantic Ocean? Ny., Sd., Id., Fe., Sn., Pl.

What divisions lie on the Mediterranean Sea? Sn., Fe., Iy., Ge.

What is the Capital of Sweden? Sm. — Of Russia? S.-Pg. — Of Denmark? Cn.—Of Hanover? Hr.—Of England? Ln.—Of Holland? He. — Of Belgium? Bs. — Of Prussia? Bn. — Of Saxony? Dn.—Of Wirtemberg? Sd. — Of Bavaria? Mh. — Of Switzerland? Be. — Of France? Ps. — Of Spain? Md. — Of Portugal? Ln. — Of Sardinia? Tn.—Of Tuscany? Fe.—Of the Popedom? Re.—Of Naples? Ns. — Of Austria? Va. — Of Turkey? Ce. — Of Greece? As.

In what Latitude is Europe? N.-Le. — How do you know it is in North Latitude? In what Longitude is it mostly? E.-Le.—How do you know it is in East Longitude? What parts of Europe are in West Longitude? Pl., Sn., Fe., Ed., Sd., Id.—Which is the most Northern Country of Europe? Ny. — Which is the most Southern? Ge. — Which is the most Eastern? Ra.—Which is the most Western? Id.

48

MAP NO. 23. — ASIA.

What great division bounds Asia on the West? Ee.

What great division bounds Asia on the North-east? N.-Aa.

What great division bounds it on the South-west? Aa.

What Ocean bounds it on the North? Ac. or Northern.

What Ocean bounds it on the South? In.
What Ocean bounds it on the East? Pc.

What Sea divides Asia from Africa? Rd.
What Sea separates Hindoostan from Arabia? An.
What Sea lies west of Syria? Mn.
What two Seas lie north of Turkey? Ma., Bk.
What Sea lies east of Nova Zembla? Ka.
What Sea lies east of Kamtschatka? Ka.
What Sea lies west of Kamtschatka? Ok.
What Sea lies west of the Kurile Islands? Jo.
What Sea lies between Niphon and Corea? Jn.
What Sea lies west of Corea? Yw.
What Sea lies east of Cochin China? Ca.
Asia contains three interior Seas: which are they? Cn., Al., Dd.

What Mountains separate Europe from Asia? Ul.
What Mountains bound Siberia on the South? L.-Ai., G.-Ai.
What Mountains extend through Mongolia? Tn.
What Mountains bound Thibet on the North? Kn.
What Mountains bound Hindoostan on the North-east? Hh.
Which is the highest of the Himmaleh mountains and its height? Di.
What Mountains in the southern part of Hindoostan? Gt.
What Mountains are in Turkey? Ts.
What Mountains are in Persia? Ez.
What Mountains bound Independent Tartary on the South? H., Kh.
What Mountains are in China? Pg., Mg.
What Mountains separate Circassia from Georgia? Cs.

What three Gulfs are in the north part of Siberia? Oe., Yi., La.
What two Gulfs between Persia and Arabia? Pn., Os.
What two Gulfs on the west coast of Hindoostan? Ch., Cy.
What Gulf separates Hindoostan from Ceylon? Mr.
What Gulf south of Birmah? Mn.
What Gulf between Siam and Cambodia? Sm.
What Gulf east of Anam? Tn. What near the Yellow Sea? Pc.
What Gulf north of Kamtschatka? Ar.

Which is the most northern Cape of Asia? C.-Vi.
Which is the most southern Cape? Ra.

Which is the most eastern Cape? Et.

Which are the most southern Capes of Hindoostan and Birmah? Cn. and Ns.

— 49 —

What three great Rivers flow into the Northern Ocean? Oe., Yi., La.
What River flows into the Channel of Tartary? Ar.
What two large Rivers flow through China? Ho., Yg.
What River separates Cochin China from Cambodia? Ca.
What River flows into the Gulf of Martaban? Iy.
What two Rivers flow into the Bay of Bengal? Gs., Br.
What River bounds Hindoostan on the west? Is.
What two Rivers unite and flow into the Persian Gulf? Es., Ts.
What Rivers flow into the Caspian Sea? Va., Ul.
What two Rivers flow into the Sea of Aral? Ao., Sn.
What River flows through Little Bokhara? Cr.

What Island west of Syria? Cs.
What Island south of Hindoostan? Cn.
What Islands in the Bay of Bengal? An., Nr.
What Island west of Malacca? P.-Pg.
What Island south of China? Hn.
What Islands east of China? Fa., L.-Co.
What Islands form the Empire of Japan? Jo., Nn., Se., Ku.
What Island east of Mantchooria? Sn.
What Islands south of Kamtschatka? Ke.
What range of Islands east of Kamtschatka? An.
What three Islands north of Siberia? Ki., Lf., N.-Sa.

What Strait separates Asia from North America? Bs.
What Strait between the Islands of Jesso and Niphon? My.
What Strait between Corea and Japan? Ca.
What Strait between China and Formosa? Fa.
What Strait between Malacca and Sumatra? Ma.
What Strait between Arabia and Abyssinia? Bb.
What two great divisions does this Strait separate? Aa., Aa.

What Peninsula lies between the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea? Aa.
What Peninsula south of Siam? Ma.
What Peninsula between the Yellow Sea and the Sea of Japan? Ca.
What Peninsula between the seas of Ochotsk and Kamtschatka? Ka.

What Isthmus between the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea? Sz.
What two great divisions does it unite? Aa., Aa.
What Isthmus west of the Gulf of Siam? Kw.

— 50 —

What three Lakes are in the southern part of Siberia? Ty., An., Bl.
What two are in Soongaria? Bh., Z.-Nr.
The word Nor in Central or Middle Asia, appears to mean Lake.
What Lake is in Little Bokhara? L.-Nr.
What three Lakes in China? K.-Nr., Tg., Pg.
What Lake in Afghanistan? Zh.
The Caspian, Aral, and Dead Seas, are in fact Lakes, but have been called Seas because their waters are salt.

To what Empire do the Northern parts of Asia belong? Rn.
What Empire in the middle and eastern parts of Asia? Ce.
What great division in the south of Asia? Ia.
What country north of the Altai Mountains? Sa.
What great division south of the Altai Mountains? C.-Ty.
What great division east of the Caspian Sea? I.-Ty.
What country south of the Black Sea? Ty.
What country east of the Mediterranean Sea? Sa.
What country east of the Red Sea? Aa.
What country south of the Caspian Sea? Pa.
What countries east of Persia? An., Bn.
What country between the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal? Hn.
What countries east of the Bay of Bengal? Bh., Sm.
What division east of the Cambodia River? Am.
What countries are included in Anam? Ca., C.-Ca., Tn. part of Ls.
What country north of Anam? Ca.
The Chinese Empire includes nine different countries; what are they? Sa., Ma., Ma., L.-Ba., L.-Tt., Tt., Bn., Ca., Ca.
Independent Tartary includes six different countries; what are they? Ks., Ta., Ka., Kn., G.-Ba., Kz.
Afghanistan includes two different States; what are they? Ht., Cl.
What Empire lies east of the Chinese Empire? Jn.

What is the Capital of Siberia? Tk.—Of the Tartar States, Kokan, Khiva, and Bokhara? Kn., Ka., Ba.—Of Persia? Tn.—Of the Arabian States, Hedjaz, Yemen, Nedsjed, and Oman? Ma., Sa., Da., Mt.—Of Herat? Ht.—Of Cabul? Cl.—Of Lahore? Lc.—

Of Hindoostan? Ca. — Of Thibet? La. — Of Birmah? Aa. — Of Siam? Bk. — Of Anam? He. — Of China? Pn. — Of Corea? Ko.— Of Japan? Jo.

What country in Asia does the Arctic Circle pass through? Sa.

What countries does the Tropic of Cancer pass through? Aa., Hn., Bh., Ca.

In what Zone is the northern part of Asia? N. Fd.

In what Zone is the central part of Asia? N.-Te.

In what Zone is the southern part of Asia? Td.

In what Latitude is Asia wholly? N.-Le.

How do you know it is in North Latitude? 135.

In what Longitude is Asia from Greenwich? E.-Le.

How do you know it is East Longitude? 151.

— 51 —

MAP NO. 25. — AFRICA.

What Sea bounds Africa on the North? Mn.

What Sea bounds it on the East? Rd.

What Ocean bounds it on the East? In.

What Ocean bounds it on the West? Ac.

What Strait separates Morocco from Spain? Gr.

What Strait separates Abyssinia from Arabia? Bb.

What Gulf between Tripoli and Barca? Sa.

What Gulf between Berbera and Arabia? An.

What Gulf south of Upper Guinea? Ga.

What Bays on the southern part of the west coast? G.-Fh., Wh., S.-Cr., S.-Ha.

What Bay on the east coast north of Caffraria? Da.

What Channel between Madagascar and Mozambique? Mc.

Which is the most northern Cape of Africa? Bn.

Which is the most southern Cape? As.

What is the most eastern Cape? Gi.

Which is the most western Cape? Ve.

What celebrated Cape near the southern extremity of Africa? G.-He.

What two Capes on the desert coast? Br., Bo.

What Cape at the southern extremity of Liberia? Ps.

What Cape at the northern extremity of Mozambique? Do.

What Cape at the northern extremity of Zanguebar? Bs.

Which is the principal River in Africa? Ne.

The Nile is remarkable for flowing 1600 miles without receiving the smallest tributary.

Into what Sea does the Nile empty? Mn.

What are its three chief branches? Ad., Ai., Te.

What three Rivers empty into the Atlantic Ocean on the west coast of Africa? Sl., Ga., R.-Ge.

What River in Liberia? S.-Ps.

What River empties into the Gulf of Guinea? Nr.

This is a very remarkable river; though heard of 20 centuries ago, its source and mouth were discovered only a few years since.

What River between Angola and Benguela? Ca.

What River between Loango and Congo? Co.

What River south of Benguela? Bc.

What River runs through the country of the Hottentots? Os.

What River flows into Delagoa Bay? Me.

What River flows into the Mozambique Channel? Ze.

What Rivers run through Zanguebar? Oe., We.

What Rivers flow into Lake Tchad? Yu., Sy.

What two Lakes in Soudan? Td., Fe.

What Lake north of Bambarra? De.

What Lake in Abyssinia? Da.

What Lake in Barbary? Lh.

What Lake west of Zanguebar and Mozambique? Mi.

52

What three groups of Islands in the Atlantic Ocean belong to Portugal? Ae., Ma., C.-Ve.

What group of Islands belongs to Spain? Cy.

What three Islands in the Gulf of Guinea belong to Portugal? Ps., S.-Ts., An.

Which is the most northern Island in the Gulf of Guinea? F.-Po.

What two Islands south of the Equator belong to Great Britain? An., S.-Ha.

St. Helena is remarkable for being the place of imprisonment and burial of Napoleon Bonaparte. He died here in 1821, after a residence of six years. In the year 1840, his remains were taken to France.

What great Archipelago in the Indian Ocean? En.

What are its principal Islands and groups? Mr., Co., Se., Ae., Ma.

Which are the Mascarenha Islands? Bn., Ms.

The latter is often called the Isle of France.

What Islands belong to Great Britain? Ms., Se., Ae.

What Island belongs to France? Bn.

What Islands belong to Muscat? Pa., Zr., Ma.

What Islands between Madagascar and Mozambique? Co.

What Islands north-east of Cape Guardafui? Sa., A.-Ca.

To what power does Socotra belong? Kn.

What Mountains extend through Barbary? As.

What is the highest Peak of the Atlas Mountains? Mn. How high is it?

What Mountains between Soudan and Guinea? Kg.

What Mountains between Soudan and Ethiopia? Mn.

What Mountains in Congo? Cl.

What Mountains in Cape Colony? Sw.

What Mountains west of Mozambique? La.

These Mountains have been called by geographers the Back-Bone of the world, but their very existence is now considered doubtful.

What Mountains in Madagascar? Ra., Rd.

What great division occupies the northern part of Africa? By.

What States does Barbary include? Mo., As., Ts., Ti., B.-Jd.

What great division lies south of Barbary? G.-Dt.

What great divisions lie south of the Great Desert? Sn., Sa.

What great divisions lie south of Soudan? U.-Ga., L.-Ga. and Ea.

What great division lies west of Soudan? Sa.

What great division on the west coast on both sides of the Equator? L.-Ga.

What great division on the east coast on both sides of the Equator? Zr.

What great division lies south of the Mountains of the Moon? Ea.

What colony occupies the southern extremity of Africa? C.-Cy.

What two races of men inhabit the country north of Cape Colony? Hs., Bs.

53

What countries lie on the Red Sea? Et., Na., Aa.

In what country are the mouths of the river Nile situated? Et.

What is the district comprised between the outlets of the river Nile called? Da.

What is a Delta?

It is a term applied to those districts embraced by the outlets of rivers. The Nile, Niger, Ganges, Mississippi, and other great streams, have each their respective deltas.

What Desert occupies a large portion of the north of Africa? G.-Dt.

What Desert between the river Nile and the Red Sea? Nn.

What Desert is crossed by the Tropic of Capricorn? Ch.

How long and wide is the Great Desert?

This is the largest Desert in the world; and though extremely hot, and in most places destitute of water, yet contains a number of fertile spots called Oases, all of which are inhabited.

Which are the five principal Oases? Fn., Tt., As., Bh., Ty.

There are four other Oases: which are they? Aa., Sh., E.-Dl., E.-Kh.

What is the western part of the Great Desert called? Sa.

What is the Capital of Morocco? Mo. — Of Algiers? As. — Of Tunis? Ts. — Of Tripoli? Ti. — Of Fezzan? Mk. — Of Egypt? Co. — Of Nubia? N.-Da. — Of Foota Jallon? To. — Of Ashantee? Ce. — Of Dahomey? Ay. — Of Benin? Bn. — Of Kaarta? Ko. — Of Timbuctoo? To. — Of Bambarra? So. — Of Houssa? Ka. — Of Yarriba? Eo. — Of Bornou? Ka. — Of Bergoo? Wa. — Of Darfur? Ce. — Of Kordofan? It. — Of Abyssinia? Gr. — Of Congo? S.-Sr. — Of Angola? S.-P.-Lo. — Of Benguela? S.-F.-Ba. — Of Cazembe? Ce. — Of Monomotapa? Zo. — Of Mozambique? Of Cape Colony? C. Tn. — Of Imerina? Tu.

What parts of Africa are crossed by the Tropic of Cancer? G. Dt., Et.

What parts by the Equator? L.-Ga., Ea., Zr.

What parts by the Tropic of Capricorn? Hs., D.-Ch., Bs., Me.

In what Zone is Africa mostly? Td.

In what Zone is that part of it north of the Tropic of Cancer? N. Te.

In what Zone is that part of it south of the Tropic of Capricorn? S. Te.

Africa comprises about 37 degrees of North Latitude, and 35 degrees of South Latitude. In what Latitude then is it mostly situated? N.-Le.

Africa comprises more than 50 degrees of East Longitude, and about 18 degrees of West Longitude. In what Longitude is it then mostly? E.-Le.

— 54 —

MAP NO. 28.—OCEANICA.

Which are the three grand divisions of Oceanica? Ma., Aa., Pa.

Which is the largest division of Oceanica? Pa.
Which is the smallest division of Oceanica? Ma.

What three considerable Islands does the Equator pass through in Malaysia? Sa., Bo., Cs.
What Island lies south-east of Sumatra? Ja.
What five Islands east of Java? By., Sa., Ja., Fs., Tr.
What Islands east of Celebes? Se.
What Islands east of the China Sea? Pe.
Which are the two largest of the Philippine Islands? Ln., Mo.

What Strait separates Sumatra from Malacca? Ma.
What Strait separates Sumatra from Java? Sa.
American vessels generally pass through the Straits of Sunda on going to or returning from China.
What Strait between Borneo and Celebes? Mr.
What Islands between Borneo and Mindanao? So.
What Mountain in Sumatra directly under the Equator?

Which is the largest Island of Australasia? Aa.
What are its divisions? W.-Aa., S.-Aa. and Ns.-W.
What Colony on the east coast of Australia? B.-By.
What Colony on the west coast? S.-Rr. On the south? S.-Aa.
What Island south of Australia? V.-D.-Ld. or Ta.
What Strait separates Australia from Van Dieman's Land? Bs.
What Strait separates Australia from Papua or New Guinea? Ts.
What two Gulfs on opposite sides of Australia? Ca., Ss.
Which is the principal River? My. Largest Lake? Ts.
Which are the principal Mountains in Australia? Be., Bs.
Which is its principal Town? Sy.

What large Island north of Australia? Pa. or N.-Ga.
What Islands north-east of Australia? S.-Ao., N.-Ga., N.-Id., N.-Bn., Le.
What Islands east of Australia? N.-Hs., N.-Ca., Nk.
What Sea between Australia and New Hebrides? Cl.
What Islands south-east of Australia? N.-Zd.
What Strait between the two largest Islands of New Zealand? Ce.
What Strait between the middle and southernmost Island of New Zealand? Fx.
What Bays in the northern part of New Zealand? Is., Py.

— 55 —

Which Archipelago of Polynesia does the Equator pass through? Cl.

Which are the principal Archipelagoes and Islands of Polynesia north of the Equator? Ms.-A., As.-A., Ce., Le., Sh., Aa.

What Archipelago lies on the 140th meridian of Longitude west from Greenwich? Ms.

What groups of Islands does it contain? Wn., Ms.

Which are the principal Islands east of the 160th meridian of Longitude west from Greenwich, and south of the Equator? Sy., Gn., Cs., Al., Ps., Pu., Gr., P.-Ws., K.-Gs.

Which are the principal Islands that lie west of the 160th meridian of Longitude west from Greenwich, and south of the Equator? Ns., Fy., Fe., Hi., Ta., Kc.

What is the most northern Island of Polynesia? Ms.

Which are the most southern Isles of Polynesia? Kc.

Which is the most eastern Island of Polynesia? Er.

Which are the most western Islands of Polynesia? S.-As.

The most important group of Islands belonging to Polynesia is on the 20th parallel of North Latitude. Which is it? Sh.

Which is the principal of the Sandwich Islands? Hi. or Oe.

What high Mountain is on the Island of Hawaii and its height? M.-R.

What distinguished personage was killed here in the year 1779? C. Ck.

What Tropic crosses the northern part of Oceanica? Cr

What Tropic crosses the southern part? Cn.

What great Circle crosses the central or middle part? Er

In what Zone is the northern part of Oceanica? N.-Te.

In what Zone is the middle parts? Td.

In what Zone is the southern part? S.-Te.

Oceanica comprises 50 degrees of South Latitude, and 40 North Latitude.

In what Latitude then is it mostly? Sh.

Oceanica comprises about 85 degrees of east and 72 of west Longitude from Greenwich.

In what Longitude then is it mostly? Et.

PART SECOND.

DESCRIPTIVE GEOGRAPHY.

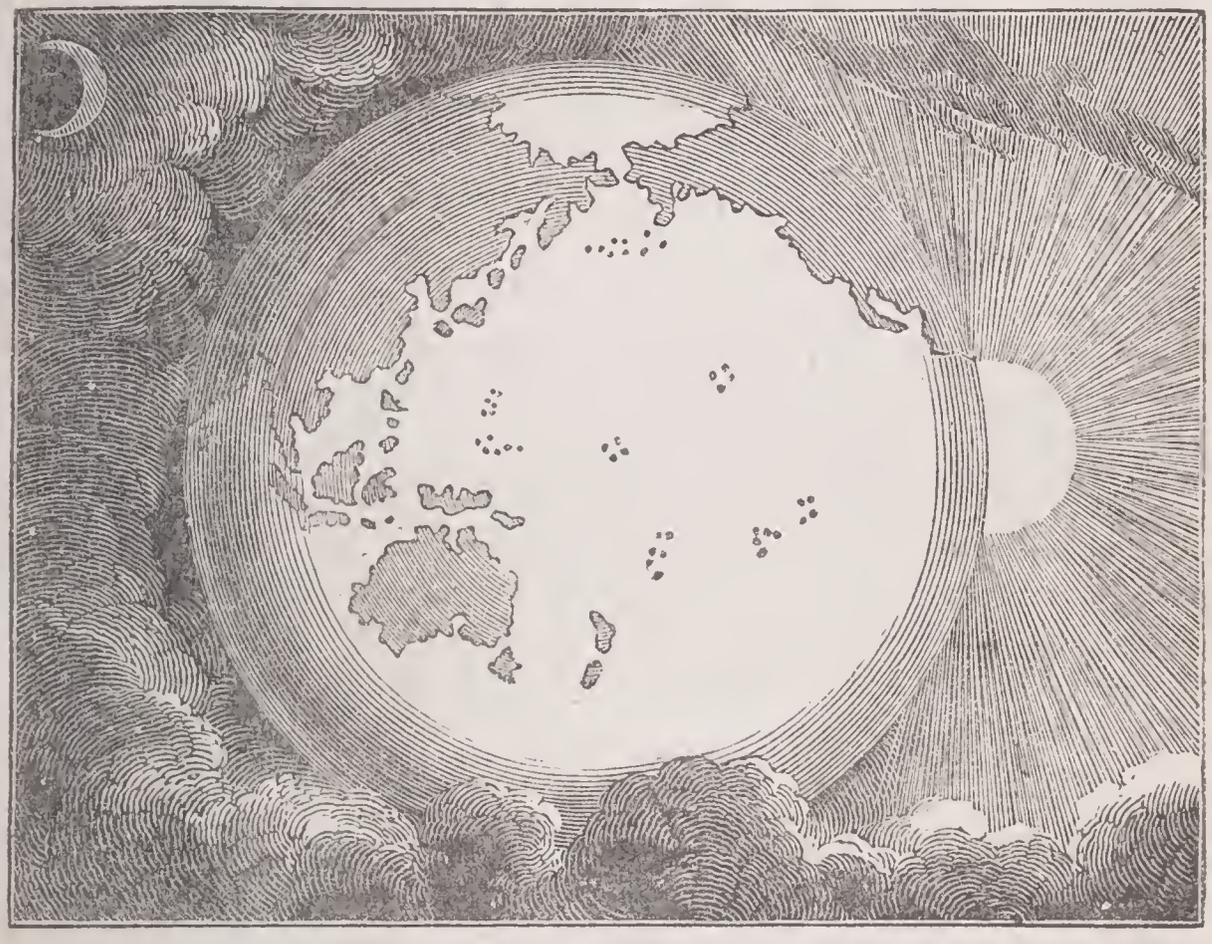


Figure and Population of the Earth.

56

1. The Earth is a vast globe or spherical body similar to a solid ball. Its entire surface is about 200 millions of square miles, of which one-fourth or 50 millions of square miles is land, and the remaining three-fourths are covered with water.

2. Ignorant people suppose the earth to be a flat body, bounded on all sides by the sea and sky. More attentive observers were, however, long ago persuaded that it is a globe or sphere, similar in form to a ball or apple.

3. Various circumstances render it evident that the earth must be a body round in every direction; of which one of the

---

1. What is the earth? What is its entire surface? How much is land? How much is water? 2. What do ignorant people suppose the earth to be? Of what were more attentive observers persuaded? 3. What is one of the most striking proofs that the earth is round in

most striking proofs is that furnished by an eclipse of the moon, which takes place in consequence of the earth coming between the sun and the moon, and causing the circular shadow of the earth to be thrown on the latter body.

4. If the earth, instead of being round in all directions, was merely a circular flat body like the top of a round table, the shadow thrown from it on the moon would at one time or other present the appearance of an oval, of a straight line, or some other figure different from that which it has always been found to assume.

5. Sailing round the world is another proof of its globular form. It is well known that navigators, by leaving any sea-port, Philadelphia for instance, and sailing as nearly east or west from it as the form of the different continents will permit, may go round the world and return to the place they left in a direction opposite to that from which they started.

6. To sail round the world is called circumnavigating it, and was first accomplished by Magellan, a Portuguese navigator, more than three hundred years ago. It was for a long time considered a great undertaking, but it has been of late years so often performed, that it is not now thought to be an enterprise of any importance.

— 57 —

7. When a ship comes from sea towards the land, we first get sight of the tops of the masts and rigging; as she advances nearer, the lower parts are seen; and at last the hull, or body of the vessel, comes distinctly into view. If the earth were not spherical, the hull would be the first part seen.

8. A person sailing to the southern parts of the earth, perceives that the sun appears more and more to come directly over him at noon, which at length actually happens; and after he has passed the Equator, the sun begins to appear to the northward, and will go farther and farther in that direction as he advances south.

9. New stars will also come into view in the southern horizon, while those in the northern parts will gradually disappear. These circumstances could not possibly happen if the earth were a flat body, whereas

---

every direction? 4. If the earth was a circular flat body, what appearance would its shadow present? 5. What is another proof of its globular form? How must navigators sail to go round the world? 6. What is it called? Who was the first that did it? What was it for a long time considered? 7. What do we first get sight of when a ship comes from sea? What at last comes distinctly into view? 8. What will a person sailing to the south perceive? After he has passed the Equator what will begin to appear? 9 What will come into view?

Ship coming from Sea.

on the supposition that it is spherical, they all appear simple and probable.

10. The inhabitants of the earth amount to about eight hundred millions, and if they were equally distributed, every square mile of land would contain 16 human beings.

11. On an average, a generation of men is supposed to exist about 33 years. Some individuals live more than twice, and a very few three times that period; but the estimate is that 800 millions of human beings are born and die every 33 years; being at the rate of almost 25 millions a year, 66,000 every day, 2700 every hour, and 45 every minute.

12. The creation of the world, according to the book of Genesis, took place near 6,000 years ago, so that supposing the average duration of life to have been always the same, about 175 generations of men would have existed since that time.

13. In the early ages of the earth, however, the duration of life was greater than at present; therefore, it is probable that a smaller number of generations of men must have existed than according to the above calculations.

What could not possibly happen? 10. How many inhabitants are there on the earth? Suppose they were equally distributed, what would be the effect? 11. How long on an average does a generation of men exist? How many are born and die every thirty-three years? How many die every year? Every day? Every hour? Every minute? 12. How long has the world been created? How many generations are supposed to have lived since that time? 13. When was the duration of life greater

— 58 —

14. The world comprises five great divisions, viz: America, Europe, Asia, Africa, and Oceanica; these are each subdivided into various Empires, Kingdoms, Republics, &c.

15. America is a great continent, entirely separated from the other parts of the earth. It is often called the New World, and also the Western continent.

16. Europe is the smallest of the five grand divisions, yet it contains the most powerful nations in the world.

17. Asia is the largest division of the Globe, and comprises more than one-half of the Eastern continent. It is the most populous quarter of the earth.

18. Africa is a great peninsula, united to Asia by the isthmus of Suez. It is the least known of any of the great divisions of the earth.

19. Oceanica comprises the various groups of Islands situated in the Pacific Ocean between the Eastern and Western continents.

20. Of the population of the earth, 423 millions belong to the European or Caucasian race, 283 millions to the Asiatic or Mongolian race, 92 millions to the African or Negro race, 22 millions to the Malay race, and 10 millions to the American race.

	Square Miles	Population.		Square Miles.
America	15,000,000	51,554,000	Northern Ocean	6,000,000
Europe	3,500,000	250,800,000	Pacific do.	77,000,000
Asia	16,000,000	450,000,000	Atlantic do.	34,000,000
Africa	11,000,000	57,000,000	Indian do.	20,000,000
Oceanica	4,500,900	20,925,000	Southern do.	13,000,000
	50,000,000	830,279,000		150,000,000

than at present? 14. What does the world comprise? What are they? 15. What is America? 16. What is Europe? 17. What is Asia? 18. What is Africa? 19. What does Oceanica comprise? 20. Of the population of the earth, how many belong to the European race? The Asiatic? the African? The Malay? The American? Tell from the table the number of square miles and population in America. In Europe. In Asia. In Africa. In Oceanica. Tell the extent in square miles of the Northern Ocean. The Pacific. The Atlantic. The Indian. The Southern.

AMERICA.

Landing of Columbus.

— 59 —

1. America is an extensive continent, comprising one of the grand divisions of the globe. It contains about three-tenths of the dry land on the surface of the earth, and is washed on all sides by vast oceans.

2. Its climate is various, embracing that of every Zone; the torrid, the temperate on both sides of the equator, and part of the frigid. It is said to be colder, generally, than in places in the same latitude in other parts of the world.

3. This continent is distinguished for the variety and richness of its vegetable productions, the number of its mines of gold, silver, and precious stones, and for the freedom of its political institutions.

4. The inhabitants amount to about 50 and a half millions, of whom 22 millions are whites, 10 millions of Indians, 9 millions of negroes, and 9 and a half millions of the mixed races.

5. The whites are chiefly English in the North, and Spaniards in

---

America. Q.—1. What does America contain? 2. What is said of the climate? 3. For what is this continent distinguished? 4. What is the number of inhabitants? 5. What are the Whites?

the South, with some French, Portuguese, Germans, Dutch, &c. The negroes are Africans and their descendants, who were purchased as slaves in their native country and brought hither from time to time.

6. The aboriginal population consists of two distinct races; the Esquimaux* inhabiting the shores and Islands of the Arctic regions, and the copper-coloured Indians who are spread over the rest of the continent.

7. America is called the Western continent, because it lies westward of Europe, and the New World from its recent discovery. It was unknown to European nations until the year 1492, when it was discovered by Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, in Italy, and the most skilful navigator of his age.

8. The great object which then engaged the attention of the maritime nations of Europe, was a passage by sea to the East Indies.

9. The spherical figure of the earth, which Columbus understood, led him to believe that the eastern parts of the world stretched so far towards Europe, that they might be reached in a moderate space of time by sailing westward, and he proposed to undertake the voyage.

10. This project, however, was regarded generally as so visionary, that it was only after many years of ardent solicitation, that Ferdinand and Isabella, King and Queen of Spain, were induced to patronize the undertaking.

— 60 —

11. Columbus was furnished by these sovereigns with three small vessels, and ninety men, and left Palos, a port on the south of Spain, August 3d, 1492. On the 12th of October following, he discovered Guanahani Island, one of the Bahamas, which he named St. Salvador.

12. He visited at that time several of the adjacent Islands, and returned to Spain, where he was received with the greatest honours. He made three other successful voyages of discovery, but was, notwithstanding, treated with gross injustice by those who were envious of the fame he had acquired.

The Negroes? 6. The Aboriginal population? 7. What is America frequently called? In what year was it discovered? Who discovered it? 8. What great object engaged the attention of the nations of Europe at that period? 9. What idea did Columbus conceive? 10. Who patronized him? 11. What did they furnish him with? When did he leave Spain? When did he discover Guanahani? 12. What did he visit at that time? How was he received in Spain?

---

* *Esquimaux*, Es'-ke-mo.

13. The discovery of Columbus excited a spirit of maritime enterprise unknown and unfelt at any time before, and drew numerous adventurers from all parts of Europe.

14. In 1497, John Cabot, and his son Sebastian, natives of Venice, in the service of Henry VII. of England, discovered North America, and explored the coast from Newfoundland to Florida.

15. In 1499, Americus Vespucius, a native of Florence, visited South America. On his return to Europe, he published the first account of the New World, of which he claimed the original discovery, and thereby gave his name to the Western Continent. This however does not lessen the glory which crowns the discovery of Columbus, and which will descend with his memory to the most distant ages.

16. It was at first supposed that America was a part of the Eastern Continent; the Islands first discovered received therefore the name of the West Indies, and the inhabitants that of Indians, which was afterwards extended to the natives of the whole country.

17. Much controversy has taken place on the origin of the inhabitants of the New World: they were found in various stages of society, from the lowest savage state to that of a half-civilized people. The conclusion is, that they emigrated from the Eastern Continent, and that they reached America from the nearest points of North-Western Europe and North-Eastern Asia, but at what period is entirely unknown.

18. Several years elapsed before America was known to be a separate continent; at length in 1513 Balboa, a Spaniard, ascended the mountains in the Isthmus of Darien, and first saw the Pacific Ocean.

19. The Western Continent is generally described under two grand divisions, viz: North America, and South America; these are joined together by the isthmus of Darien. There is besides a great collection of islands lying between the two continents, usually called the West Indies; but by some it is also termed the Columbian Archipelago.

What did he afterwards do? How was he treated? 13. What did the discovery of Columbus excite? 14. Who discovered North America? 15. Who published the first account of the New World? After whom was it named? What will descend to the most distant ages? 16. What was America supposed to be? What did the Islands first discovered receive? The inhabitants? 17. What has taken place on the origin of the inhabitants? How were they found? What is the conclusion? 18. Who first saw the Pacific Ocean? 19. What are the divisions of the Western continent?

NORTH AMERICA.

North American Indians.

— 61 —

1. North America comprises the northern division of the Western Continent. It extends from the Arctic Ocean to the Isthmus of Darien, a distance of 4800 miles in length, and from 3200 to 2600 in breadth.

2. The Rivers, Lakes, Plains, and Mountains, of this continent, are all on a grand scale, and are among the most remarkable in the world.

3. The Mississippi, with the Missouri, far surpasses, in length of course, the principal rivers of the eastern continent; and Lake Superior is the largest body of fresh water known. It forms, with the great lakes with which it is connected, a vast interior sea, affording a continuous navigation many hundreds of miles in extent.

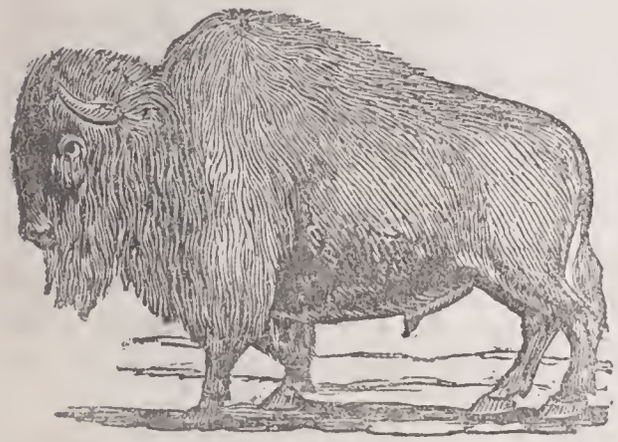
4. The precious and useful metals and minerals exist in North America in great abundance. Gold, silver, copper, and tin, are found in Mexico; and gold, iron, lead, and coal, in the

---

North America. Q.—1. What is North America? What is its extent? 2. What are on a grand scale? 3. What is said of its rivers and lakes? 4. What metals, &c., exist in great abundance? What

United States—where the three latter abound in such quantities, that ages of the most active industry will not probably exhaust them.

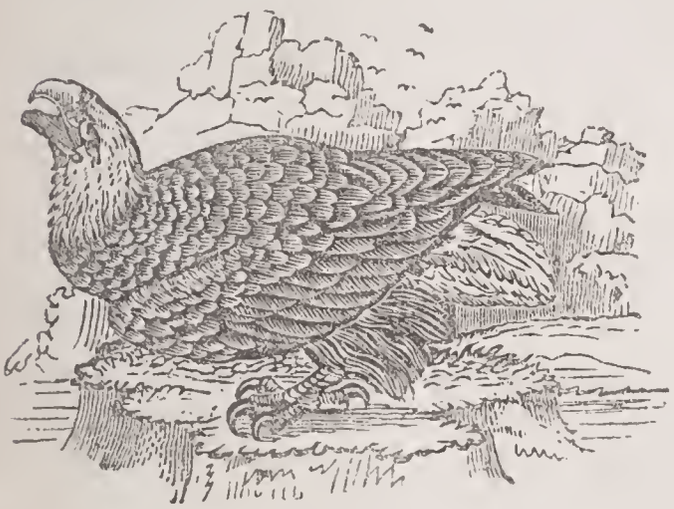
5. Among the animals of North America, there are several species not found in any other part of the world. The grizzly and barren ground bears are peculiar; also the moose or elk, the wapiti, and the caribou or rein-deer. The buffalo, musk-ox, and rocky mountain sheep and goat, all differ from animals of the same kind found elsewhere.



Buffalo.

Rocky Mountain Sheep.

6. Various species of birds abound; of the rapacious kind, there are eagles, vultures, hawks, falcons, &c. The bald-headed eagle is well known as being the chosen emblem of our own republic. The wild turkey is a native of this continent, and was introduced into Europe about 30 years after the discovery of America.



Bald Eagle.

Pinnated Grouse.

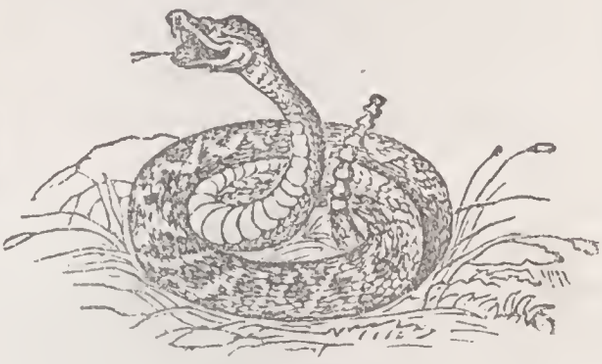
7. The highly esteemed canvas-back duck, the diminutive hum-

---

abounds in the United States? 5. What is said of the animals of North America? 6. What species of birds abound? What is said of the wild turkey, &c.? 7. What other birds are mentioned?

ming-bird, the whip-poor-will, the blue jay, and the mocking-bird, are all confined to this continent; while grouse, pheasants, &c., of different kinds, are found in various parts, and are highly esteemed for food.

Alligator.



Rattle-Snake.

8. The alligator exists only in the southern section of the continent, being seldom seen north of Louisiana and the Carolinas. The rattle-snake is peculiar to the New World; it is formidable for the deadly venom of its bite, and comprises five or six different varieties.

9. The Indians and Esquimaux constitute the original inhabitants of the country. The Indians are usually tall, straight, and erect in form, of a dark copper-colour, with high cheek-bones and long coarse black hair; while the Esquimaux are short and stout in person, and of a dirty reddish yellow complexion. The latter are lively and cheerful in disposition, and appear to be more social and domestic in their habits than savages usually are.

10. North America is politically divided into the Republics of the United States, Mexico, and Guatimala: these occupy the continent south and west of the great lakes, while the northern parts comprise the colonial territories of Great Britain and Russia.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE QUESTIONS.

In bounding any country or state, let the learner tell what is on the north, what on the south, on the east, and on the west.

To the first question on the following page—How is Russian America bounded? the answer will be, on the north by the Polar Sea, south by the Pacific Ocean, east by British America, and west by Bhering's Strait.

In telling of Gulfs, Bays, or Sounds, say what countries they are in, or are surrounded by, and what Oceans they are connected with, thus: Baffin's Bay is bounded east by Greenland, west by Prince William's Land, and leads into the Atlantic Ocean.

---

8. Of the alligator? 9. Who comprise the original inhabitants of the country? What is said of the Indians? Of the Esquimaux? 10. How is North America politically divided?

Tell what countries, or divisions, Straits separate, and what Oceans, Bays, &c. they connect: thus, Behring's Strait separates America from Asia, and connects the Pacific and the Arctic Oceans.

Tell where Lakes are situated, and with what Rivers they are connected: thus, Lakes Superior, Huron, Erie, and Ontario, are between Canada and the United States, and flow into the St. Lawrence River.

Tell where Peninsulas are situated, to what countries they belong, and what waters surround them: thus, Nova Scotia is in the southern part of British America; it has the Bay of Fundy and the Gulf of St. Lawrence on the north, and the Atlantic Ocean on the south. Tell where islands are situated, and their direction from the nearest Continent or other Islands; thus, Cuba is in the West Indies; it is south of the United States, east of Mexico, and north of Jamaica.

Tell where Mountains are situated, how they extend, what countries they separate, and what their length is: thus, the Rocky Mts. are in the western part of North America; they extend through Russian America, British America, the United States, and Mexico; they separate in part the United States and British America, and are 4,000 miles in length.

Tell where Rivers rise, in what direction they flow, and where they empty: thus, the Mississippi rises west of Lake Superior, flows southward through the United States, and empties into the Gulf of Mexico. Tell also the branches which form the main stream of various rivers in the United States: thus, the Alleghany and Monongahela form the Ohio; the Mattapony in Virginia is formed of the Mat, the Ta, the Po, and the Ny.

USE OF THE SCALES.

By means of the Scales of Miles, which are attached to nearly all the Maps, the learner may measure the length and breadth of Continents, Seas, Gulfs, &c. Thus, for example, take with a pair of compasses, or the edge of a slip of paper, the length of the Scale of Miles of Map No. 3, and measure with it from Smith's Sound to the southern extremity of North America; it will be found to extend nearly five times the length of the scale, or about 4,800 miles; On north latitude 40 degrees, the breadth of the Continent is 2,600 miles; on latitude 52 degrees, 3,000 miles, and from Nova Scotia to Porto Rico 1,800. These exercises will give variety to the studies, and impress on the mind of the pupil the length and breadth of countries and their distances from each other, &c., in a more decided manner than by any other method.

By studying the Explanation on the Maps, the learner will understand how the Capitals of countries, the population of the cities and towns, and the lengths of the rivers, are represented.

— 62 —

Map No. 4.—How is Russian America bounded? British America bounded? Capital? United States bounded? Capital? Mexico bounded? Capital? Guatimala bounded? Capital? Balize bounded? Capital?

How is North America bounded?

Where is Coronation Gulf? G. of Boothia? G. of St. Lawrence? Welcome G.? G. of Georgia? G. of California? G. of Mexico? G. of Tehuantepec? What is a Gulf or Bay? 24, page 10.

Where is Bristol Bay? Melville B.? Hudson's B.? Musquito B.? Ungava B.? James' B.? San Francisco B.? B. of Fundy? Delaware B.? Chesapeake B.? Tampa B.? Galveston B.? B. of Campeche? B. of Honduras? B. of Guatimala?*

Where is Norton's Sound? Prince William's S.? Smith's S.? Lancaster S.? Davy's S.? Queen Charlotte's S.? Albemarle S.? What is a Sound? 26, page 10.

Where is Behring's† Strait? Davis' S.? Cumberland S.? Frobisher's S.? Hudson's S.? S. of Bellisle?‡ Gut or S. of Canso? S. of Juan de Fuca? How wide is Behring's S.? Where is Pr. Regent's Inlet? What is a Strait? 25, page 10.

Where is Great Bear Lake? Great Slave L.? Athabasca L.? Winnipeg L.? L. Superior? L. Huron? L. Michigan? L. Erie? L. Ontario? L. Chapala?§ Great Salt Lake? L. Nicaragua?‖ What are the lengths of the first four and of the last Lake?
What is a Lake? 29, page 10.

Where is the Peninsula of Alaska? Melville? Greenland? Nova Scotia? Florida? Yucatan? California? Boothia Felix?
What is a Peninsula? 54, page 14.

Where is Cape Prince of Wales? C. Bathurst? C. Brewster? C. Farewell? C. St. Lewis? C. Race? C. Sable? N. S. C. Cod? C. Hatteras? C. Sable? Fa. C. St. Antonio? C. Gracias à Dios? C. Mendocino? Moro Hermoso? C. St. Lucas? C. Gorda? Point De Witt Clinton? P. Beechy? P. Barrow? Capes are frequently called Points.
What is a Cape or Point? 57, page 14.

Where is Nunnivack Island? Kodiak I.? Sitka I.? Washington or Queen Charlotte's I.? Quadra and Vancouver's I.? North Georgian Islands? Southampton I.? Disco I.? Newfoundland I.? Anticosti I.? Prince Edward's I.? Cape Breton I.? Bermudas Islands? Bahama Islands? The West Indies? Cuba? Hayti? Jamaica? Porto Rico? The last four are called the Great Antilles. Where are the Caribbee Islands? Where is Curaçoa? Margarita? Buen Ayre? Oruba? Tortuga? Orchilla? The last six are called the Little Antilles.
What are Islands? 56, page 14.

**Guatimala*, Gwa-te-mah'-la. †*Behring's*, Be-'rings. ‡*Bellisle*, Belle'. §*Chapala*, Chah-pa-'-la. ‖*Nicaragua*, Nic-ar-aw'-gwa.

— 63 —

Map No. 4.—Where are the Rocky Mountains? and what is their length? Where is the Sierra Nevada or Snowy Range? Alleghany Mts.? and their length? Where are the Arctic Highlands? The Sierra Madre? Where is Mount St. Elias? Mt. Brown? Mt. Hooker? Tell the heights of the three last Mountains. Where is Fremont's Peak? Long's Peak? Pike's P.? Mt. Shaste? Popocatapetl?* The Water Volcano? Cosiguina? The three last are Volcanos. What is a Volcano? 62, page 15.

Where is Mackenzie's River? Great Fish R.? Churchill R.? Nelson R.? St. Lawrence R.? Frazer's R.? Columbia R.? Sacramento R.? Colorado R.? Gila R.? Rio Grande? Brazos R.? Mississippi R.? Give the lengths of all these rivers, and the parts of the Ocean into which they flow. What is a River? 34, page 11.

What stream do you observe extending along the east coast of the United States from Florida to the Grand Bank of Newfoundland? Gf. Sm. This is a remarkable current in the Atlantic Ocean, which runs where it is narrowest at the rate of 5 miles an hour, lessening in rapidity as it flows north. The water is warmer in the Gulf Stream than in the adjacent parts of the Ocean, and of a different colour also; so that sailors know when they come within its limits.

How many miles is it from Labrador to Russia? To Denmark? From Quadra and Vancouver's Island to Mongolia? From California to Corea? To Thibet? To Hindoostan? From the United States to Greece? From the Bermudas to Madeira? From the United States to Egypt? From Guatimala to Hindoostan?

Which are the seven largest Cities in North America? The population of these is 80,000 and upwards. Bn., N.-Yk., Pa., Be., N.-Os., Ha., Mo.

What ten Cities contain from 40,000 to 60,000 inhabitants each? Ml., Ci., S.-L.-Pi., Ga., Oa., Go., Qo., L.-Pa., N.-Ga., P.-Pe.

There are eighteen Cities that contain from 20,000 to 38,000 inhabitants each; which are they? Qc., S.-Js., Pe., Ll., Ay., Wn., Rd., Le., Cn., Zs., Do., Vd., Ln., Co., S.-Jo., Kn., S.-Js., Ms. What is a City? 262, page 37.

— 64 —

RUSSIAN AMERICA.

1. Russian† America comprises that part of the Continent lying nearest to Asia, from which it is separated by Behring's Strait, and from British America by the 141st degree of west longitude.

Russian America. Q.—1. What does Russian America comprise? What separates Russian America from Asia? What separates it from

* *Popocatapetl*, Po-po-cat-a-peet-il.' † *Russian*, Ru'-shan.

It is a cold, dreary, and almost unknown region, inhabited chiefly by Indians and Esquimaux.

2. The Russians have established a number of trading factories along the coast, the principal of which is New Archangel. Here they barter fire-arms, beads, tobacco, and other articles, for the furs obtained by the natives in hunting.

Subterraneous Mansion of the Aleutian Islanders.

3. The Aleutian* or Fox Islands extend to a great distance westward from the Peninsula of Alaska: they are inhabited by a race of savages who live in houses under ground, which contain each from 50 to 150 inhabitants, and are divided into numerous apartments, which, though dark and dirty, protect their inmates effectually from the weather.

Map No. 4.—What Sea bounds Russian America on the north? Pr.—What Ocean on the south? Pc.—What country on the east? B.-Aa.—What is the most northern point? Bw.—The most western Cape? P.-Ws.—What Peninsula in the south? Aa.—What two Mountains in the south-east? S.-Es., Fr.—On what Island is New Archangel situated? Sa.

— 65 —

GREENLAND.

1. GREENLAND is one of the most desolate and barren regions on the face of the earth. An almost perpetual winter prevails, interrupted only by a short summer of a few weeks'

British America? By whom is it chiefly inhabited? 2. What have the Russians established along the coast? How do they trade with the natives? 3. What Islands extend westward from Alaska? By whom are they inhabited? How do they live? What do they contain? How are they divided?

Greenland. Q.—1. What is Greenland? To what power does it

---

* *Aleutian.* Al-u'-shan.

duration. The whole region is claimed by Denmark, which has formed some small settlements along the western coast.

2. Several of these are also Moravian missionary stations, where the inhabitants have been in some measure converted from their ignorance and superstition, and partly enlightened by the doctrines of Christianity.

3. In the Northern part of Greenland, Captain Ross discovered a district which he named the Arctic Highlands. The inhabitants, who had never before seen an European, were seized with the utmost astonishment, especially at the ships, which they at first imagined to be huge birds with wings.

4. The cliffs on the coast present the remarkable phenomenon of red snow, the nature and origin of which has excited much controversy among the learned in Europe.

Map No. 4.—What Bay bounds Greenland on the west? Bs.—What Ocean on the east? Ac.—What is its southern Cape? Fl.—What missionary stations on the west coast? Hg., Sp., N.-Ht., Ls., Jb., Lu.—What land on the east coast? Ss.—Does the largest or smallest part of Greenland lie north of the Arctic circle? Lt.—What Zone then is it in? N.-Fd.

66

BRITISH AMERICA.

1. British America comprises the whole of the American continent lying north of the United States, with the exception of the extreme north-western portion, which is claimed by Russia. It is a region of vast extent, being equal in area to the whole of the former country.

2. Its divisions are New Britain, New Caledonia, Canada, New Brunswick, Prince Edward's Island, Nova Scotia, and Cape Breton, together with the Island of Newfoundland. About one-tenth part only of these territories is as yet settled by a civilized population.

3. The climate of British America is very severe, much exceeding what is felt under the same latitude in the Old Continent. Even the southern sections are covered with ice and snow for five or six months in the year; and in the northern parts of the country the winter is almost perpetual.

4. The lakes which form a portion of the boundary line between

---

belong? 2. What are several of the settlements? Of the inhabitants? 3. What did Captain Ross discover? What did the natives imagine respecting the ships of their visiters? 4. What do the cliffs on the coast present?

British America. Q.—1. What does British America comprise? 2. What are its divisions? 3. Of the climate? 4. The lakes?

this territory and the United States, are on a greater scale than in any other part of the world. These form a vast inland sea of fresh water, which is navigable for vessels of the largest burthen, and is traversed by a number of steam-boats, ships, &c., in almost every direction.

The White or Great Polar Bear.

Musk Ox.

5. The White Bear, Musk Ox, Caribou or American Rein-Deer, and other animals, abound in all the northern parts of this region, and supply the inhabitants with the chief part of their clothing and food, besides furnishing the skins which are bartered with the traders of the Hudson's Bay Company for the various manufactured articles which have become essential to the comfort and even existence of the Indians.

6. Each province of British America has a governor and council, appointed by the Sovereign of Great Britain,* and a house of Commons or Representatives chosen by the people. The whole territory, however, is under the control of a Governor General, who resides at Montreal.

7. Canada was originally settled by the French, but fell into the hands of the English in consequence of the victory gained near Quebec, in 1759, by General Wolfe.

8. Since that period the trade and population of these provinces have greatly increased, and they have likewise enjoyed a considerable degree of prosperity. Canada was for fifty years divided into two provinces, but in the year 1841 it was united into one.

Map No. 4.—What bounds British America on the North? P.-Sa. — On the West? R.-Aa. — South? U.-Ss. — East? A.-On. — What separates it from Greenland? B.-By. — In what continent is British America? Wn. —What circle extends through the north part? Ac. — In what Zone is that part of it which lies north of the Arctic circle? N.-Fd. — In what Zone is the southern part? N.-Te. — In what latitude is British America? N.-Lc. — In what longitude from Greenwich? W.-Lc.

What do they form? 5. What animals abound? 6. What is said of the provinces of British America? 7. By what people was Canada first settled? 8. What has taken place since? What has been enjoyed?

---

* *Britain*, Brit'-in.

— 67 —

NEW BRITAIN.

1. New Britain comprises that part of British America situated north of Canada and the United States. It contains more than three-fourths of the whole of the British possessions, and is divided by Hudson's Bay into two unequal portions.

2. The only trade in this region is that of furs, to facilitate which, the Hudson's Bay Company have established forts and trading-houses in various quarters, extending from Hudson's Bay westward, to the Pacific, and to the northward almost to the Arctic Ocean. The whole region is in consequence often called the Hudson's Bay Company's Territory.

Beaver.

Raccoon.

3. The Beaver, Raccoon, Muskrat, and other animals, are eagerly hunted for their furs; the exports of which have amounted in some years to upwards of a million of dollars.

4. The coast of Labrador, and the whole of the northern shores of this region, from Greenland westward to Behring's Strait, is inhabited by the Esquimaux, a race of savages differing essentially from the Indians, in form, disposition, and complexion.

5. Among these people on the coast of Labrador, the Moravian Missionaries have established the settlements of Nain, Okkak, Hope dale, &c., and have partially improved their habits and condition.

Map No. 4.—What territory on the east coast? Lr.—On the west? N.-Ca.—East of Hudson's Bay? E.-Me.—West side? N.-N.-Ws. N.-S.-Ws.—On the coast of Baffin's Bay? P.-W.-Ld.—West of the

---

New Britain. Q.—1. What does New Britain comprise? 2. What trade has it? What company has established forts in various quarters? 3. What animals are hunted for their furs? 4. What people inhabit the coast of Labrador and the Northern shores? 5. What have the Missionaries established?

Gulf of Boothia? B.-Fx.—East of Bathurst Inlet? Va.—What large Bay in New Britain? Hs.—How long and wide is it?—Between New Britain and Greenland? Bs.—How wide is it?—Name the four largest Lakes in New Britain. G.-Br., G.-Se., Aa., Wg.—The length of each?—What large river flows into the Polar Sea? Ms.—Its length?—What two rivers flow into lake Athabasca? Pe., Aa.—Their lengths?—What river flows into Lake Winnipeg? Sn.—Its length?—What river connects Lake Winnipeg with Hudson's Bay? Nn.—Which are the principal forts? Re., Rn., Cl., Yk., Sn., Ay., Me.—The principal Indian tribes? Cr., D.-Rb., Cs., Kx., B.-Ft., As.—What Mountains are in the west part of New Britain? Ry.—Their length?—Which are the two highest? Bn., Hr.—The height of each?

— 68 —

CANADA WEST.*

1. Canada West extends along the whole chain of the great lakes almost to the western extremity of Lake Superior. The climate is generally healthy and salubrious. The summer heats are more moderate and the winters shorter and less rigorous than in the Eastern Province.

2. The soil in the settled parts of the country is mostly very fertile, and yields abundant crops of grain, wheat, Indian corn, flax, &c. Large quantities of maple sugar are also made.

3. The most important canals in British America are in Canada West; these are the Rideau and the Welland canals; the first extends from the Ottawa river to Kingston. The Welland canal unites Lake Erie with Lake Ontario; both these works allow vessels of 125 tons burthen to pass through.

4. In this province, on the Niagara river, which connects Lake Erie with Lake Ontario, is the Falls of Niagara, 165 feet high. This is one of the most magnificent of Nature's works. The noise of the cataract is heard, and the cloud of vapour which rises from it is seen, at the distance of several miles.

5. Toronto and Kingston, on the northern shore of Lake Ontario, are the two principal towns of Canada West. Toronto, the largest, is pleasantly situated on a bay of the same name; it is regularly laid but, and has a number of handsome buildings.

6. In the year 1841, Kingston became the capital of Canada, and

---

Canada West. Q.—1. What is the extent of Canada West? Of the climate? 2. The soil? What does it yield? 3. Canals in Canada West? 4. What great falls are in Canada West? How high are they? 5. What is the Capital? 6. The principal British naval station?

---

*Upper and Lower Canada long formed separate provinces, but were united in the year 1841, by Act of the British Parliament. At the same time the name of the Upper Province was changed to Canada West, and of the lower to Canada East.

Falls of Niagara.

also of all British America; but the seat of government is now removed to Montreal. Niagara is a small town at the mouth of the Niagara river. Goderich, on the east shore of lake Huron, and London, on the river Thames, are the chief towns in the western part of the province.

Map No. 5.—What lakes separate Canada West from the United States? Oo., Ee., Hn., Sr.—What river, in part, from New York? S.-Le.—What river from Canada East? Oa.—What is the eastern part of Lake Huron called? Me.—What Isles in the north part? Me.—What Island in the western part of Lake Superior? Re.—What is the length of Lakes Superior, Huron, Erie, and Ontario?—On Map No. 14, tell who was defeated on the River Thames,* in 1813? Pr.—Who was killed there? Th. He was a celebrated Indian chief.—On Map No. 11, tell what battles were fought in 1814, near the Falls of Niagara? F.-Ee., Ca.

69

CANADA EAST.

1. Canada East extends on both sides of the St. Lawrence river, from its mouth to the river Ottawa. The lower part of the province is rugged, cold and sterile; but the upper portion is fertile, well watered, and more moderate in temperature. All sections have, however, the climate of Sweden, though in the latitude of France.

2. More than three-fourths of the inhabitants are of French origin; they speak the French language, and are all Catho-

---

Canada East. Q.—1. How far does Canada East extend? 2. How

*Thames. Temz.

lics. The remainder are mostly natives of Great Britain and their descendants, who are principally Protestants.

Canadian Habitans.

3. Education is much neglected, and the chief part of the people are very ignorant. The native French Canadians are called *habitans*. They are gay in their dispositions, courteous and polite in their manners, and strongly attached to their religion and native country.

4. Canada East produces wheat, Indian corn, and other grains common to the northern parts of the United States. The exports are timber, grain, flour, furs, pot and pearl ashes, &c.

City of Quebec.

5. The city of Quebec was, until the year 1841, the capital of British America; it is very strongly fortified, and situated half in a plain along the River St. Lawrence, and the other half on a steep, perpendicular rock, 350 feet high. These are called the upper and lower towns.

6. Montreal,* on Montreal Island, and 180 miles above Quebec, by the St. Lawrence river, is now the capital of Canada; it is the centre of the fur trade, and of the commerce with the United States. The town of the Three Rivers, on the north bank of the St. Lawrence river, is the next in importance to Quebec and Montreal. William Henry, Chambly,† and St. John's, are small towns on Sorelle‡ River.

---

many of the inhabitants are of French origin? What are the rest? 3. What is said of education? The character of the French Canadian? 4. Produce? Exports? 5. What is Quebec? 6 Montreal? Name the other Towns.

---

* *Montreal*, Mont-re-aul'. † *Chambly*, Sham'-ble. ‡ *Sorelle*, Sor-el'.

Map No. 5.—What country lies west of Canada East? C.-Wt.—What two States lie south? N.-Yk., Vt.—What State lies east? Me.—The principal River? S.-Le. Its length? (This includes the Lakes.)—What Lake does the Saguenay flow from? S.-Is. The length of the Saguenay? The Ottawa? What River unites Lakes Champlain and St. Peters? Se.—The population of Quebec? Of Montreal?—What three Lakes are in Canada East? S.-Js., S.-Ps., Tg.

— 70 —

NEW BRUNSWICK.

1. New Brunswick is situated to the east of the State of Maine, and to the north-west of Nova Scotia. Until the year 1784 it was included within the limits of the latter, which at that period was divided into two separate provinces.

2. This colony is but partially cleared, and contains extensive forests which furnish large quantities of excellent timber. The soil is generally of good quality, especially along the banks of the St. John's and other rivers.

3. The fisheries are a source of considerable wealth, and employ many of the inhabitants, the produce being with lumber the chief articles of export. Ship-building is carried on to a considerable extent.

4. The Bay of Fundy, which separates this province from Nova Scotia, is remarkable for the great and rapid rise of its tides, which often attain the height of 70 feet.

5. Frederickton, the seat of government, is situated some distance up the river St. John's. It is built chiefly of wood, and contains the government offices, several churches, and a college.

6. The city of St. John's is the most considerable place in New Brunswick, and has an extensive commerce. St. Andrew's, at the head of Passamaquoddy Bay, is the next in trade and population. Chatham and New Castle are small towns on the Mirimichi River.

Map No. 7.—Which is the chief river? S.-Js.—What island lies near New Brunswick? P.-Es.—Gulf to the eastward? S.-Le.—Two bays north-east? Cs., Mi.—Bay on the south? Fy.—Peninsula south-east? N.-Sa.—The population of St. John's? Of Frederickton? St. Andrew's? Chatham? New Castle? On what river is the city of St. John's?

New Brunswick. Q.—1. How is New Brunswick situated? In what was it included? 2. What is said of the soil? 3. The chief articles of export? What is an important branch of industry? 4. Of the Bay of Fundy? 5. The Capital? 6. St. John's? St. Andrew's?

— 71 —

NOVA SCOTIA.

1. Nova Scotia was first settled by the French, and named by them Acadia. In 1763 it was conquered by Great Britain, and since that time has been called by its present name.

2. It is a large peninsula, 280 miles long, and from 50 to 100 broad. On the coast the soil is generally poor, but in the interior and northern parts it is well adapted to cultivation.

3. Wheat and other grains, with potatoes of the finest quality, are raised to some extent. Coal, and gypsum, or plaster of paris, are found in vast quantities, and with fish, grindstones, &c., are largely exported: copper, iron, and various other minerals, also abound.

4. Halifax, the capital, is situated on one of the finest harbours in the world, and contains the most extensive dock-yard in British America. Lunenburg, Liverpool, Yarmouth, and Pictou, are all places of some trade; from the latter, coal is shipped to the United States.

5. Cape Breton Island.—Cape Breton is a large Island, separated from Nova Scotia by the Gut or Strait of Canso; it is about 110 miles in length, and from 30 to 80 in breadth, and is divided into two nearly equal portions by an arm of the sea called the Bras d'Or.

6. Agriculture is in a backward state, the Cod Fishery attracting the chief industry of the people. This island was in 1820 politically attached to Nova Scotia, and sends two members to the House of Assembly.

7. Louisburg, which the French carefully fortified, was once a place of great importance, but it is now entirely deserted; and Sidney, a village of about 800 inhabitants, is all the capital Cape Breton possesses. Arechat, on Isle Madame, is the largest town belonging to Cape Breton.

Map No. 7.—What Islands lie east and south-east of Nova Scotia? C.-Bn., Se.—What Island north? P. Es.—What separates Nova Scotia and Cape Breton? G.-Co.—What Ocean on the south-east? Ac.—What Bay on the north-west? Fy.—What is the population of Halifax? Lunenburg? Liverpool? Arechat? Yarmouth?

Nova Scotia. Q.—1. By whom was Nova Scotia first settled? What was its first name? When was it conquered by Great Britain? 2. What is this Colony? What is said of its soil? 3. Its productions? Its minerals? 4. The capital and other towns? 5. What is Cape Breton? How is it divided? 6. What is said of its agriculture, &c.? When was it attached to Nova Scotia? 7. What is said of Louisburg, &c.?

— 72 —

1. Prince Edward's Island.—Prince Edward's is a fine fertile island in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, lying nearly parallel to the coasts of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick.

2. The soil is good and well adapted to agriculture, which is in a more improved state than in any of the neighbouring colonies. Charlotte Town is the capital, with 3,500 inhabitants. There are several other small towns.

NEWFOUNDLAND.

3. Newfoundland is a large island, situated at the mouth of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and forming the most eastern part of British America. The soil is mostly barren, and the timber scanty and of small size.

4. It owes its importance to its Cod fisheries, which are the most valuable in the world. The fish are caught in vast numbers upon certain shallow places in the sea in the vicinity of the island, called the Banks of Newfoundland.

5. A great number of vessels and men (chiefly American and French) here find employment, while the inhabitants of the island carry on their fisheries along the shore.

6. The fishing business is dangerous, but profitable, it is an admirable nursery for the hardy seamen of the New England states, and furnishes us with an important article of export to other countries. The Seal fishing has of late years attracted much attention.

7. St. John's is the principal place in the island; the houses are all built of wood, and the town has in consequence suffered severely from fires. Harbour Grace is, next to St. John's, the most important town.

Map No. 7.—What separates Prince Edward's Island from New Brunswick? Nd.-St.—What bounds Newfoundland on the east? A. On.—On the west? G. S.-Le.—What Strait separates it from Labrador? Bc.—What banks are near the Island? How long and wide is the Grand Bank? Newfoundland? What is the population of St. John's? Of Harbour Grace? Of Placentia?

Prince Edward's Island. Q.—1. What is Prince Edward's Island? 2. What is said of the soil and agriculture? The capital, &c.?

Newfoundland. Q.—3. What is Newfoundland? 4. To what does it owe its importance? 5. What are they called? Who find employment there? 6. What is said of the fishing business, &c.? What does it furnish us with? 7. Describe St. John's. Harbour Grace

— 73 —

UNITED STATES.

1. The United States form one government, comprising thirty states, five territories, and one federal district. They occupy the most valuable and productive part of North America, and rank amongst the most powerful, commercial, and wealthy nations of the globe.

2. They are distinguished for the freedom and excellence of their political institutions, the rapid increase of the population, and for the intelligence, industry, and enterprise of the inhabitants.

3. The territory of the United States is very extensive; it ranges through 26 degrees of latitude, and 58 degrees of longitude. The frontier outline has an extent of almost 10,000 miles, and a line drawn from north-west to south-east would measure 2800 miles.

4. In so vast a region there is of course included a great variety of surface, soil, and climate. It is well watered by noble streams, which not only give fertility to their borders,

---

United States. Q.—1. What do the United States form? Comprising what? What do they occupy? 2. For what are they distinguished? 3. What is said of the territory? 4. What does it include?

but are ready to carry the gifts of the earth to the ocean, and to bring back to the inhabitants the products of other climes.

5. The soil returns an ample harvest for all that is planted in it, and the climate is favourable to nearly every production of the earth, that can sustain life or increase its luxuries.

6. Agriculture is the leading pursuit in this country. The eastern states are devoted to grazing, and the dairy; the middle and western to the raising of wheat, Indian corn, &c.; and the southern states, to cotton, tobacco, sugar, and rice. Slave labour is chiefly employed in the southern and some of the western states.

7. The United States are richly supplied with valuable minerals. Gold, the most precious, and iron, the most useful of metals, with lead, coal, salt, and lime, all exist, most of them in great abundance; while beautiful and durable building materials are furnished by the extensive quarries of the different sections of the Union.

8. The manufactures are already extensive, and are rapidly increasing: they yield in value, annually, near 400 millions of dollars; and with the products of the agriculture, the forests, the mines, and the fisheries, amount yearly to almost 1300 million dollars.

9. The commerce is, next to that of Great Britain, the largest in the world; it extends to all parts of the earth, and embraces the products and manufactures of all nations. The number of vessels that enter and depart from the ports of the United States, amounts from 22,000 to 25,000 every year.

74

10. The Fisheries are highly important, and are carried on mostly by the New England states: they embrace chiefly the whale, cod, and mackerel fisheries, and employ upwards of 36,000 men, the products amount to from 10 to 12 millions of dollars, annually.

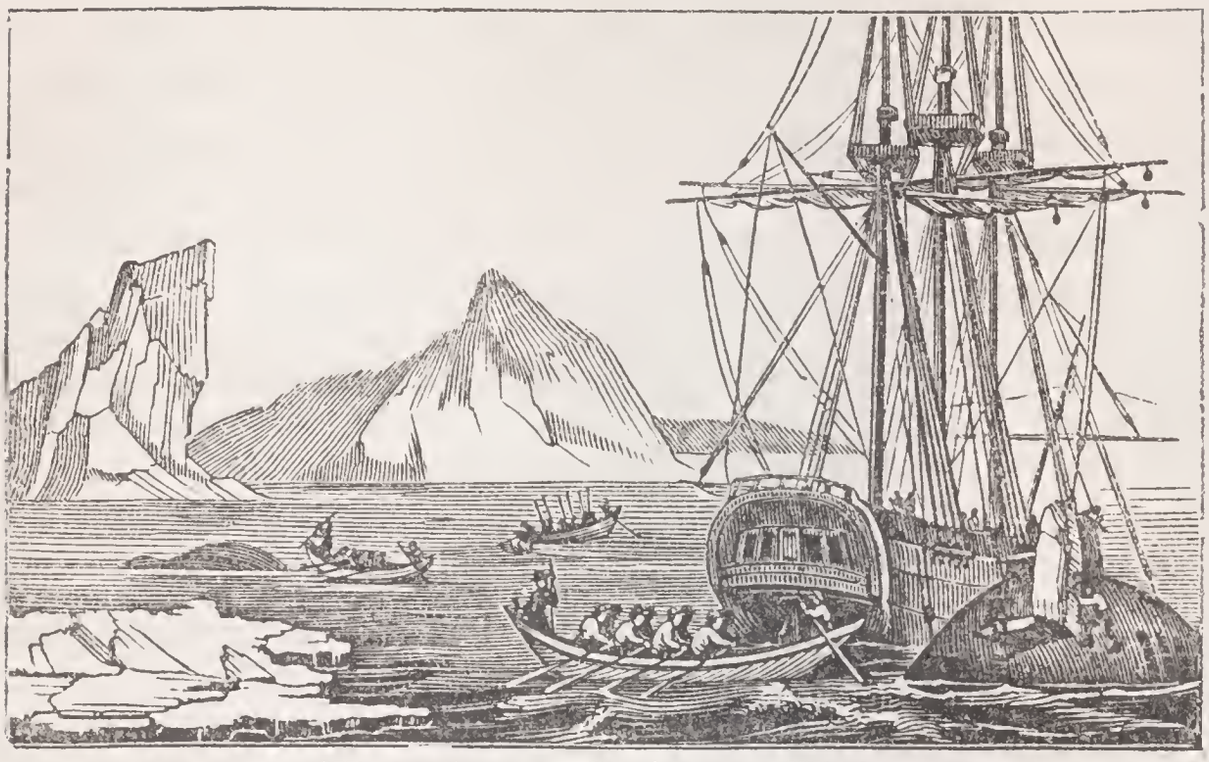
11. The whale fishery alone employs upwards of 650 vessels, and 16,000 men. The ships employed in this important business are absent frequently two and three years at a time.

12. No part of the world presents such an extensive inland commerce as that of the United States. Steam vessels navigate all the principal rivers, lakes, bays, &c. The Mississippi river and its tributaries alone are traversed by near 400 steamboats, all of which make several voyages every year.

13. The employment of Steam Power is probably greater in this country than in any other part of the world, and forms one of the prin-

---

How is it watered? 5. What of the soil? Climate? 6. Agriculture? The eastern states? The middle and western? Southern? 7. What of the minerals? 8. Manufactures? Their value and the capital employed? 9. The commerce? 10. The fisheries? 11. Whale fishery? 12. The inland commerce? The Mississippi, &c.? 13. Of the em-



Whale Fishery.—Cutting up a Whale.

cipal elements of American prosperity. 1,300 steamboats have been built since the year 1807, of which 800 now exist; and the number of steam-engines in the United States employed in steamboats, locomotive rail-road cars, and for various manufacturing purposes, is not less than 3,000.

14. The Americans have surpassed all other nations in the number and extent of their canals and rail-roads; the united length of the former is not less than 4,000 miles, the whole of which, with one or two exceptions, have been executed in less than twenty years.

15. The rail-roads, all constructed within the last fifteen years, amount to an aggregate of 5,600 miles, over which carriages are propelled by locomotive steam-engnies at the rate of from 20 to 30 miles an hour.

16. The United States are more distinguished for the general diffusion of knowledge, than for eminence in literature and science. Common school education is more widely extended than in any other part of the world, and there are numerous seminaries of learning throughout the country, though there are no universities and colleges on so large a scale as some in Europe.

17. The general government of the United States has done but little for the promotion of public instruction; but most of the states have made legislative provision, and some have large funds set apart, for that purpose. The first settlers of New England paid a very laudable attention to this important subject; and so early as the year 1628, a law was passed for the education of every child in the colonies.

---

ployment of steam? How many steamboats? 14. What is said of the Americans? Of canals? 15. Rail-roads? 16. Of the United States? Common school education? Seminaries of learning? 17. The general

— 75 —

18. There is no established church in the United States, religion being left to the voluntary choice of the people; yet in all the well-settled parts of the Union, religious instruction and observances are as faithfully dispensed and performed as in any other country in the world.

19. The great body of the people are attached to the various sects belonging to the Protestant faith: of these the Baptists, Methodists, Presbyterians, and Episcopalians, stand first as to numbers. There are also many Catholics, Universalists, Lutherans, Unitarians, and Friends, or Quakers.

20. The United States is a Federal Republic. Each state is independent in its local affairs; but the defence of the country, the regulation of commerce, and all the general concerns of the Union, are committed by the Constitution to a general government.

21. The government comprises three distinct powers, the Legislative, Judicial, and Executive branches: the first named power makes the laws, the second expounds, and the last executes them.

22. The Legislative power is vested in a Congress consisting of a Senate and House of Representatives. The Senate consists of two members from each state, who are elected for six years, one-third of the number being changed every two years. The members of the House of Representatives are elected by the people for two years.

23. The Judicial power is composed of a Supreme Court of one chief and eight associate Judges, who are appointed by the President, with the advice and consent of the Senate, and hold their offices during life or good behaviour.

24. The Executive power is vested in a President, who, together with the Vice-President, is chosen for four years by electors from all the states. The principal subordinate officers of the executive department are the Secretary of State, of the Treasury, of War, of the Navy, and of the Home Department, the Post-Master-General, and the Attorney-General. They are all removable at the will of the President; and, with the Vice-President, form the Cabinet.

25. The inhabitants of the United States amount to almost twenty-two millions, of which the black or coloured races form one-sixth part. The Indians number about 400,000, but are not usually considered as forming a part of the population of the Union.

Government? Of the first settlers in New England? 18. Established Church? 19. To what are the great body of the people attached? What are they? 20. What is the United States? 21. What is said of the government? 22. Of the legislative power? House of Representatives? Senate? 23. The judicial power? 24. Executive power? The subordinate officers? What do they form? 25. What may the

26. This amount, in proportion to the vast territory over which it is spread, is small, compared with the dense population of some of the European states; but when it is considered that the inhabitants of the colonies 100 years ago numbered but 1,000,000, it presents the most striking instance of national growth to be found in the history of mankind.

— 76 —

27. The United States were formerly colonies or provinces of Great Britain. In the year 1775 there were thirteen colonies, with a population of nearly three millions of people. At that time they took up arms for the purpose of separating themselves from the mother country.

28. They were incited to this by the injustice of Great Britain, who taxed the people of the colonies without their consent, and passed various oppressive laws, to which they would not submit.

Battle of Lexington.

29. The first battle between the Colonists and the British troops, took place at Lexington, Massachusetts, April 19th, 1775. On the 4th of July, 1776, they declared themselves independent, under the title of the United States of America.

30. The efforts of Great Britain to subdue the country were great, and the struggle which ensued was long and bloody; but animated by a love of liberty, and led by Washington and other gallant and patriotic

---

inhabitants be estimated at? The blacks? Indians? 26. How does it compare with the population of some European states? 27. What were the United States formerly? When did they take up arms? 28. Why were they incited to this? 29. When and where did the first battle take place? What did they do on the 4th of July, 1776? 30. What is said of Great Britain? Of General Washington? The

leaders, the people of the United States, after a war of eight years, expelled the British, and established their independence.

Resignation of General Washington.

31. At the close of the Revolutionary War, the American Army, though suffering great privations, disbanded, without violence or disorder; and the Commander-in-Chief, General Washington, resigned the almost absolute power he possessed to the authority that conferred it, thus presenting to the world the rare example of a great military chief descending voluntarily to the rank of a private citizen.

32. The Constitution of the United States was framed and adopted in 1789, and has since been amended. It secures to the people the grand principles of freedom, liberty of conscience in matters of religion, liberty of the press, trial by jury, and the right of choosing and of being chosen to office. The Presidents of the United States since the adoption of the Constitution, are as follows:

33.

1. George Washington,	of Virginia,	from 1789	to 1797—8 years.
2. John Adams,	Mass.	1797	to 1801—4
3. Thomas Jefferson,	Virginia,	1801	to 1809—8
4. James Madison,	Virginia,	1809	to 1817—8
5. James Monroe,	Virginia,	1817	to 1825—8
6. John Quincy Adams,	Mass.	1825	to 1829—4
7. Andrew Jackson,	Tennessee,	1829	to 1837—8
8. Martin Van Buren,	New York,	1837	to 1841—4
9. Wm. Henry Harrison,	Ohio.	1841	one month.
10. John Tyler,	Virginia,	1841	to 1845—4 years.
11. James K. Polk,	Tennessee,	1845	to 1849—4 "
12. Zachary Taylor,	Kentucky,	1849	

people of the United States? 31. The American army? The commander in chief? 32. The Constitution? What does it secure to the people? 33. How many Presidents have there been? Who were from Virginia? Massachusetts? Tennessee? New York? Ohio? How many years did each serve?

— 77 —

Map No. 5.—How are the United States bounded?

On the North? the South? the East? the West?

What is the capital of the United States? Wn.

The capitals of countries, the scholar will perceive by the explanation on the map, are made by a large dot with eight small ones around it, and the capitals of states on Maps Nos. 4 and 5, are made by a small ring or circle with a dot in the middle of it.

Which are the six Eastern States? Me., N.-H., Vt., Ms., R.-I., Ct.

Point out their capitals.

Which are the four Middle States? N.-Y., N.-J., Pa., De.

Point out their capitals.

Which are the ten Southern States? Md., Va., N.-C., S.-C., Ga., Fl., Aa., Mi., La., Ts.

Point out their capitals.

Which are the ten Western States? As., Te., Ky., Mo., Is., Ia., Oo., Mn., Wn., Ia.

Point out their capitals.

Which are the Territories? Ma., Mo., On., U.-Ca., N.-Mo., In.

The Territories are districts which, for want, at first, of a sufficient population, are not admitted into the Union as independent States. The Governor and other officers are appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. Each Territory is represented in Congress by a delegate, who may debate, but cannot vote. More than half the States were at first organized as Territories.

How many States are there? How many Territories?

Besides the States and Territories, there is the District of Columbia, which contains the seat of government; so that the whole of the divisions of the United States are 37 in number.

Where is Lake Superior? Huron? Michigan?* Erie?† Ontario? Champlain?‡ L. of the Woods? Tell the length of each Lake.

Which two Lakes are wholly in the United States? Mn., Cn.

Where is Moosehead Lake? Chesuncook? Timiscouata? Memphremagog?§ Okee-cho-bee? Pontchartrain?‖ Pepin? Itasca? The Mississippi flows from this Lake. Where is Rainy Lake? Red? St. Croix?¶ Winnebago? Great Salt? Pyramid? Humboldt? Nicollet? Tule?

---

* Mish'-e-gan. † E'-re. ‡ Sham-plane'.
§ Mem-fre-ma'-gog. ‖ Pontch-ar-trane'. ¶ Saint Croy'.

— 78 —

Map No. 5.—Where is Passamaquoddy Bay? Penobscot R.? Casco B.? New York B.? Delaware B.? Chesapeake B.? Chatham B.? Tampa B.? Apalachee* B.? Pensacola B.? Mobile† B.? Black B.? Barataria B.? Galveston B.? Matagorda B.? Espiritu Santo B.? Nueces B.? San Francisco B.? Monterey B.?

On the Great Lakes, where is Saginaw B.? Thunder B.? Green B.?

Where is Long Island Sound? Albemarle S.? Pamlico S.?

How many miles long are each of these? also Chesapeake Bay?—*See Map No.* 11.

Where is the Mississippi River? Where does it rise?

Where does it empty? How many miles long is it?

What are its chief tributaries, and their lengths?

Where is the Missouri River? Yellow Stone R.? Big Horn R.? Platte‡ or Nebraska R.? Kanzas R.? Arkansas R.? Canadian R.? Red R.? Osage R.? Des Moines R.? St. Peter's R.? Wisconsin R.? Rock R.? Illinois§ R.?

Where is the Wabash R.? Maumee R.? Ohio R.? Alleghany R.? Monongahela R.? Kanawha R.? Cumberland R.? Tennessee R.? White R.? Washita‖ R.? Yazoo R.?

Where is the Rio Grande? Pecos or Puerco R.? Nueces R.? Colorado R.? Brazos R.? Trinity R.? Sabine R.? Pearl R.? Tombigby R.? Alabama R.? Chattahoochee R.? St. John's R.? Fa.—Alatamaha R.? Savannah R.? Santee R.? Great Pedee R.? C. Fear R.? Neuse¶ R.? Tar R.? Roanoke R.? James R.? Potomac R.? Susquehanna R.? Delaware R.? Hudson R.? Mohawk R.?

Where is the St. Lawrence R.? Connecticut R.? Merrimac R.? Kennebec R.? Penobscot R.? St. John's R.? Me.

Where is the Oregon R.? Lewis R.? Colorado R.? Gila R.? Sacramento R.? Joaquin R.? How long is each of these rivers?

Where is Cape Cod? C. Malabar? C. Charles? C. Henry? C. Hatteras? C. Fear? C. Lookout? C. Cannaveral? C. Sable? C. Roman? C. St. Blas?

Where is Mt. Desert Island? Nantucket I.? Martha's Vineyard? Long I.? Florida Reefs? These are low sandy islands.

Where are the Tortugas Islands? Manitouline** Isles? Grand I.? I. Royale? The Apostles? The four last are in the Great Lakes. Where are the Santa Barbara Islands?

---

* *Apalachee*, Ap-a-lah'-che. † *Mobile*, Mo-beel'. ‡ *Platte*, Plat.
§ *Illinois*, Il-lin-oy'. ‖ *Washita*, Wash'-e-tau. ¶ *Neuse*, Nuce.
** *Manitouline*, Man-it-oo'lin.

— 79 —

Map No. 5.—Where is Mt. Rainier*? Mt. St. Helena? Mt. Hood? Mt. Jefferson? Mt. Olympus†?

How high are the two first?

To what range do the foregoing Mountains belong?

Where are the Rocky Mts.? How long are they?

Where are the Blue Mts. of Oregon?

Where is Fremont's Peak? Long's? Pike's? How high is each?

Where is the Sierra Nevada? The Coast Mts.?

Where are the Cumberland Mts.? Alleghany Mts.? Their length and height?

Where is the Blue Ridge? The Blue Mts.? The Green Mts.? The White Mts.? The Black Hills? Where is Black Mt.?

Where are the three Butes? The three Tetons? The Humboldt River Mts.? The Wahsatch Mts.?

Where is the South Pass? This remarkable Pass is a gap of about 20 miles wide, in the Rocky Mountains. It forms a most convenient passage for travellers to and from Oregon.

What seven Cities in the United States number 30,000 inhabitants and upwards? Bn., N.-Y., Ay., Pa., Be., Ci., N.-Os.

What eight Cities number from 20,000 to 30,000? Ll., Pe., Rr., Wn., Lc., Rd., Pg., Cn.

What twelve Cities have from 10,000 to 20,000? Pd., Sm., N.-Hn., Ty., Ua., Bo., Nk., S.-Ls., Nk., Pg., Sh., Mc.

How far is it from New Jersey to Portugal?

From New Jersey to the Azores?

From Chesapeake Bay to Portugal?

From Cape Hatteras to the Strait of Gibraltar?

From Charleston to Madeira? From Savannah to Bermuda?

From Florida to Morocco? From Florida to the Canary Islands?

How long and wide is the Atlantic Ocean?

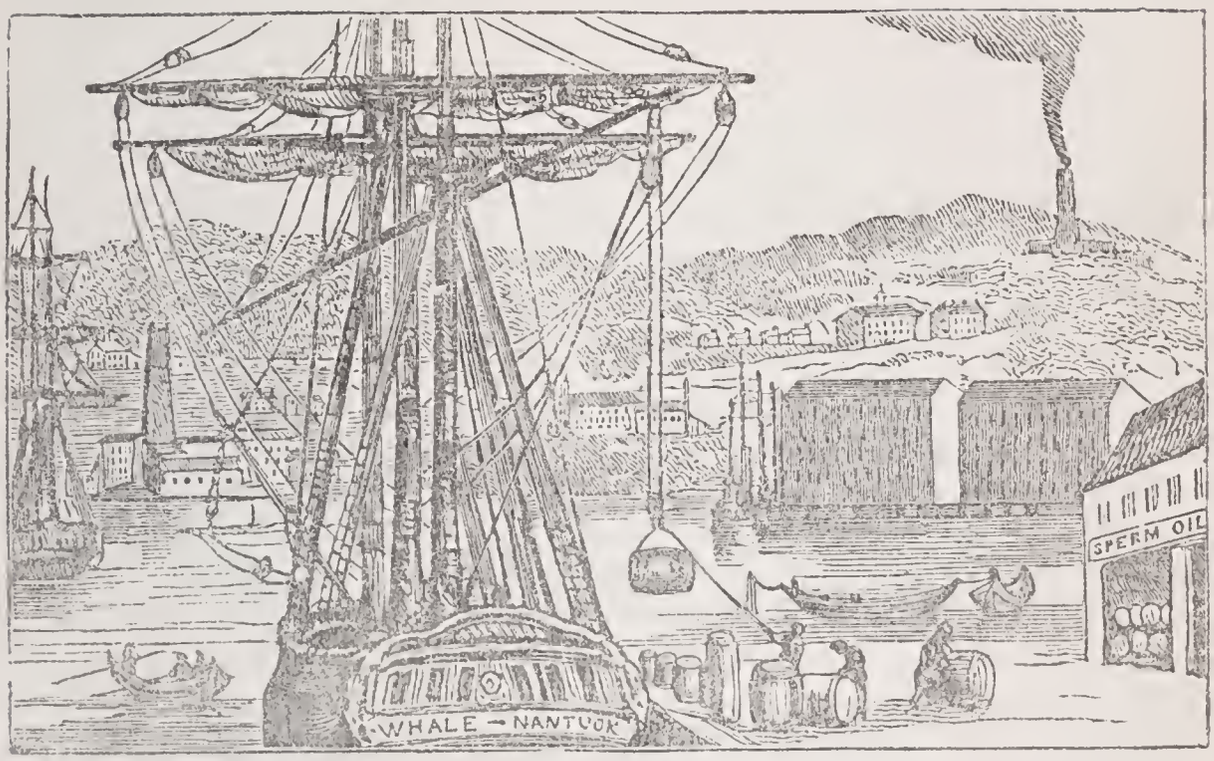
The Gulf of Mexico? the Pacific Ocean?—*See Map No.* 5.

Map of the Learner's own State.—In what State do you live? Is it one of the Eastern, Middle, Southern, or Western States? How is your State bounded? What rivers has it? Tell what they are. Does it contain any mountains? If so, what are they called? Is your State on the sea-coast, or in the interior, at a distance from it? Does it contain any Bays, Sounds, Islands, or Capes? What is the Capital of your State? What is the Capital of a State? 269, page 38. In what county do you live? Point it out on the map. How is it bounded? How long and wide is it? You can tell this by the scale of miles. What is a County? 266.

---

* *Rainier*, Ray-neer'. † *Olympus*, O-lim'-pus.

EASTERN STATES.



— 80 —

1. The Eastern, or New England States, are situated eastward of the Hudson river. They are Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut.

2. The surface of New England is greatly varied; much of the soil is good, yet, in general, it requires diligent cultivation, and compels the farmer to use considerable industry to procure good crops.

3. Horses, cattle, sheep, and hogs, are reared in great numbers; and grass, Indian corn, wheat, rye, oats, barley, flax, and hemp, are extensively cultivated. The principal fruits are apples, pears, peaches, plums, &c.

4. The manufactures of the Eastern States are very extensive, and embrace a great variety of articles. The cotton and woollen factories employ numerous individuals, and a

---

New England. Q.—1. Which are the New England states? 2. What is said of the surface and soil? What does it require? 3. What are reared in great numbers? What is extensively cultivated? Which are the principal fruits? 4. What is said of the manufactures?

large amount of capital. Since the manufacturing system has prevailed, this part of the United States has increased rapidly in population and wealth. Rail-roads are numerous, and well conducted.

5. The New Englanders are extensively engaged in commerce, and in the cod, mackerel, and whale fisheries, which train great numbers of experienced and intrepid seamen.

6. The inhabitants of the Eastern States are almost exclusively of unmixed English origin; and, from the earliest settlement of their country, have been used to habits of industry, economy, and enterprise.

7. They have always been a religious people. Among them the Sabbath is strictly observed, and all classes generally attend public worship. It is considered disreputable for a man to have no religious belief; and there are few individuals who are not connected with some religious society.

8. Education is more general than in any other part of the world; and large funds have been set apart by the different State Legislatures for the support of common schools. It is rare to find in any part of the Eastern States, persons of mature age, who are ignorant of reading, writing, and arithmetic.

— 81 —

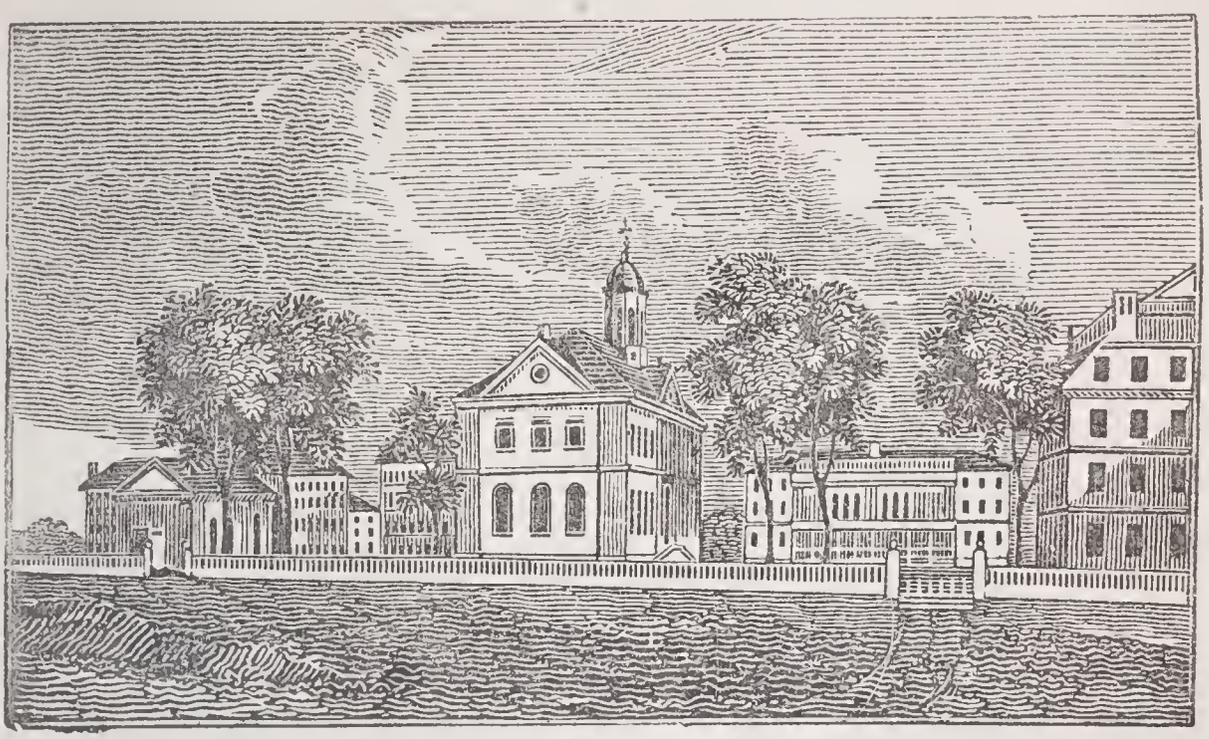
9. Institutions of learning were established, at an early period, by the first settlers of New England; some of which, at the present day, are among the most respectable and efficient in the Union. Many of the most distinguished men in the United States have been educated at Harvard and Yale Colleges.

10. The people of New England were, at an early period, noted for their republican principles, and were the first to resist the tyranny of the British Government. The destruction of the tea in Boston harbour, and the battles of Lexington and Bunker's Hill, were among the first events that led to the independence of the United States.

---

5. What are the New Englanders engaged in? 6. What are the inhabitants? To what have they been trained? 7. What have the inhabitants always been? What do all classes generally attend? What is considered disreputable? 8. What is said of public instruction? What is rare to find?

9. What was established at an early period? What are they at the present day? 10. For what were they noted? What were they the first to resist? What were the first events that led to the independence of the United States?

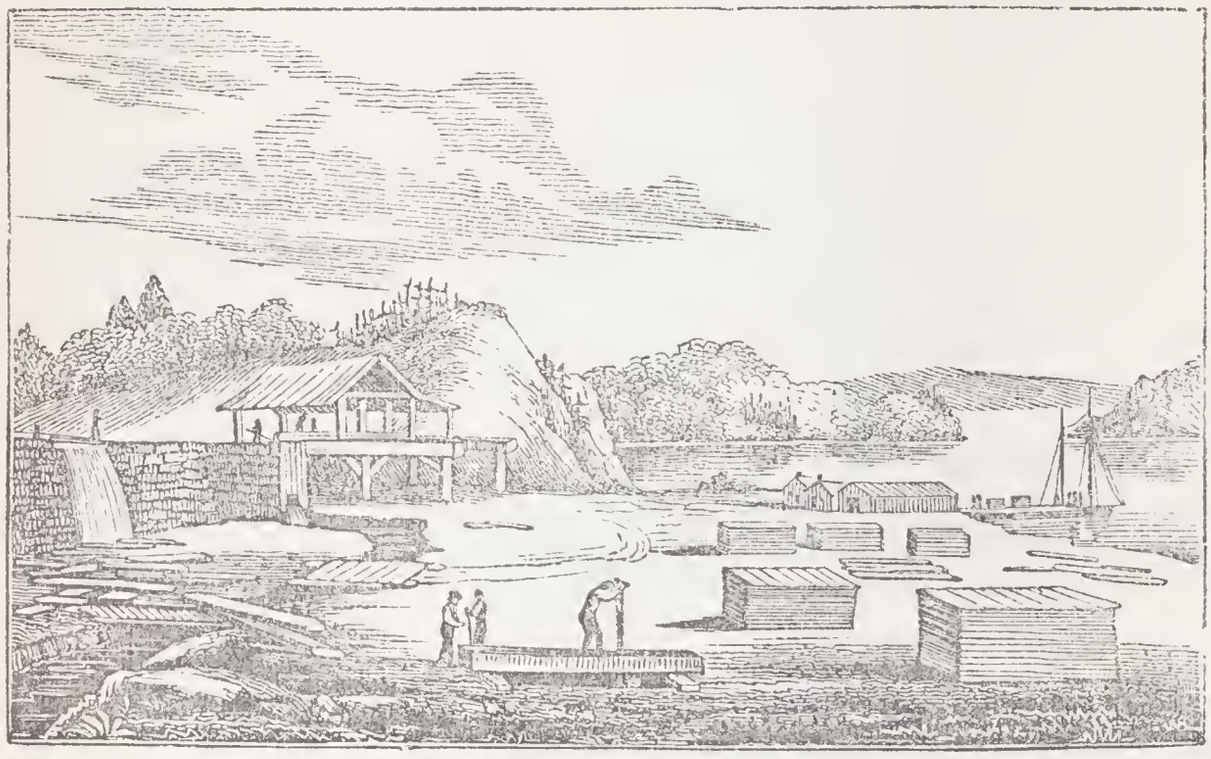


Harvard University.

Map No. 8.—Which are the New England States? Me., N.-H., Vt., Ms., R.-I., Ct.—Which extends farthest north and east? Me.—Which farthest south and west? Ct.—Which is the largest state? Me.—The second in extent? Vt.—Third? N.-H.—Fourth? Ms.—Fifth? Ct.—Smallest? R.-I.—These states extend from latitude 41 degrees to 48.—How many degrees of latitude then do they include? They extend east and west from $3\frac{1}{4}$ degrees, to 10 east longitude from Washington.—How many degrees then of longitude do they include? Which is the largest river in New England? Ct.—The next? Pt.—What river is partly in Maine and partly in New-Brunswick? S.-Js.—How long are these rivers? Which is the largest lake wholly in the Eastern States? Md.—How long is it?—What lake is partly in New England and partly in the state lying west of it? Cn.—How long is this lake? Lake Champlain is navigable for vessels of large burthen. During the war of the Revolution, and that of 1812, naval battles were fought upon it. Commodore M'Donough's victory, in which the whole British fleet was captured, took place September 11th, 1814. Which is the highest mountain in New England? Wn.—Which is the next highest? Kn.—The next? Md.—How high are each of these mountains?—Which are the three principal Islands in New England? M.-Dt., Nt., M.-Vd.—Which state has the greatest extent of sea-coast? Me.—Which has the smallest? N.-H.—Which has no sea-coast? Vt.—How many miles is it from Maine to Nova Scotia?—To Spain?—To Circassia?—From Massachusetts to Italy?—To Turkey?—From Long Island to Greece? In what year did the Pilgrims emigrate to New England? What was the name of the vessel? Mr.—How many miles is it from Boston to Halifax? To Liverpool? Total distance?

— 82 —

MAINE.



Lumber Yard, &c.

1. Maine comprises about one-half of the area of New England. Before the year 1820, it formed a part of the State of Massachusetts, under the title of the District of Maine.

2. The soil is various; much of it is fertile, but in general it is better adapted for grazing than tillage. One of the chief products is lumber, of which there was cut and sawed in 1840, to the amount of near two million dollars.

3. The coast is remarkably indented with bays and harbours, affording great facilities for commerce and the fisheries, which the inhabitants have not failed to improve.

4. They are also largely engaged in ship-building and navigation, and export vast quantities of lumber, fish, beef, pork, grain, &c.; together with a considerable amount of ice to the West Indies and the Southern States.

5. By a partial construction of the treaty of 1783, nearly a third part of Maine was long claimed by Great Britain. In the year 1842, a treaty was formed, by which the boundary

---

Maine. Q.—1. What does Maine comprise? What did it form a part of before 1820? 2. What is said of the soil? 3. Of the coast? 4. What are the exports? 5. What power long claimed one-third of Maine?

line was established, and the British claim much restricted. The right to navigate the river St. John's to the sea was also obtained by the people of the United States.

6. Augusta, the capital, is on the Kennebec river, 50 miles from its mouth: it contains a handsome State House, of granite, and a United States' Arsenal. Portland, on Casco Bay, is the largest and most important town in the state; it is well laid out, and handsomely built, and has an extensive foreign and coasting trade.

7. Bangor, on the Penobscot river, 50 miles from the sea, has trebled its population since 1830. Its trade in lumber is very extensive. Bath is noted for its ship-building, and Thomaston for its exports of lime, marble, and granite. Gardiner, Hallowell, Eastport, Belfast, Brunswick, Bristol, Saco,* Wells, and York, are all flourishing towns.

Map No. 8.—What country bounds Maine on the east? N.-Bk.—On the west? C.-Et. and N. H.—What ocean on the south? Ac.—Which are the five principal rivers that flow into the Atlantic Ocean? S.-Cx., Pt., Kc., An., So. How long are they?—What river rises in the centre of Maine and flows into New Brunswick? S.-Js. How long is it?—Which are the three principal Lakes? Md., Ck., Gd. How long are the two first?—The principal mountain, and its height? Kn.—The largest island? M.-Dt.—Which is the most eastern county? Wn.—The most western? Od.—The most southern? Yk.—In what county, and on what river, is the capital situated? Ke., Ke.—Which are the four largest towns, and their population? Pd., Br., Aa., Tn.—How many miles is it from Maine to Nova Scotia? To Spain? To Circassia? What boundary in the northern part of the state? What in the middle? What boundary formerly separated the state from Canada East. What boundary extends from L. Pohenagamook to the N. W. branch of the St. John's?

— 83 —

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. New Hampshire is often called the Switzerland of America, on account of its beautiful and varied scenery, its mountains, lakes, rivers, cascades, &c. It is also called the granite state, from the great quantities of that rock found in it.

2. The sea-coast of New Hampshire is only 18 miles in

What occurred in the year 1842? 6. What is said of Augusta? Of Portland? 7. Of Bangor? and the other towns?

New Hampshire. Q.—1. What is New Hampshire often called? Why? By what other name also? Why? 2. What is said of the sea.

---

* *Saco*, Saw'-co.

extent, and it has but a small share of commerce; but it is distinguished for its productive agriculture and flourishing manufactures.

3. The country on the coast is level; in the interior, the surface is greatly diversified by hills and valleys, and mountains of considerable height.

White Mountains.

Among these are the White Mountains, the most elevated of any in New England. They are distinguished by the names of Washington, Franklin, Adams, Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, &c.

4. The White Mountains are covered with snow for ten months in the year, and are seen from a great distance at sea. The wild and sublime character of the scenery causes them to be often visited.

5. Concord, the capital of the state, is on the right bank of the Merrimack river; it is a pleasant and flourishing town, and contains the State House, State Prison, and other buildings. It is connected with Boston by a rail-road. Portsmouth, the only sea-port in the state, is on the Piscataqua river, three miles from the sea. It has a fine harbour, and contains a United States' Navy-Yard.

6. At Hanover, is Dartmouth college, a respectable and flourishing institution. Dover, Somersworth, New Market, Exeter, Nashua, and

---

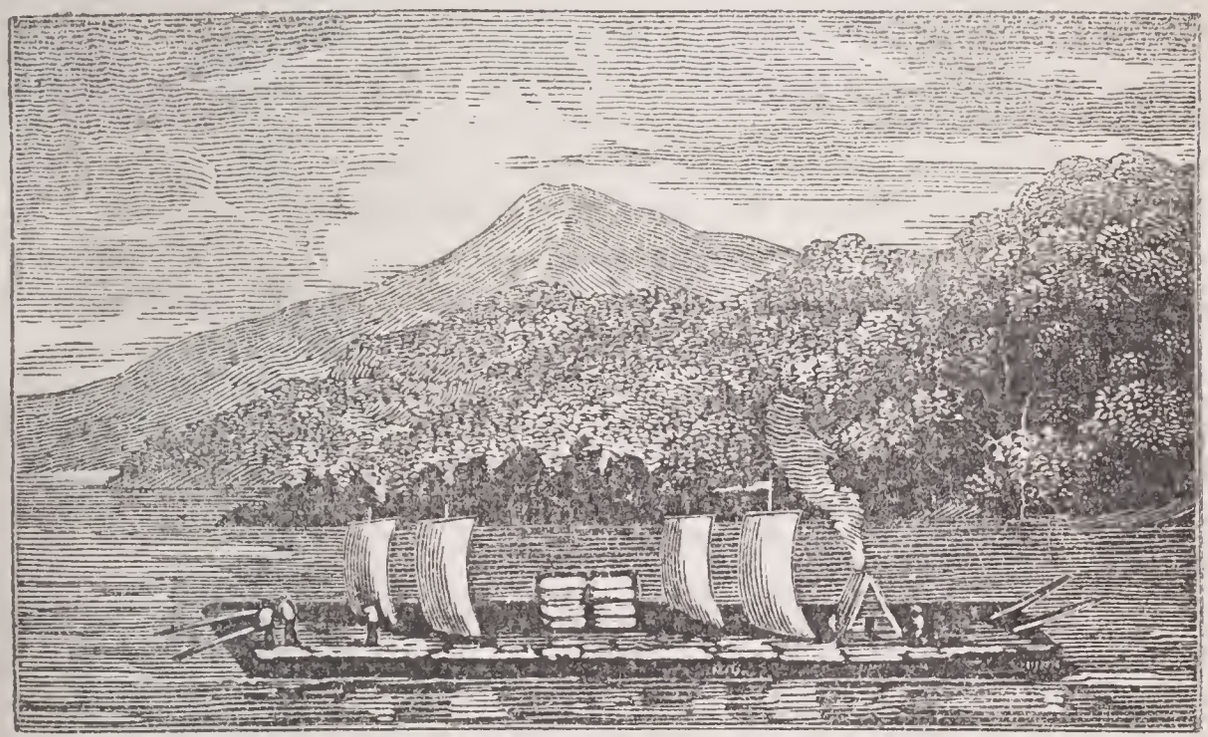
coast? Commerce? Agriculture and Manufactures? 3. What is said of the country? The White Mountains? How are they distinguished? 4. What causes them to be often visited? 5. Describe Concord. Portsmouth. 6. Where is Dartmouth College? What is said of Dover and other towns?

Manchester, are all largely engaged in manufactures. Haverhill, Lancaster, Amherst, and Keene, are thriving towns.

Map No. 8.—What river separates New Hampshire from Vermont? Ct. — How long is it? — What river runs through the centre of the state? Mk.* — How long is it? — What lake flows into it? We. — How long is it? — What mountains are in Coos county? We. — Which is the principal? Wn. — How high is it? — Which is the principal town and its population? Ph.—The Capital and its population? Cd. — On what river is Concord? Mk. — Which is the most northern county? Cs. — The three most southern counties? Ce., Hh., Rm. — In what county is the Capital? Mk. — What counties contain each two county towns? Rm., Sd., Gn. (County towns are distinguished by a ring with a dot in it.)

— 84 —

VERMONT.



Raft on Lake Champlain.

1. VERMONT is a mountainous but healthful and productive state. The Green Mountains, from which it derives its name, extend through it from North to South, dividing it into two nearly equal sections.

2. The soil is fertile, and all kinds of grain, suited to the climate, are produced in abundance. Cattle of various kinds

Vermont. Q. — 1. What is Vermont? What is said of the Green

* This river is formed by the Pemigewasset and Winnipiseogee. The latter is the outlet of the lake of that name.

are raised with great facility; the beef, butter, and cheese, are well known for their excellence, and wool is an important product.

3. This state is entirely in the interior, yet, by Lake Champlain, and the Canal of the same name, steam-boats and other vessels have brought its territory into connection with the sea.

4. Part of the trade of Vermont goes by the canal to Albany, and part down Lake Champlain to Montreal. Immense rafts of timber, containing houses for lodging the crews, are often seen sailing up the lake towards the canal, on their way to Albany, and the towns on the Hudson.

5. The territory forming this state was first explored by the French from Canada, but was settled by the English more than a hundred years ago. During the revolutionary war, Vermont acted a conspicuous part, and the name of Green Mountain Boys, acquired by the bravery of her soldiers, has ever been regarded as a title of renown.

6. Montpelier, the capital of the state, is a neat little town on the Onion river. Burlington is the largest place in the state, and the most commercial town on Lake Champlain. It contains the University of Vermont. This place is 38 miles west from Montpelier.

7. Bennington, in the southwest corner of the State, is celebrated for the victory obtained by General Stark, in 1777, over a detachment of Hessians belonging to Burgoyne's army.

8. Middlebury and Rutland, on Otter creek, and Brattleboro', Norwich, and Windsor, on the Connecticut river, are small but flourishing towns; the latter contains the Norwich University. Middlebury is the seat of Middlebury College.

Map No. 8.—What river bounds Vermont on the east? Ct.—What state does it separate from Vermont? N.-H.—What Lake bounds Vermont on the west? Cn.—What state does it separate from Vermont? N.-Y.—What country lies north of Vermont? Ca.—What state lies south? Ms.—What four streams flow into Lake Champlain? Me., L.-Me., On., Or.—What two Islands are in Lake Champlain? N.-Ho., S.-Ho.—These, with a small peninsula lying north of them form the county of Grand Isle.—What Lake is partly in this state and partly in Canada? Mg.—What mountains extend through the state? Gn.—Which is the highest peak? Md.—How high is it?—What other peaks? C.-Rp., Kn.—When was the battle of Bennington fought? What rivers flow into the Connecticut?

Mountains? 2. Of the soil? Cattle, &c.? 3. What is said of the State? 4. Of the trade? Of the rafts on Lake Champlain? 5. The Revolutionary War? 6. Describe Montpelier. 7. Bennington. 8. And other towns.

— 85 —

British troops evacuating Boston.

MASSACHUSETTS.

1. Massachusetts is the oldest and most important of the New England States. It is the most thickly settled section of the Union, and is distinguished for the enterprise and public spirit of its citizens.

2. The agriculture is conducted with skill and intelligence; but commerce, manufactures, and the fisheries, are the great objects of pursuit. The shipping amounts to nearly one-third of the whole owned in the United States, including a large proportion of the whaling vessels. Massachusetts is the leading State in railroads, and a greater number centre in Boston than in any other city of the Union.

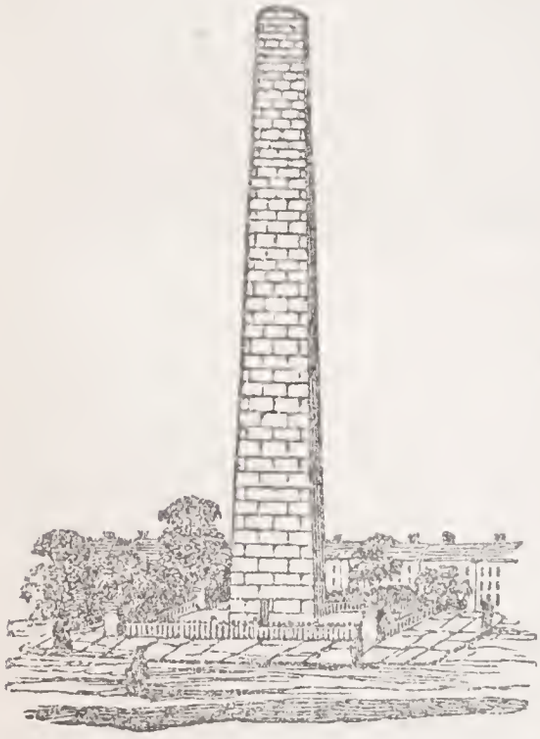
3. The literary, religious, and charitable institutions of Massachusetts, are important, and in a flourishing condition. Harvard University, at Cambridge, is the oldest and best endowed literary establishment in the Union. Williams College, at Williamstown, and Amherst College, at Amherst, are also respectable institutions.

Massachusetts. Q. — 1. What is Massachusetts? For what is it distinguished? 2. What is said of the agriculture? Commerce? Manufactures? Fisheries? Shipping? Railroads? 3. What is said of literary and other institutions? Of Harvard University?

4. This State contains a number of flourishing towns and villages, many of which are distinguished for the neatness of their buildings, and the elegance of their churches.

5. Boston, the Capital of the State, is situated on a peninsula at the head of Massachusetts Bay. This city is considered the literary and commercial metropolis of New England. Its shipping amounts to more than one-eighth of the whole tonnage of the Union, and its trade extends to all parts of the world. This city is noted for the number and elegance of its public buildings, among which are the State House, the New Market House, Tremont House, the Hospital, &c.

6. The American Revolution commenced in Boston. Its port was closed in 1774, by order of the British Government, and a garrison placed in it. It was, in consequence, besieged by the Americans under General Washington, who compelled the British to leave the town.



Bunker Hill Monument.

7. Charlestown is connected with Boston by three bridges. It is situated on a peninsula, the centre of which is occupied by Bunker Hill, celebrated for the battle fought on it during the revolutionary war. The Bunker Hill Monument, built of granite, is 220 feet high from its base, which is thirty feet square. Cambridge, three miles northwest of Boston, contains Harvard University.

8. Salem is the second city in the state for commerce. Newburyport has considerable trade. Beverley, Gloucester,* and Marblehead, are largely engaged in the cod fisheries, and Nantucket and New Bedford carry on the whale-fishing to a greater extent than any other places in the world.

9. Lowell, on the Merrimack river, is famous for its cotton and woollen mills, and its great extent of water power. Lawrence, a new manufacturing town, on the same river, but further down, has also an extensive water power. Taunton and Fall River are considerable manufacturing towns. Lynn is noted for the vast amount of boots and shoes made in it; and Lexington for being the place where the first battle was fought during the revolutionary war.

---

4. What does this state contain? 5. Describe Boston. Its shipping. Trade. Buildings, &c. 6. What is said of the American revolution? What did the British Government do? What did the American army do? 7. Describe Charlestown, &c. The Bunker Hill Monument. 8. Describe Salem, Newburyport, Nantucket, and New Bedford. 9. Describe

---

Glos'-ter.

10. At Plymouth the first settlers or pilgrims landed in the year 1620. The anniversary of that event is still observed. Worcester,* Springfield, Northampton, and Pittsfield, are all thriving and important towns. Springfield contains an United States' armory, at which great numbers of fire-arms are made.

— 86 —

Map No. 8.—What bounds Massachusetts on the north? N.-H., Vt. —On the south? R.-I., Ct. — On the west? N.-Y. — What ocean on the east and south? Ac. — What three mountains are in Massachusetts? Wt., He., Tm.—The range west of the Connecticut river, is called the Housatonick Mts.: it is a continuation of the Green Mts. Which are the principal rivers? Ct., Mk.—How long are they? The other rivers? Be., Hk., Dd., Wd., Ms., Ce., Na., Cd.—What capes are on the coast? An., Cd., Mr. — What bays? Ms., C.-Cd., Bs. — What islands? Nt., M.-Vd.—What counties do these islands form? Nt., Ds. — Which is the most northern county? Ex. — The most southern? Nt. — The most eastern? Be. — The most western? Be. — What is the capital? Bn. — Its population? In what county is it? A., Suffolk County. — What four places have each a population of upwards of 10,000? Ll., Sm., N.-Bd., Cn. — In what year was the battle of Lexington fought? Bunker's Hill? † What rail-roads centre in Boston?

Tell by the Scale what capital lies about 90 miles from Boston. Hd. —What county town in Maine lies a few miles farther? Pd.—This is the most important place in the state, and was formerly the capital. What county towns in Connecticut are about the same distance from Boston as Portland? Mn., Hm., N.-Ln. — What island belonging to Rhode Island is not quite so far? Bk. — What island in Massachusetts is about the same distance? Nt. — What is the name of the county and county town? Nt. — What does this island carry on to a great extent? par. 8. — How far is Providence from Boston? Worcester? Amherst? Exeter? How far is Augusta? Montpelier? In what states are the two last? What towns on Massachusetts Bay?

— 87 —

RHODE ISLAND.

1. Rhode Island is the smallest state in the Union, but is pleasantly situated, and possesses numerous facilities for commerce and manufactures.

Lowell, Taunton, &c. 10. Plymouth and the other towns.

Rhode Island. Q. — 1. What is Rhode Island? What does it pos-

---

* *Worcester*, Woos'-ter.

† The flag denoting this battle is near Charlestown.

2. The face of the country is mostly level, except in the north-west, which is hilly and rocky. Part of the state has a thin and poor soil, but the islands bordering on the Narragansett Bay are of great fertility, and are celebrated for their fine cattle.

3. This state is extensively engaged in the cotton manufacture, and took the lead in that branch of industry. The first cotton-mill erected in the United States was built here.

4. Rhode Island had no Constitution of government for 179 years, except the Charter granted by Charles II., in 1663. In 1842, after some dissensions, occasioned by party differences, a new Constitution was formed more suitable to the times, and similar in principle to the Constitutions of the other states.

5. Providence, on the river of the same name, 35 miles from the sea, is the second city in New England in population, wealth, and commerce. It contains the State House, Brown University, the Arcade, a number of churches, &c. Its manufactures are various and important.

6. Newport, near the entrance of Narragansett Bay, is noted for the beauty of its situation and salubrious air. Its harbour is one of the finest in the United States. Rhode Island, on which it is situated, has, from its beauty and fertility, been called the Eden of America.

7. Bristol is a handsome and flourishing town: its foreign and coasting trade is considerable. The villages of Pawtucket, Slatersville, Woonsocket, and Pawtuxet, are noted for their manufactures; the first is situated on both sides of the Pawtucket or Blackstone river, and is partly in this state, and partly in Massachusetts.

Map No. 8. — What state bounds Rhode Island on the north and east? Ms.—The west? Ct.—What ocean on the south? Ac.—What is the principal bay? Nt. — Which are the two principal islands? R.-Id., Bk. — What county do they belong to? Nt. — Which are the capitals? Pe., Nt. Their population?—In what county is Providence? Pe. — In which is Newport? Nt.

88

CONNECTICUT.

1. Connecticut, the southernmost of the New England States, is noted for the excellence of its literary institutions, and for the intelligence, enterprise, and good morals of the people.

2. It has a varied surface of hill and dale, but is seldom

---

sess? 2. What is said of the country? Of the soil, &c.? 3. What is this state engaged in? 4. What is said of the Constitution? What occurred in 1842? 5. Describe Providence. 6. Newport. 7. Bristol, Pawtucket, &c.

Connecticut. Q. — 1. For what is Connecticut noted? 2. What is

School-House. Emigrants to the West.

mountainous. The climate is healthful, and the soil generally good, especially in the valley of the Connecticut river.

3. The chief products are the grains, &c. common to New England: orchards are numerous; cider is produced in considerable quantities; and butter and cheese are made annually to a great amount.

4. The manufactures of Connecticut are extensive and various. The principal articles are cotton, woollen, and silk goods, clocks, cutlery, buttons, carriages, &c. The foreign trade is chiefly with the West Indies, but is less extensive than that along the coast.

5. The provision made for the public education of the people in this state, is more liberal than in any other part of the world. The interest of the school fund affords instruction to nearly ninety thousand children.

6. Perhaps no Atlantic state has sent so large a number of active and industrious settlers to the western country as Connecticut; and her emigrants, wherever found, are among the most enterprising and industrious part of the population.

---

said of the surface? Of the climate and soil? 3. What are the chief products? What is said of orchards, &c.? 4. Of the manufactures? The principal articles? The foreign trade? 5. Public education? What does the interest of the school fund afford? 6. What is said of

7. The seat of government is, alternately, at New Haven and Hartford. The former city is on a bay in Long Island Sound. It is built in squares, with straight and wide streets, and its regularity and neatness are much admired.

8. Yale College was removed to this city from Saybrook in 1717. Besides the college buildings, there are several churches and other public edifices that excite attention. The boarding-schools and seminaries for youth of both sexes are highly respectable and well conducted.

9. Hartford is on the Connecticut river, 50 miles from its mouth. During a few years past, it has rapidly increased in commerce, population and wealth. It is the seat of Washington College, and of the Asylum for the Deaf and Dumb, the first institution of the kind established in the United States. Wethersfield, 4 miles south from Hartford, is noted for its trade in onions. It contains the State Prison.

10. New London and Stonington employ a number of vessels in the whale and seal fisheries. Middletown and Norwich are extensively engaged in manufactures. Litchfield was long noted for its law-school; Bristol and Plymouth for their manufactures of clocks; Collinsville for axes, and Waterbury for buttons. Saybrook was the first place in this state occupied by the English.

— 89 —

Map No. 8.—What state bounds Connecticut on the north? Ms.—On the east? R.-I.—West? N.-Y.—South? L.-I. Sd.—How long is Long I. Sound? To what state does Long I. belong? N.-Y.—What rivers flow into the Sound? Ct., Ts., Hk. The length of each? How far is the Connecticut navigable? For what kind of vessels? The Housatonick? Point out the other rivers. What is the population of New Haven? Of Hartford? Which are the four next largest towns, and their population? N.-Ld., Dy., Nh., Ld.—On what river is New London? Norwich? Middletown? Haddam? &c.

How many miles is it by the scale from New Haven to Hartford? What county town is about the same distance? Ld.—The city of New York, Northampton on the Connecticut river, and Block Island, are all about the same distance from New Haven. How many miles is it? Hartford is nearly half way between New York and Boston. How many miles is it from each? New Haven is about the same distance from Newport, Providence, and Worcester. How many miles is it? Hartford is situated very nearly half way between the eastern and western extremities of the state. How many miles is it from each? Hartford is about the same distance from Providence and Poughkeepsie. How many miles is it from each? How far is New Haven from the north line of the state? From the north-east corner of the state? From the north-west corner?

---

settlers to the western country? Of emigrants? 7. Of the seat of government? Describe New Haven. 8. Yale College, &c. 9. Hartford. 10. What is said of New London? Stonington? Norwich? Litchfield? &c.

— 90 —

MIDDLE STATES.

1. The Middle States comprise New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware. They occupy one of the finest portions of the Union, and are distinguished for their rapid growth in prosperity and wealth, and for the enterprise and industry of their inhabitants.

2. These states exhibit some of the most mountainous tracts in the Union. The Alleghany, the Blue Mountains, and other ranges, stretch through the country from south-west to north-east. They are almost universally covered with forests, and contain many wild solitudes among them that are seldom or never visited by man.

3. The climate is generally more mild than in the New England States, except in the northern parts of New York, where the cold of winter is equally severe.

4. A great portion of the soil of the Middle States is fertile, well cultivated, and produces large crops of excellent wheat,

---

Middle States. Q.—1. What do the Middle States comprise? What do they occupy? For what are they distinguished? 2. What do these states exhibit? With what are they covered? 3. What is said

Indian corn, rye, oats, and barley. The fruits are chiefly apples, pears, peaches, and plums.

5. The most useful minerals, coal, iron, salt, and lime, abound to a great extent in various parts of the country; and mining is actively pursued, especially in the coal regions of Pennsylvania.

6. The commerce of the Middle States is extensive, and is carried on chiefly through the cities of New York and Philadelphia. The internal trade is greatly facilitated by the numerous canals and rail-roads which extend through the different parts of the country.

7. The manufactures are important and various; a vast amount of capital and labour is employed in their fabrication, and thousands of both sexes are supported by them.

8. In the Middle States common-school education is not so general as in most parts of New England, except in the state of New York, where great attention has been paid to the subject.

9. In Pennsylvania, a system has been adopted that will afford the means of education to all classes of the people; the same is mainly true respecting New Jersey; but in Delaware, the plans pursued for that purpose have not as yet proved very efficient.

— 91 —

10. The great body of the people in the Middle States are of British descent; but in some parts of Pennsylvania there are many Germans, who speak only their own language, and are often ignorant of the English tongue. In New York and New Jersey, there are a number of the descendants of the original Dutch settlers of New York, and in some sections that language is partially spoken.

11. At the close of the revolutionary war, so many emigrants from the eastern states settled in New York, that a majority of the present population of that state are natives of New England, or their descendants. These, by their industrious habits, their enterprise and general intelligence, have contributed much to the prosperity of that section of the Union.

---

of the climate? 4. Of the soil? The crops? 5. What is said of the minerals? Of mining? 6. The commerce? The internal trade? 7. The manufactures? 8. Of common-school education? In New York? 9. In Pennsylvania? In New Jersey and Delaware?

10. Of what descent are the great body of the people? What of the Germans? Dutch? 11. Of emigrants from the New England states? What have they contributed?

Map No. 11.—Which is the largest of the Middle States? N.-Y.—The second in extent? Pa.—Third? N.-J.—Fourth? De.—Which extends farthest north and east? N.-Y.—South? De.—West? Pa.—Which state has the greatest extent of sea-coast? N.-Y.—Which has no sea-coast? Pa.—The Middle States extend from latitude 38½ to 45 degrees.—How many degrees of latitude, then, do they include? They extend from longitude 5 degrees east of Washington, to about 3½ west?—How many degrees of longitude do they include?—Which is the largest Island belonging to the Middle States? Lg.—What is its length?—The next in size? Sn.—This Island forms Richmond county, in New York.—Which are the principal mountains? Ay., Be., Cl., Mn.—Which is the highest mountain? My.—How high is it?—Which are the chief rivers that flow into the Ocean? Hn., De., Sa.—Which two form the Ohio? Ay., Ma.—How long are all these rivers?—Which state has the greatest extent of lake-coast? N.-Y.—The next? Pa.—How long is each of these lakes?—For what are they navigable?—How far is it from New York to Bristol, England?—From New Jersey to Italy?—From Delaware to Turkey?—From Philadelphia to Norfolk?

92

NEW YORK.

View of the lower part of the City of New York.

1. New York is the most flourishing, wealthy, and populous state in the Union. It exhibits one of those amazing examples of growth and prosperity that are no where seen on the globe beyond our own borders.

New York. Q.—1. What is New York? What does it exhibit?

2. The northern portion of the state is, in part, mountainous, and but thinly settled; the eastern is hilly, and tolerably productive; while the western part is level, remarkably fertile, and increasing rapidly in population.

3. The agriculture is well conducted. Wheat is the chief staple; but corn, rye, and other grains, are extensively cultivated. The flour is of excellent quality; and, with other provisions, is largely exported.

4. The manufactures are extensive and flourishing, and the commerce of the state is on a great scale. Near three-fifths of the imports, and more than one-fourth of the exports of the Union, are made by New York alone.

5. Iron ore is found in great abundance, and lead, gypsum, and limestone, also abound. There are numerous and important salt springs at various places. The principal are at Salina and Syracuse, where more than four million bushels of salt are made annually.

6. The mineral springs of Ballston and Saratoga are well known throughout the Union for their medicinal qualities, and are much visited from all quarters. The waters are largely exported to the other states, and even to foreign countries.

7. This state shares with Canada West the Falls of Niagara, one of the greatest wonders of the western continent. The widest and most imposing part of this cataract is on the Canadian side; while that on the New York side, though narrower, is several feet higher than the other.

8. New York is distinguished for its magnificent public works, of which the Erie, or Great Western Canal, is the largest in the state, and one of the principal works of the kind in the world.

9. The success attending its completion and use, fully convinced the people of the United States of the advantages of works of internal improvement. There are, likewise, a number of other canals, and also rail-roads, in successful operation, besides some that are partially completed.

---

2. What is said of the northern part? Eastern? Western? 3. The agriculture? 4. Manufactures? Imports? Exports? 5. Iron ore, &c.? Salt springs? How much salt is made annually? 6. What is said of the mineral springs? 7. Of the Falls of Niagara? 8. How is New York distinguished? What is said of the Erie canal? 9. Of other canals and rail-roads?

— 93 —

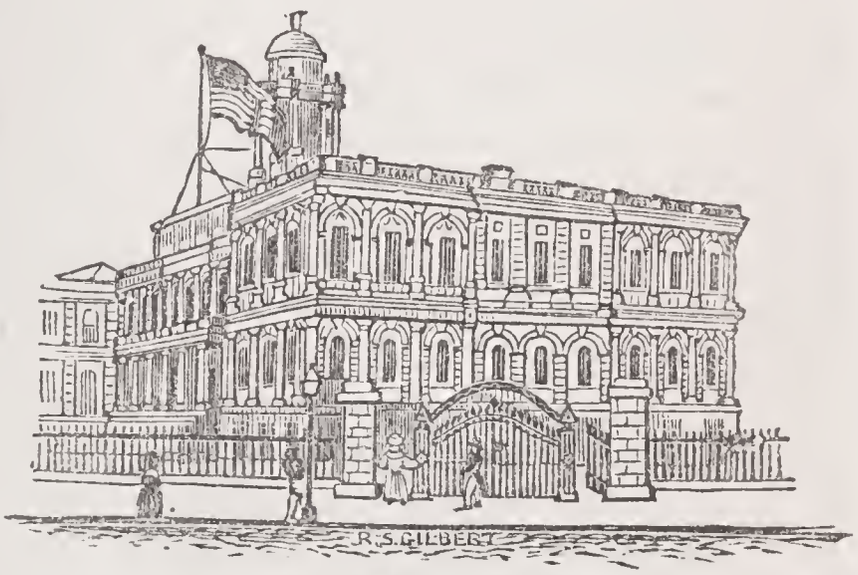
10. Very ample provision has been made for popular education in this state; and there is no country in the world where the great body of the people have the means of being so generally instructed as in New York. More than 800,000 children are taught annually in the common-schools: and there are, also, 280 academies, 11 colleges, and a university.

11. The people of New York, during the revolutionary war, strenuously opposed the arbitrary measures of the British government. The state, for the greater part of that gloomy period, was the theatre of active hostilities; and the surrender of General Burgoyne and his army, with other memorable events, took place within its limits.

12. The city of New York is situated on Manhattan island, at the junction of the Hudson and East rivers. It is the commercial emporium of America; and is, next to London and Liverpool, the greatest in the world. Its progress in population has never been surpassed Since 1796, it has, including Brooklyn, increased more than ten-fold.

13. The foreign, coasting, and inland trade of this city is immense: regular packets are constantly trading to the chief sea-ports in Europe, the West Indies, South America, and all the important maritime towns in the United States. Steam-ships also are constantly arriving from, and departing to, England, and other European countries.

14. One of the most important works in the state is the aqueduct for supplying the city with wholesome water from the Croton river. It is 45 miles long, and will furnish 60 million gallons of water daily: it cost 12½ million dollars. This noble structure was commenced in 1835, and was built at the expense of the city.

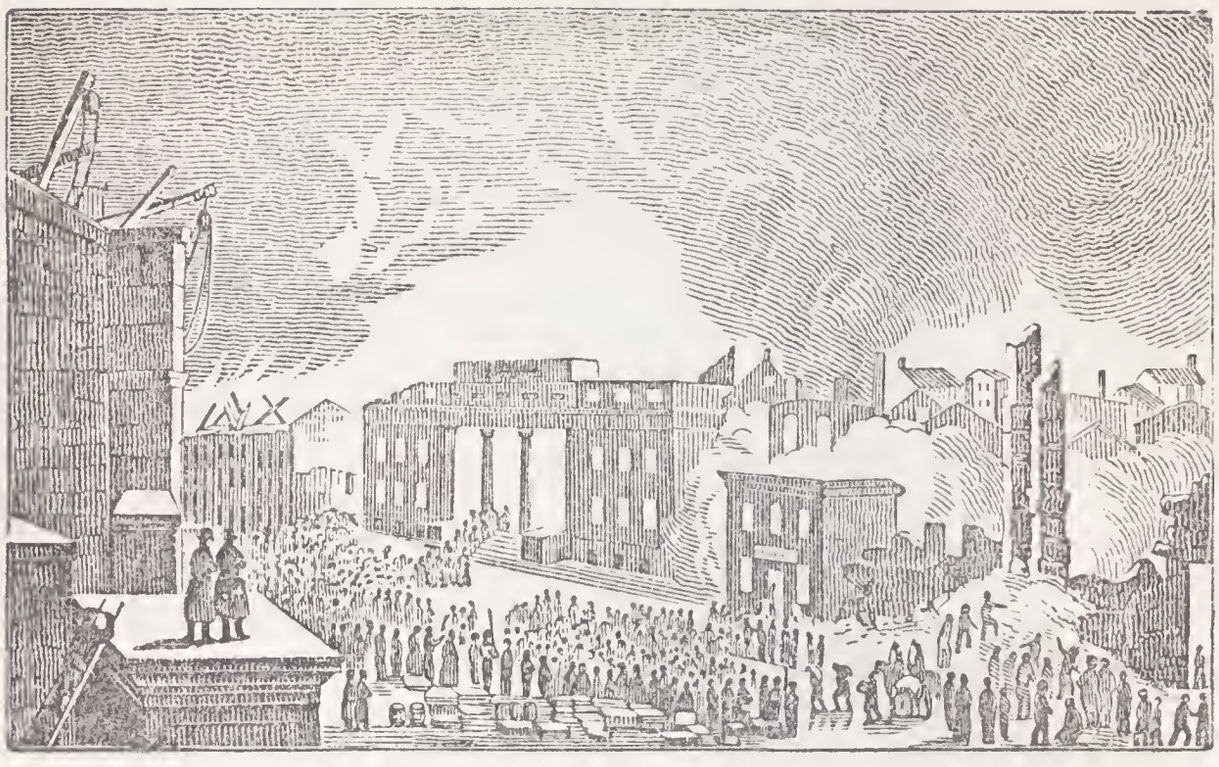


City Hall, New York.

15. The public buildings are numerous, and many of them elegant. The City Hall, new Custom House, Merchants' Exchange, Hall of the University, Astor House, Hall of Justice, &c., are among the most striking and important. The churches are upwards of 150 in number.

---

10. Of popular education? How many children are taught annually? 11. What is said of the people of New York? Of the State? 12. Where is the city of New York situated? What is it? What is said of its progress in population? 13. Foreign, coasting, and inland trade? 14. The Croton aqueduct? 15. Mention the public buildings.



Great Fire in New York.

16. This city suffered a severe loss by the great fire of December 16th, 1835, which destroyed 530 buildings, and other property to the amount of more than seventeen millions of dollars.

17. Brooklyn, on the opposite side of the East river, is properly a suburb of New York. It commands a delightful view of the city and surrounding country, and is a pleasant place of residence. Above New York, on the Hudson, is West Point, the seat of the United States' Military Academy for the instruction of officers of the army.

18. Albany, the capital of the state, is 150 miles north of the city of New York. It is the centre of an extensive and important inland trade, being connected with the ocean by the Hudson river, with lakes Erie and Champlain by the State canals, and with Boston and Buffalo by one of the finest rail-roads in the Union.

— 94 —

19. Newburg, Poughkeepsie,* Catskill, Hudson, Troy, and Lansingburg, all on the Hudson, are flourishing towns. Schenectady, Utica, Syracuse, Rochester, Lockport, and Buffalo, are the most important places on the Erie canal. The latter is the great emporium of the trade on Lake Erie. Rochester is noted for its numerous flour-mills, and Syracuse for the vast quantity of salt made there, and in the vicinity.

20. Besides these, there are many other thriving towns in various parts of the state, of which, Rome, Auburn, Geneva, Canandaigua, Ithaca, Oswego, Sackett's Harbour, and Plattsburg, are the principal. Plattsburg is noted for the two victories gained over the British in 1814. Sackett's Harbour was the chief naval station on Lake Ontario in the late war.

16. What is said of the Great Fire? 17. Describe Brooklyn, &c. 18. Albany. 19. Newburg, &c. 20. The other towns.

* Po-kep'-sy.

Map No. 11.—What provinces bound New York on the north? C.-Wt., C.-Et. — What States on the south? Pa., N.-J. — On the east? Vt., Ms., Ct. — What are the three most northern counties? S.-Lc., Fn., Cn. — Most southern? Rd. — Most eastern? Sk. — Most western? Ce. — What two great lakes separate New York from Canada West? Ee., Oo. — How long are they? What river forms part of the boundary between this state and Canada West? S.-Lc. — How long is it? How long is Lake Champlain? George? Oneida? Skeneateles? Cayuga? Seneca? Canandaigua? Crooked and Black Lakes? What three rivers flow into Lake Ontario? Ge., Oo., Bk. — What four flow into the St. Lawrence river? S.-Rs., Rt., Gs., Oe. — Which river flows into the Atlantic Ocean? Hn. — Which is the largest branch of the Hudson river? Mk. — Tell the lengths of all the foregoing rivers. How many miles is the Hudson river navigable for steam-boats? For sloops? For ships? What river unites Lakes Erie and Ontario? Na. — How high is Mt. Marcy? The Catskill Mts.?

What island is in Niagara river? Gd.—What celebrated falls on the Niagara river? Na.—What island forms one of the counties of the state? Sn. — What island contains three counties? Lg. — What is the length of Long Island? What Sound separates it from Connecticut? Point out the different places at which battles were fought, and their dates.

— 95 —

Battle of Trenton.

NEW JERSEY.

1. New Jersey possesses considerable variety of surface, being mountainous in the northern parts, moderately level in the middle, and low and chiefly sandy in the south.

New Jersey. Q. — 1. What does New Jersey possess? 2. What is

2. Most of the soil is well cultivated, and produces the various grains common to this part of the Union, with fruits and vegetables in abundance, which supply the markets of the large cities in the adjacent states.

3. The manufactures are extensive and flourishing. They comprise cotton and woollen goods, with various articles of iron, glass, leather, &c.

4. Some important canals and rail-roads extend through the state, and add greatly to the facilities of intercourse between the northern and southern parts of the Union.

5. The people of New Jersey bore their full share in the perils and hardships of the revolution; and some of the most important battles of that period were fought within the limits of the state.

6. Trenton, on the Delaware river, at the head of tide-water, is the capital of New Jersey. It has considerable trade and manufactures, and is noted for the capture of the Hessians in 1776, by General Washington.

7. Newark, 10 miles west from New York, is the largest town in the state. It is well built, and has extensive manufactures. New Brunswick, on the Raritan river, is a place of considerable trade. It contains Rutgers College, a highly respectable literary institution.

8. Paterson, at the falls of the Passaic river, is one of the principal manufacturing towns in the country. Here are numerous mills, factories, founderies, and all the different establishments necessary in a place devoted to the fabrication, on a large scale, of cotton and woollen goods, paper, and machinery of various kinds.

9. Princeton, 11 miles north-east of Trenton, is a neat and pleasant town. It is the seat of New Jersey College, one of the oldest and most respectable literary institutions in the Union. Elizabethtown, Burlington, Camden, and Salem, are thriving towns.

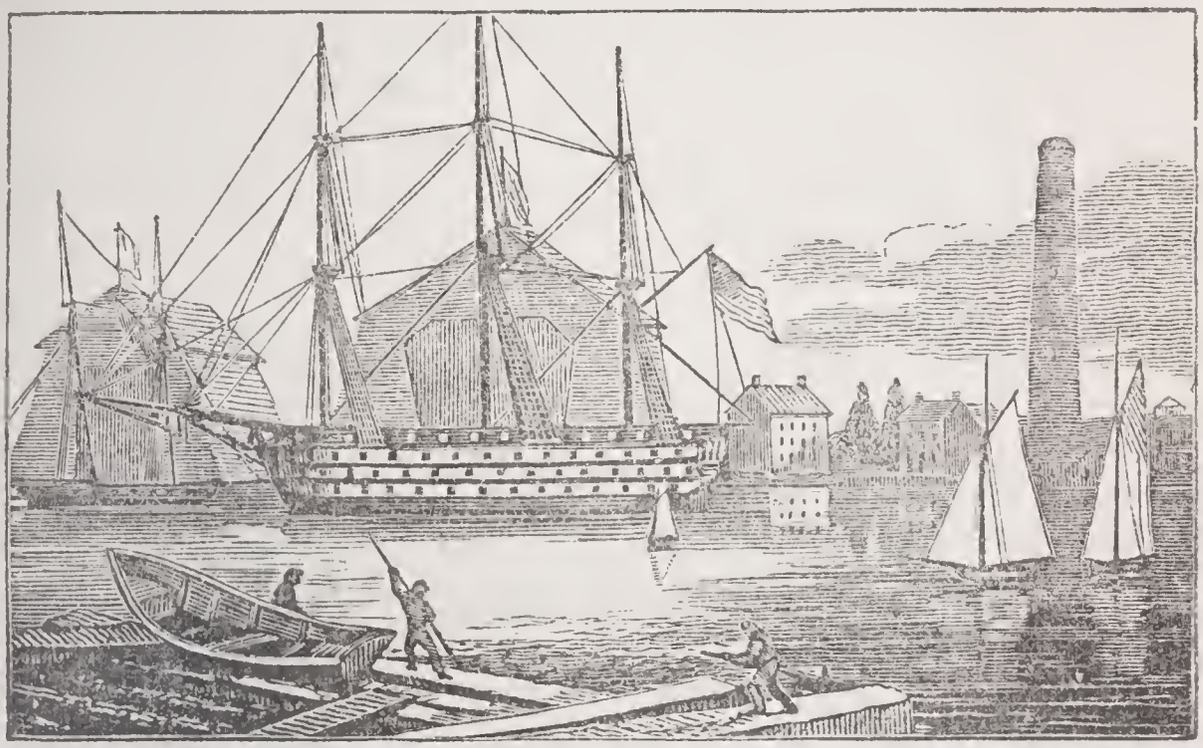
Map No. 11. — What bounds New Jersey on the north? N.-Y. — What on the east? A.-On., N.-Y. — West? Pa., De. — What river separates New Jersey from Pennsylvania and Delaware? De. — What river separates it from New York? Hn. — Which are the three principal rivers of New Jersey? Pe., Rn., Mc. — Which is the most northern county? Sx. — The most southern? C.-My. — The most eastern? Bn. — The most western? Sm. — What Cape at the southern extremity of New Jersey? My. — What Bay on the south-west? De. — When were the battles of Trenton, Princeton, Monmouth, and

---

said of the soil? What does it produce? 3. What is said of the manufactures? What do they comprise? 4. What extends through the state? 5. What is said of the people? 6. Describe Trenton. 7. Newark. New Brunswick. 8. Paterson. 9. Princeton, and other towns.

Red Bank, fought? In which county is Trenton? Mr. — Newark? Ex. — Paterson? Pc. — New Brunswick? Mx. —What is the population of each of these towns? On what river is Newark? Burlington? Camden? &c.

— 96 —



Ship of the Line Pennsylvania.

PENNSYLVANIA.

1. Pennsylvania is, next to New York, the largest in extent of the four Middle States, and the second in population in the Union. It is highly distinguished for its various manufactures, vast mineral resources, and extensive public works.

2. The interior of the state is traversed by the different ridges of the Alleghany Mountains, while the eastern and western sections are level, or moderately hilly.

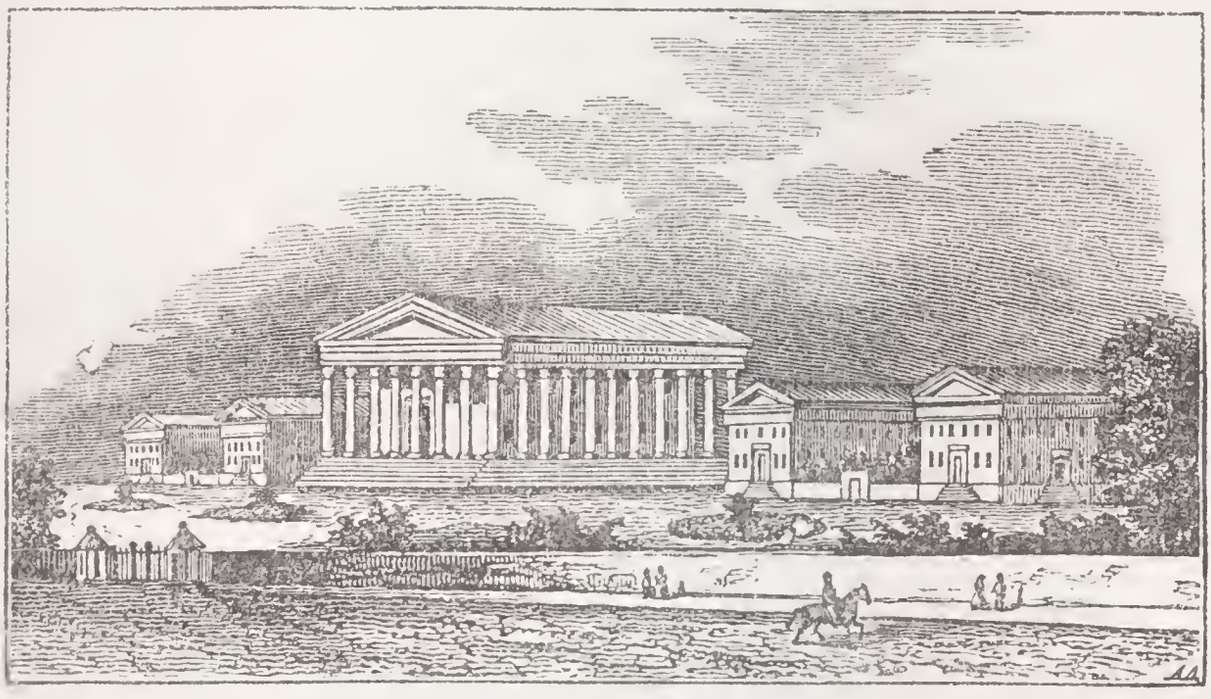
3. The soil is generally well cultivated, and yields in abundance wheat, corn, and other grains, with all the fruits common to the Middle States.

4. The mineral wealth of Pennsylvania is probably greater than that of any other state in the Union; coal, iron, and lime, are found in vast quantities, and salt springs are numerous.

Pennsylvania. Q.—1. What is Pennsylvania? For what is it distinguished? 2. What is said of the interior of the state? The eastern and western sections? 3. Of the soil? 4. The mineral wealth?

5. The works of internal improvement already completed, have added greatly to the intercourse between the eastern and western parts of the Union, and are rapidly increasing the trade and commerce of the state.

6. No general system of education was adopted in Pennsylvania till 1834. Since that period, the number of schools and scholars has greatly increased. Besides nearly 8,000 Common Schools, and more than 400,000 scholars, there is a University, eighteen Colleges, and a number of respectable academies and private schools in the state.



Girard College.

7. The Girard College, for orphans, near Philadelphia, was endowed by the munificence of a private individual, Stephen Girard, who died in 1832, and left two millions of dollars for the purpose of erecting and supporting the institution.

8. Pennsylvania was settled by a colony of English Quakers, or Friends, under the guidance of William Penn, whose liberal views in government and religion and just policy towards the natives, ensured the prosperity of the colony, and preserved peace for many years between the Indians and white settlers.

9 This state acted a conspicuous part in the war of the revolution.

---

5. The works of internal improvement? What have they added? 6. What is said of education? Of the number of schools? 7. Girard College? 8. Who settled Pennsylvania? What is said of William Penn? 9. How did the state act during the revolution?

It was in her chief city that glorious declaration was made, which asserted and placed on a sure basis the civil and political rights of mankind, and formed a new era in the history of the world.

— 97 —

10. Harrisburg, the capital of the state, is pleasantly situated on the east bank of the Susquehanna river, 98 miles west of Philadelphia. It contains the state capitol, and other public buildings.

11. Philadelphia is one of the most regular and handsomely-built cities in America. It stands on the west bank of the Delaware river, one hundred miles from the sea, and is noted for the cleanliness of the streets, and the neat appearance of the buildings.

12. In manufactures, it is one of the first cities in the Union. The foreign commerce is very considerable, and the inland trade with the Western States is valuable and extensive. The exportation of coal employs many vessels and men, and a large amount of capital.

13. Philadelphia is celebrated as a seat of literature and science, especially of medical science. The University of Pennsylvania and the Jefferson Medical School both enjoy a high reputation. The public and private schools are numerous and well attended; and the city abounds in benevolent and religious institutions.

Wire Bridge over the Schuylkill river, with part of Fairmount.

14. It is also adorned with many handsome public buildings, of which the Custom House, Merchants' Exchange, and Mint, are the

---

10. Describe Harrisburg. 11. What is said of Philadelphia? For what is it noted? 12. What is said of its manufactures? Commerce? Exportation of coal? 13. For what is Philadelphia celebrated? What are numerous? In what does the city abound? 14. With what is it

most elegant. The Alms-House, State Penitentiary, Naval Asylum, and Girard College, all near the city, are large and important edifices.

15. The Fairmount water-works, on the Schuylkill* river, supply the city with pure and wholesome water, which is conveyed in pipes, under ground, in every direction. Close to these works there is an elegant wire bridge, 357 feet in length, and 30 feet above the surface of the river. Two other bridges cross the Schuylkill lower down. The city and Northern Liberties are lighted with gas in a superior manner.

16. The ship of the line Pennsylvania was built here, and launched in 1837. This vast ship, probably the largest ever constructed, is 247 feet long, and 59 deep; carries 140 guns, and is 3,306 tons burthen.

17. Pittsburg, situated at the head of the Ohio river, is distinguished for its numerous manufactories. A great fire occurred here April 17th, 1845, which destroyed about 1,000 houses, besides a vast amount of merchandize; the whole loss is estimated at from 6 million to 9 million dollars. Alleghany and Birmingham are considered suburbs of Pittsburg, and are connected with it by bridges.

18. Lancaster, 62 miles west of Philadelphia, is situated in a rich and fertile country. Reading, Easton, Lebanon, Carlisle, Pottsville, Beaver, Wilkesbarre,† and Erie, are all considerable towns: the latter is important on account of its harbour, which is one of the best on the lakes.

— 98 —

Map No. 11.—What bounds Pennsylvania on the north? N.-Y.—South? De., Md., Va.—East? N.-Y., N.-J.—West? Oo., Va.—What river separates Pennsylvania from New Jersey? De.—What river flows into Chesapeake Bay? Sa.—Which are its two chief branches? Nh., Wt.—What rivers unite at Pittsburg? Ay., Ma.—What river do they form? Oo.—What river flows into the Susquehanna above Harrisburg? Ja.—Tell the lengths of the foregoing rivers.—What two rivers flow into the Delaware? Lh., Sl.—What river flows into the Ohio below Pittsburg? Br.—How many miles is the Delaware navigable for steam-boats?—What mountains extend between Berks and Schuylkill counties? Be.—What mountains in the centre of the state? Ay.—What two ridges in the western part? Ll., Ct.—In which county is Philadelphia? Pa.—Harrisburg? Dn.—Lancaster? Lr.—Pittsburg? Ay.—What is the population of Philadelphia?—Lancaster?—Harrisburg?—Reading?—Easton?—Erie?—Pittsburg?—What lake forms the N. W. boundary of the state? Ee.—What town on the lake? Ee.—When was Braddock defeated?—Where were the battles of Brandywine and Germantown fought?—When did the massacre of Wyoming take place?—On what river is Reading?—Easton?—Pottsville?—Wilkesbarre?

adorned? Mention the public buildings. 15. Fairmount water-works? Wire Bridge? &c. 16. Of the Ship Pennsylvania? 17. Describe Pittsburg. 18. Lancaster. The other towns.

* *Schuylkill*, Skool'-kill. † *Wilkesbarre*, Wilks'-bar-ry.

— 99 —

DELAWARE.

1. Delaware is the smallest in population, and, except Rhode Island, the least in extent, of any state in the Union. Its general aspect is that of an extended plain, mostly favourable for cultivation.

2. The chief products are wheat and Indian corn, of which the former is generally of excellent quality. Brandywine creek, in the upper part of the state, supplies extensive water-power for a number of large manufacturing establishments. The principal articles furnished by these, are flour, corn-meal, cotton and woollen goods, paper, and gunpowder.

3. The Chesapeake and Delaware Canal, the Newcastle and Frenchtown, and the Philadelphia and Baltimore railroads, extend through the upper part of the State. The first connects Delaware river and Chesapeake Bay, the last is an important link in the great chain of railroads now in operation along the Atlantic coasts of the Union.

4. Near Lewistown, an important national work, the Delaware Break-water, has been erected, for the purpose of affording a shelter to vessels in stormy weather. The work consists of two piers, an ice-breaker 1700 feet, and a break-water 2800 feet long. The cost of the whole is estimated at three millions of dollars.

5. Wilmington, situated between Christiana and Brandywine creeks, near their junction, is the largest and most important place in the state. It is a well-built and growing town, and contains a United States' arsenal, several banks, churches, &c. It has considerable trade, with some manufactures, and sends several ships to the whale fishery.

6. Dover, the seat of government, is situated on Jones's creek, and contains a handsome State House. New Castle, Georgetown, and Smyrna, are places of some note. Lewistown, near the entrance to Delaware Bay, is the oldest town in the state, having been originally settled by the Swedes and Finns, about the year 1630.

Map No. 11.—What state bounds Delaware on the north? Pa.—On the south and west? Md.—On the east? N.-J.—What river and Bay separate Delaware from New Jersey? De.—What Cape in the south part of the state? Hn.—Which is the most northern county? N.-Ce.—What is the population of the principal town?

Delaware. Q.—1. What is said of Delaware? 2. What are its chief produets? 3. What is said of the Chesapeake and Delaware Canal? Railroads? 4. What is said of the Delaware Break-water? 5. Deseribe Wilmington. 6. Dover. New Castle, and other towns.

— 100 —

SOUTHERN STATES.

1. The Southern States comprise Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas. The District of Columbia is also included in this section of the Union.

2. The whole region extends from the Susquehanna to the Rio Grande del Norte: its shores are washed on the east by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the south by the Gulf of Mexico.

3. On the sea-coast, the ground is low, often swampy, and sometimes sandy. In the interior, the surface is greatly diversified, and frequently hilly and mountainous. In Texas, a large portion of the country consists of prairie. The highest elevations of the Blue Ridge, and the highest in the Atlantic States, are found in North Carolina.

4. The inhabitants of the Southern States are chiefly occupied in agricultural pursuits; many of them have large plantations, with numerous slaves. Manufactures of various kinds, but chiefly of cotton, are now in successful operation in several of these states.

5. The wealthy classes are generally well-educated; possess culti-

---

Southern States. Q.—1. What do the Southern States comprise? 2. What is said of their extent? 3. Of the land on the sea-coast? In the interior? 4. How are the inhabitants chiefly occupied? What is said of manufactures? 5. Of the wealthy classes? What of the

vated minds, and refined manners; and are noted for their hospitality. Education is not so general among the poorer classes of the people as in the Middle and Eastern states.

6. Nearly the whole of the cotton crop of the United States is raised here; which, with sugar and rice, is confined to its southern section. In the northern, the principal productions are tobacco, wheat, and corn.

7. Gold abounds in nearly all the Atlantic States of this region; but is almost exclusively confined to the upper and middle portions of the country. This metal is now so extensively found, as to have become an object of national importance.

8. The gold region embraces a great extent of country, and reaches from Virginia, through North and South Carolina, and Georgia, to Alabama.

9. Branches of the United States' Mint are established at Charlotte, in North Carolina, and at Dahlonega, in Georgia, for the purpose of coining the gold found in the Southern States.

— 101 —

10. The population of the Southern States is chiefly of British origin. There are, however, many descendants of the French and Spanish colonists, particularly in Louisiana and Florida.

11. In Louisiana the French language is spoken to some extent, and the laws and some of the newspapers are published both in that tongue and in the English.

12. The inhabitants of Texas include natives of all parts of the Union, besides foreigners of different European nations, and a few Mexicans, the remnant of the former proprietors of the country.

13. The Negroes, who form about two-fifths of the population, constitute a separate class, and are mostly held in slavery. The Indians have nearly all emigrated to the Indian Territory, west of the Mississippi river.

Map No. 5.—Which is the largest division of the Southern States? Ts. —The smallest? S.-C. —Which is the most northern? Va. —

---

poorer classes? 6. What is said of the cotton crop? Of other productions? 7. Where does gold abound? What has it become? 8. What does the gold region embrace? 9. What is said of the United States' Mint?

10. What is said of the population? 11. Of Louisiana? 12. The inhabitants of Texas? 13. Of the Negroes? Of the Indians?

Southern? Fa. — Eastern? N.-C. —Western? Ts. — Which divisions border on the Atlantic Ocean? Md., Va., N.-C., S.-C., Ga., Fa. —Which border on the Gulf of Mexico? Fa., Aa., Mi., La., Ts. — What state is divided by Chesapeake Bay into two parts? Md. — The Southern States extend from latitude 42 to 24 degrees. How many degrees of latitude, then, do they comprise? They extend from longitude 1½ degrees east from Washington, to 30½ west. What amount of longitude do they include?

— 102 —

Bombardment of Fort M'Henry.

MARYLAND.

1. Maryland is more irregular in its outline than any state in the Union, and is divided by Chesapeake Bay into two sections, which are called the Eastern and Western Shores.

2. In agriculture, manufactures, and commerce, this State holds a respectable rank. Flour and tobacco are the staple productions. Of the former article, more than 500,000 barrels have been inspected in Baltimore in one year.

3. The chief mineral products are iron and coal. The

Maryland. Q.—1. How is Maryland divided? 2. What is said of the agriculture, manufactures, and commerce? 3. What are the chief

first is found in various parts of the State; the last occurs in the western part chiefly.

4. The State of Maryland was settled by a body of Roman Catholics under Lord Baltimore, whose wise and liberal government attracted emigrants from all quarters, and tended greatly to the early growth and prosperity of the colony.

5. Baltimore is on a branch of the Patapsco river, 14 miles from Chesapeake Bay, and 200 from the sea; it possesses an extensive foreign and domestic trade, and is the greatest flour market in the world. Several rail-roads connect this city with other parts of the Union.

6. The public buildings are numerous, and many of them handsome specimens of architecture. The Exchange, the Roman Catholic Cathedral, and the Battle and Washington Monuments, are among the principal. The latter is the finest structure of the kind in the country. It is a Doric column, 140 feet in height, and 20 feet in diameter at the bottom; it stands on a pedestal that is elevated 20 feet from the ground; on the top is a colossal statue of the Father of his Country. Several important rail-roads centre in Baltimore, which add greatly to its trade.

7. Fort M'Henry, a short distance below the city, commands the entrance to the harbour. It was bombarded by the British in 1814; but being bravely defended, the assailants were forced to retire.

8. Annapolis is the capital of Maryland. It is situated on Severn river, three miles from Chesapeake Bay. The State House is a handsome building, in which the old Congress held some of their sessions.

9. Frederick City, 47 miles west of Baltimore, is, in point of population, the second place in the state. Hagerstown and Williamsport are thriving towns. Easton and Cambridge are the principal places on the Eastern shore. At Emmitsburg, in the northern part of the state, is Mount St. Mary's College.

Map No. 11. — What bounds Maryland on the north? Pa. — South and west? Va. — East? De., A.-On. — What bay and river divide Maryland into two separate parts? Ce., Sa. — What river separates it from Virginia? Pc. — What rivers flow into Chesapeake Bay on the east side? Ck., Ne., Pe. — What rivers on the west side? Pt., Pc. — Which is the most eastern county? Wr. — The most western? Ay. — On what river is Havre de Grace? Cumberland? Upper Marlboro'? What is the population of Baltimore? Of Frederick City? Of Hagerstown? Annapolis? Easton? In what year was the battle of North Point fought? Of Bladensburg? Of Havre de Grace? What mountains extend through the western part of the state? Ay.

---

mineral products? 4. By whom was Maryland first settled? What is said of this government? 5. Describe Baltimore. 6. Its public buildings. The Washington Monument. 7. What is said of Fort M'Henry? 8. Describe Annapolis. 9. Frederick City, and other towns.

— 103 —

View in Washington.

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.

1. The District of Columbia is a territory under the immediate government of Congress. It comprises Washington County, and contains the cities of Washington and Georgetown.

2. Previous to the year 1846, it included Washington County on the Maryland, and Alexandria County, on the Virginia side of Potomac river. The country forming these counties, was ceded to the United States by the States of Virginia and Maryland, in 1790; but in 1846, Alexandria County and City were retroceded to Virginia by Congress.

3. The District of Columbia, called also the Federal District, was a tract of country 10 miles square, and contained 100 square miles. It now measures 10 miles in extent from north-west to south-east, and from 9 to 5 miles in a direction at right-angles with the former, and contains 64 square miles.

4. The City of Washington, the Capital of the United States, was laid out in 1791, under the superintendence of the distinguished man whose name it bears; and in the year 1800, the seat of government was changed from Philadelphia to this place. It is 110 miles from the mouth of the Potomac, and 200 from the sea.

District of Columbia. Q.—1. What is the District? What does it comprise? contain? 2. What did it once include? By what States and when was it ceded? What was done in 1846? 3. State its former dimensions. Its present. 4. What is the City of Washington? When

Smithsonian Institut

DISTRICT OF C

1. The District of Columbia, on the left bank of the Potomac R. control of Congress. It was at an area of 100 square miles, but of 60 square miles.

2. Previous to 1846, it included Washi land, and Alexandria County on the Virgi counties were ceded in 1790 to the Unite Virginia; in 1846 Alexandria County an Virginia.

3. The city of Washington is situated u miles from its mouth. It was laid out in General Washington, and in 1800 the seat c hither from Philadelphia. The plan of th sive.

4. Washington is the residence of the Pres

District of Columbia. Q.—1. What is said bia? How large was it at first? What is its p did it include previous to 1846? What was done 3. Describe the position of Washington. When

in

Roman
just and
l quarters.
r, 14 miles from
sesses an extensive
rest flour markets in
with other parts of the

numerous. Among the
n Catholic Cathedral, and
. In this city, also, are the
beautiful structures. The
a colossal statue of Washing-
ing to the height of 180 feet.
below the city, commands the
ombarded by a British fleet, in
e enemy was forced to retire.
yland. It is situated on Severn
Bay. The State-House is a hand-
tal Congress held several sessions.
esigned his commission, at the close

c, noted for its trade in coal, is in
lace in the State. Frederick and
es. Easton and Cambridge are the
shore. At Emmetsburg, in the north-
St. Mary's College.

---

s Maryland on the north? Pa. — South
e., A.-On. — What bay and river divide
arts? Ce., Sa. — What river separates it
t river flows into Chesapeake Bay on the
What rivers on the west side? Pt., Pc. —
unty? Wr. — The most western? Ay.
Grace? Cumberland? Upper Marlboro'?
of North Point fought? Of Bladensburg?
igh the western part of the State? Ay.

---

first settled? What is said of Lord Bal-
timore. 6. Its public buildings. The Wash-
hat is said of Fort M'Henry? 8. Annapolis?
9. Cumberland, and other towns?

5. Washington is the residence of the President of the United States, and the other chief executive officers of the General Government, also of the different foreign ministers sent to this country.

6. The National Congress meets here in the Capitol every year on the first Monday in December, and the Supreme Federal Court also holds its annual sessions in this city. During the sessions of Congress, Washington is thronged with visitors from all parts of the world.

7. The Capitol is a magnificent building, of white freestone, 352 feet long, in the shape of a cross, with the Representatives' Hall and Senate Chamber in the two wings, and a spacious Rotundo in the centre.

8. The Representatives' Hall is semicircular, 95 feet in length, and 60 feet in height, lighted from the top, and adorned with a colonnade of pillars beautifully polished. It is one of the finest halls in the world. The Senate Chamber is of the same shape, and 74 feet long. The Rotundo is 96 feet in diameter, and is 96 feet to the top of the dome within. It is all of marble, and the floor is handsomely paved. The whole has a most grand and imposing effect.

9. The President's House, built of white freestone, on an eminence about a mile and a half west from the Capitol, presents a very handsome appearance. It is two stories high, with a front of 180 feet, and is surrounded by extensive grounds. On each side are the offices for the State, War, Navy, and Treasury Departments.

10. Georgetown, separated from Washington by Rock Creek, is a thriving place, and has some commerce. It is the seat of Georgetown College. There is also a nunnery containing from 50 to 70 nuns.

Map No. 11.—On what river is Washington City? Pc.—On which side is it? E.—On which side is Georgetown? E.—What is the population of each of these places? What parallel of latitude touches the northern end of the District?

104

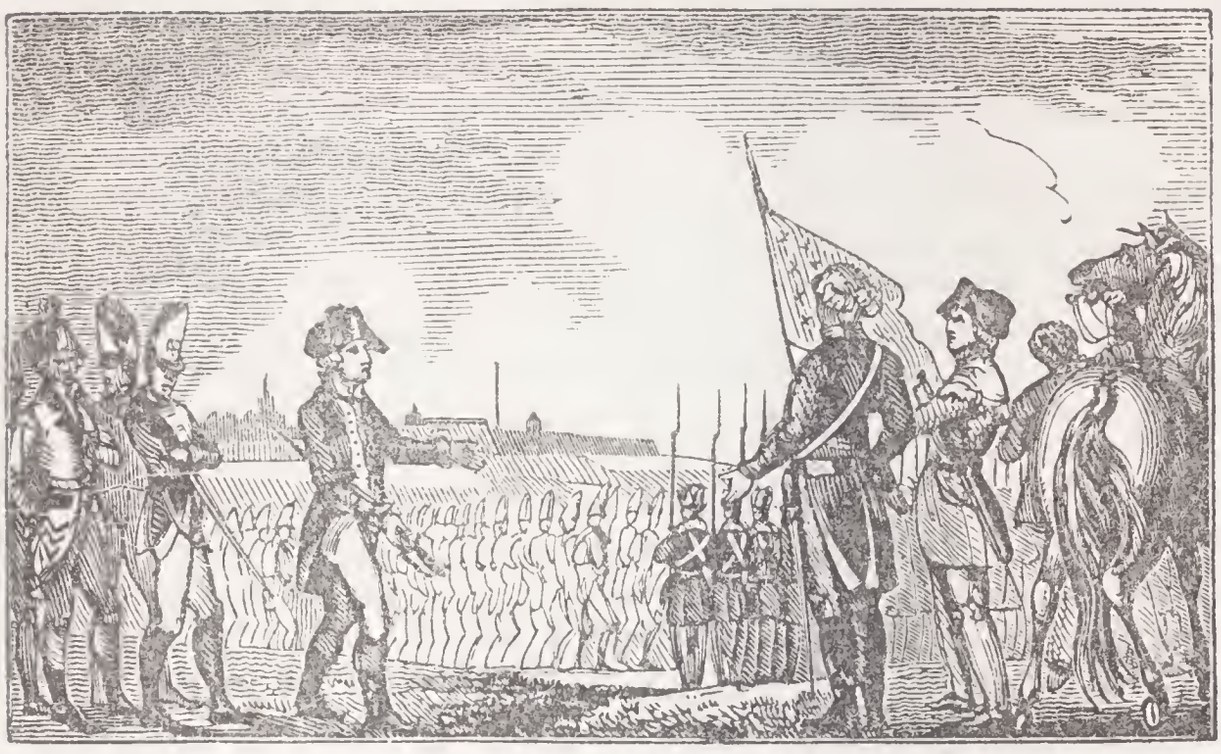
VIRGINIA.

1. VIRGINIA was, until the annexation of Texas, the largest state in the Union; it was the first settled of the English Colonies, from which circumstance it is often called "the ancient dominion."

---

was it laid out? When did Government remove? 5. Who resides in Washington? 6. What body meets there? What Court? What is said of Washington? 7. The Capitol? 8. Representatives' Hall? Senate Chamber? 9. President's House? 10. Alexandria? Georgetown?

Virginia. Q.—1. What is Virginia? What is it often called, and



Surrender of Lord Cornwallis.

2. Many eminent men were natives of Virginia; among whom, the illustrious Washington, with Jefferson, Madison, and Monroe, were all Presidents of the United States.

3. This state is traversed by the Alleghany Mountains and the Blue Ridge. The country east of the latter is generally level, while the western division is hilly and mountainous.

4. The productions of the north and the south, wheat, cotton, and tobacco, are all raised here. Indian corn is also extensively cultivated. Gold, copper, lead, iron, coal, and salt, abound. Several companies are at present employed in working the gold-mines. At Richmond, Wheeling, and other places, various manufactures are carried on.

5. The mineral-springs of Virginia are celebrated for their medicinal properties, and are much resorted to during the summer season. The principal of these are, the Warm, the Hot, and the White Sulphur springs.

6 Several important rail-roads and canals are already finished, and others are advancing towards completion. By these, transportation and travelling will be rendered easy through a large portion of the state.

7. Virginia was among the leading states during the Revolutionary war. In the year 1781, the siege and surrender of Yorktown took place—when Lord Cornwallis and his army were made prisoners of war; an event that secured the independence of the United States.

---

why? 2. Who were natives of this state? 3. What mountains are in Virginia? 4. What are the productions? What is said of gold, &c.? 5. Of the Mineral Springs? 6 Rail-roads? 7 What was Virginia?

8. The Natural Bridge over Cedar Creek, a small stream running into James river, consists of an enormous chasm, 200 feet in depth, nearly perpendicular, through which the creek passes. A huge rock is thrown across the chasm at the top, forming a natural bridge 60 feet in width, and covered with soil and trees.

Natural Bridge, Virginia.

9. Richmond, the capital of the state, stands on James river, 110 miles from its mouth. It is surrounded by a fertile country, and has a flourishing trade. Its exports are wheat, flour, tobacco, and coal.

10. Norfolk, on Elizabeth river, is the principal seaport. It has a fine harbour, and more foreign commerce than any other town in the state. At Gosport, in Portsmouth, opposite to Norfolk, is one of the most important Navy-Yards of the United States.

— 105 —

11. Petersburg, Fredericksburg, and Lynchburg, are each important towns. Wheeling, on the Ohio, is the channel of a great deal of business. Yorktown is celebrated for the surrender of Lord Cornwallis to the combined American and French armies, under General Washington. Charlottesville is the seat of the University of Virginia. Monticello, two miles from this place, is noted for having been the residence of Thomas Jefferson, President of the United States.

12. In Westmoreland county, on the Potomac, is shown the spot where Washington was born. The house, which stood about half a mile from the river, is now in ruins. A simple stone, with the inscription, "Here, on the 11th of February,* 1732, GEORGE WASHINGTON was born," designates the consecrated spot.

13. Farther up the river, 8 miles below Alexandria, is Mount Vernon, the former residence of that great and good man. Alexandria is on the Potomac 6 miles below Washington. It belonged for 46 years to the District of Columbia, but was retroceded by Congress to Virginia in 1846.

What is said of Lord Cornwallis, &c.? 8. The Natural Bridge? 9. Richmond? 10. Norfolk, &c.? 11. Petersburg, and the other towns? For what is Yorktown celebrated? Of Charlottesville? 12. Where was Washington born? 13. Where is Mount Vernon, &c.? Alexandria?

---

* Old Style, which corresponds to the 22d of February, New Style, the day celebrated as the anniversary of Washington's birth.

Map No. 5.— What bounds Virginia on the north? Pa., Md.— On the south? N.-Ca.— East? A.-On.— West? Oo., Ky.— What river separates Virginia from Ohio? Oo.— Which from Maryland? Pc. — What river and mountains from Kentucky? B.-Sy., Cd.— What two ranges of mountains extend through Virginia? Ay., B.-Re.— How long and high are the Alleghany Mountains?

Map No. 11.— What Bay separates the two eastern counties from the rest of the state? Ce.— What two Capes at the entrance of Chesapeake Bay? Cs., Hy.— In what county is Richmond? Ho.— In which is Norfolk? Nk.— Lynchburg? Cl.— Wheeling? Oo.— Petersburg? De.— In which county is Washington's birth-place? Wd.— Mount Vernon? Fx.— The University of Virginia? Ae.— In what year did Cornwallis surrender?— What four rivers flow into Chesapeake Bay? Pc., Rk., Yk., Js.— Tell the length of each.— On what river is Richmond? Js.— Petersburg? Ax.— Lynchburg? Js. —Yorktown? Yk.— Fredericksburg? Rk.— Wheeling? Oo.— Charleston? Ka.— *See Map* 9.— A vast quantity of salt is manufactured at this place. What streams form James R.? Roanoke R.? York R.? &c.

— 106 —

Making Tar.

NORTH CAROLINA.

1. North Carolina is an extensive but thinly peopled State. The country, for more than sixty miles from the coast, is a low, sandy plain, intersected with many swamps and inlets from the sea, and covered with extensive pine forests.

North Carolina. Q.— 1. What is North Carolina? Describe the

2. In the interior the surface is varied and hilly; and on the western frontier it ascends into mountains, whose summits are the most elevated of any in the Atlantic States; Black Mountain being 6476 feet in height.

3. The pine forests which occupy the lower part of the State, furnish one of the most important items of its trade, producing turpentine, tar, pitch, rosin, and lumber, in great abundance.

4. The commerce is limited for want of good harbours; and there is no large commercial town. The trade is carried on chiefly through the ports of the neighbouring states. The exports are cotton, rice, tobacco, and the produce of the forests.

5. Gold, iron, and black lead, with some copper, are the principal minerals of North Carolina. The mines of the former are extensively worked, and are even considered of great national importance.

6. A branch of the United States' Mint has been established at Charlotte, for the purpose of coining the gold found in this and the neighbouring states.

7. Raleigh,* the capital, is near the west bank of Neuse river Here was the State House, containing Canova's celebrated statue of Washington, which was destroyed by fire in 1831. A new and splendid granite building has since been erected.

8. Wilmington, on Cape Fear river, 30 miles from the sea, is the largest town in North Carolina. It carries on an active trade with the Northern and Middle States, and also with the West Indies. This place is the southern termination of an extensive line of rail-road.

9. Fayetteville, at the head of steam-boat navigation, on Cape Fear river, contains a United States' armory. Newbern is situated at the junction of Neuse and Trent rivers. Salem and Charlotte are small but thriving places. Chapel Hill, about 30 miles from Raleigh, contains the University of North Carolina.

Map No. 5. — What bounds North Carolina on the north? Va. — On the south? S.-Ca., Ga. — East? A.-On. — West? Te. — What mountains in the interior. What high mountain is in this state? 3. What occupies the lower part of the state? What do they produce? 4. What is said of the commerce? What are the exports? 5. What are the principal minerals? 6. What is established at Charlotte? 7. Which is the capital? 8. What is said of Newbern? Wilmington? 9. Fayetteville, and other towns?

---

* *Raleigh*, Raw'-le.

tains extend through the west part of North Carolina? Ay., B.-Re.—Which is the highest mountain? Bk. — How high is it? What three capes on the coast? Hs., Lt., Fr.

Map No. 11.—What two sounds in North Carolina? Ae., Po.—How long are they? What two rivers flow into Albemarle Sound? Re., Cn. — Which two into Pamlico Sound? Tr., Ne. — In what direction do the Cape Fear, Lumber, Yadkin, and Catawba rivers flow? How long are they? How far are Chowan, Roanoke, Tar, and Cape Fear rivers navigable, and for what kind of vessels? How many inhabitants have Wilmington, Newbern, Fayetteville, Raleigh, Charlotte, and Edenton? On what river is Halifax? Edenton? Tarboro'? Louisbury? In what county is the University of North Carolina? Oe. — In what year was the battle of Guilford Court-House fought?

— 107 —

Battle of Eutaw Springs.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

1. This state lies nearly in the form of a triangle between North Carolina and Georgia. It is about half the size of the latter, and is similar to the adjoining states in climate, soil, and productions.

2. Cotton and rice are the great staples of South Carolina, but corn, wheat, oats, potatoes, and tobacco, are also amongst

---

South Carolina. Q.—1. What is said of this state? How does it compare with Georgia? 2. What is the great staple *b* What are its

its products. Indigo was formerly produced in large quantities, but it is now less extensively cultivated.

3. The commerce is extensive and valuable. It consists in the export of agricultural products of the state, and of large quantities of those raised in Georgia and North Carolina.

4. The most important rail-roads are those extending from Charleston to Augusta, Georgia, and to Camden and Columbia; others are in progress also intended to connect with the emporium of the state.

5. The white residents, especially of the lower and middle sections of the state, are chiefly wealthy planters, distinguished for their intelligence and refinement.

6. South Carolina was an illustrious actor and sufferer in the war of independence. Her capital was for a considerable period in possession of the enemy; and the battles of the Cowpens, King's Mountain, and Eutaw Springs, were among the most important that took place during the revolutionary contest.

7. Charleston stands at the junction of Ashley and Cooper rivers: it is the principal city of South Carolina, and the largest in the Atlantic states south of the Potomac river. Its commerce is considerable, and is annually increasing. The citizens are noted for their hospitality.

8. Columbia, the capital of the state, is regularly laid out, with very wide streets, and is a neatly built town. Georgetown, on Winyaw Bay, Camden, on the Wateree river, and Hamburg, on the Savannah, opposite Augusta, are amongst the principal towns of the state.

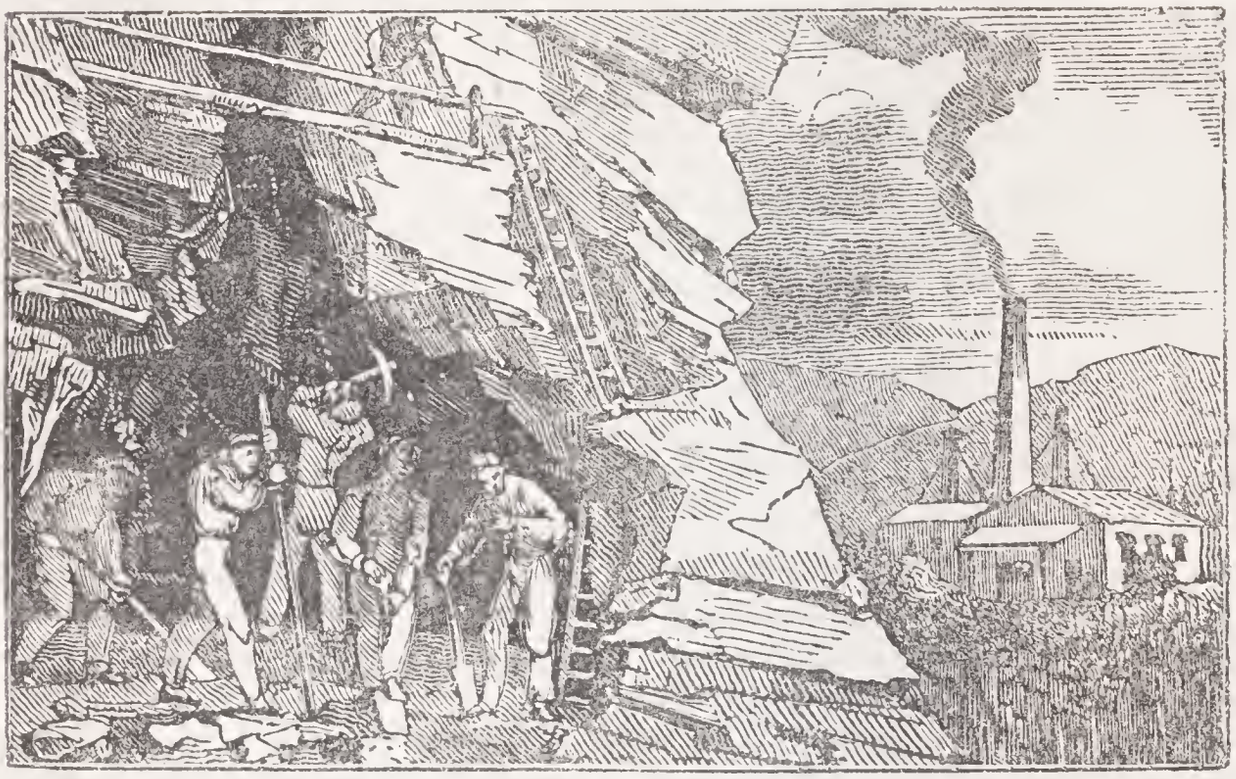
Map No. 12.—What bounds South Carolina on the north? N.-Ca.—On the west? Ga.—East? A.-On.—What river separates it from Georgia? Sh.—What rivers flow into Winyaw Bay? G.-Pe., Ww.—What river south of Winyaw Bay? Se.—What rivers form the Santee? We.,* Ce.—The Congaree? Sa., Bd.—What rivers flow into St. Helena sound? Eo., Ce.—What are the lengths of all the foregoing rivers?—How many miles, and for what kinds of vessels, are the Waccamaw, Great Pedee, Wateree, and Congaree rivers navigable?—What is the population of Charleston?—Of Columbia?—Camden and Georgetown?—In what year was the battle of Fort Moultrie fought?—Charleston?—Monk's Corner?—Gates defeated?—King's Mountain?—Cowpens?—Hobkirk's Hill and Eutaw Springs?—In what district is Charleston? Cn.—Columbia? Rd.—Camden? Kw—Which is the most northern district?—Most southern?—Eastern?—Western?—Near the junction of what rivers is Columbia?

---

other products? 3. What is said of the commerce? 4. The most important rail-roads? Others? 5. Of the white residents? 6. What was South Carolina in the war of independence? 7. Describe Charleston. 8. Columbia, &c.

* The Wateree river begins, and the Catawaba ends, at the mouth of Big Wateree Creek.

— 108 —



Gold Mining.

GEORGIA.

1. Georgia is the third in extent of the Southern States: it was the last settled of the thirteen original colonies, and is now rapidly increasing in wealth and population.

2. The great staple of Georgia is cotton, the crop of which, in 1840, exceeded 163 million pounds. The other products are corn, rice, lumber, pitch, tar, and turpentine, which are all exported to a large amount. Some tobacco is likewise raised in the northern, and sugar in the southern parts of the state.

3. The cotton produced, as in South Carolina, is of two kinds, the sea island, and upland. The former is double the value of the other, and is raised only in small quantities on the islands that lie along the sea-coast.

4. The principal mineral is gold, which is found in the northern part of the state. Iron and copper also occur. Several rail-roads are completed, and others are in progress. Cotton fabrics are manufactured at Columbus and some other places.

Georgia. Q.—1. What is said of Georgia? 2. What is the grea staple of the state? What is the amount of the annual crop? What are the other products? 3. What is said of cotton? 4. What is the

5. Savannah, on the river of the same name, and 18 miles from the sea, is the chief commercial depôt of Georgia; and is, at present, one of the most flourishing cities in the southern states. Milledgeville, the capital of the state, is situated on the Oconee river. It is a place of some trade, and contains the State House.

6. Augusta is the interior emporium of the state. It is connected with Charleston and the State of Tennessee by a series of well-constructed rail-roads; also with Savannah by the Savannah river. It is well built, and contains some handsome public edifices. A bridge 1200 feet long across the Savannah connects it with Hamburg.

7. Columbus, on the Chattahoochee river, and Macon, on the Ocmulgee, are amongst the most flourishing places in Georgia. Darien, Brunswick, and St. Mary's, on the sea-coast, are improving towns.

Map No. 12. — What bounds Georgia on the north? N.-Ca. — On the south? Fa. — East? S.-Ca., A.-On. — West? Aa. — What river separates Georgia from South Carolina? Sa. — What river separates it in part from Alabama? Cc. — What river in part from Florida? S.-Ms. — What five rivers flow into the Atlantic ocean? Sh., Oe., Aa., Sa., S.-Ms. — What rivers form the Alatamaha? Oe., Oc. — What rivers form the Apalachicola? Ce., Ft. — What is the population of Savannah? Augusta? Columbus? Macon? In what counties are these towns? Cm., Rd., Mc., Bb. — In what county is Milledgeville? Bn. — To what towns, and how far from the sea, do steam-boats ascend the Savannah? Oconee? Oemulgee? Chattahoochee? and Flint rivers? Which is the largest island? Cd. — What extensive swamp in Ware county? Oe. — When was the battle of Savannah fought?

— 109 —

FLORIDA.

1. Florida is the most southern portion of the United States. It was for nearly 200 years a Spanish province, and was ceded by Spain, in 1819, to the American government. In 1822, Florida was formed into a territory; and in 1845, was admitted into the Union as the 27th state.

2. The surface of the country is level, and not much elevated above the sea. The soil along the streams is very

---

principal mineral? What are the other minerals? What is said of rail-roads? 5. Describe Savannah, Milledgeville. 6. Augusta, &c. 7. Columbus, and the other towns.

Florida. Q. — 1. What was Florida? When was it ceded to the United States? When was it formed into a territory? When was it admitted into the Union, &c.? 2. What is said of the surface of the

fertile, and well suited to the production of cotton, rice, tobacco, sugar, and corn. Oranges, figs, dates, and pomegranates, are among its fruits.

3. But a small part of Florida is under cultivation. Many portions of it are better suited for a grazing than an agricultural district. Large herds of cattle, horses, and swine, range over its pastures.

4. Live-oak timber, so valuable in ship-building, is one of the most important products of Florida; and, with cedar logs, boards, scantling, &c., are cut to a considerable extent.

5. The Seminole Indians occupied, until lately, the Everglades, a flat, marshy district, in the southern part of the territory. From this region the savages sallied forth, committing numerous depredations upon the white inhabitants. In 1842, after a contest of several years' duration, they were nearly all removed to the Indian Territory.

6. St. Augustine, 260 miles south of Charleston, is the oldest town in the United States, and is built in the Spanish style. Its climate is delightful, and it is often resorted to by invalids in quest of health.

7. Tallahassee, the capital of Florida, is 21 miles north of St. Mark's, on Apalachee Bay. It contains the Capitol, and several churches and banks. St. Mark's, Apalachicola, and St. Joseph's, are the chief commercial places of Middle Florida. They are all thriving towns. Pensacola is important as a naval station for United States' ships of war.

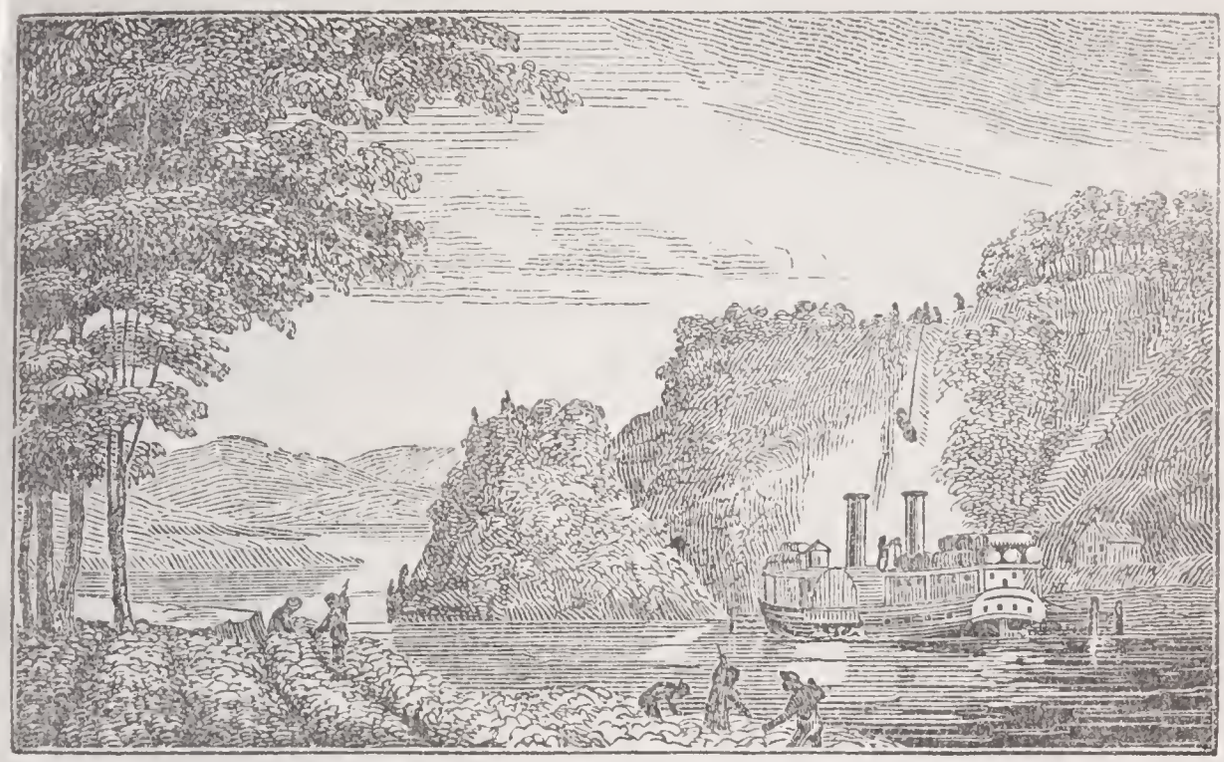
Map No. 5. — What bounds Florida on the north? Ga., Aa. — On the east? A.-On. — West and south? G.-Mo. — What Cape is on the east coast? Cl. — What Capes on the west? S.-Bs., Rs., Se. — What Bays on the west? Pa., Ae., Vr., Ta., Cm. — What are the two chief lakes? Ge., Oe.

Map No. 12.—What river separates Florida from Alabama? Po.—What from Georgia? S.-Ms.—What rivers flow into Pensacola Bay? Ea., B.-Wr., Y.-Wr. — What into Choctawhatchie Bay? Ce. — Into Apalachee Bay? Oy., Oa. — Into Vacassar Bay? Se. — What river flows into the Atlantic Ocean north of St. Augustine? S.-Js. — What into the Gulf of Mexico at Apalachicola? Aa. — Tell the lengths of the four rivers that have figures attached to them.—What is the population of Tallahassee? — St. Augustine? — Pensacola? — In what counties are these towns? Ln., S.-Jn., Ea.

---

country? Of the soil? Of its productions? 3. For what is it better suited? 4. What is cut to a considerable extent? Which are the chief articles of export? 5. What is said of the Seminole Indians? What did they commit? 6. Describe St. Augustine. 7. Tallahassee, and the other towns.

— 110 —



Steam-boat loading with cotton.

ALABAMA.

1. Alabama is remarkable for its rapid growth in population, wealth, and general prosperity. In the year 1810, its inhabitants were less than 10,000 in number; and now the State contains nearly seventy times that amount.

2. Cotton is the chief agricultural staple; in 1840 upwards of 117 million pounds were produced. Corn is the principal grain, but wheat and rice are also raised. Tobacco is cultivated in the northern, and sugar, in the southern counties.

3. Gold, iron, coal, and lime, are the principal minerals found in this state. The coal is of excellent quality, and is used both for fuel and in making gas. Manufactures are established in various places. Prattville, on the Alabama river, is noted for its cotton fabrics.

4. The various rivers which traverse both the northern and southern sections of Alabama admit of an extensive steamboat navigation, by which the valuable productions of the

---

Alabama. Q.—1. For what is Alabama remarkable? How many inhabitants were there in 1810? How many now? 2. What is the chief staple? What are the other products? 3. What is said of minerals? Coal? Manufactures? 4. For what are the rivers well adapted?

interior State are conveyed to its great commercial markets, Mobile and New Orleans.

5. The people of Alabama were greatly harassed during the late war by the depredations of the Creek and Seminole Indians; they were, however, signally defeated in several desperate engagements, of which Tohopeka was the principal.

6. Mobile, at the head of Mobile Bay, was the first settled place in the state; it is the chief depôt of its commerce. Tuscaloosa, the late capital, is a town of some trade; it contains the University of Alabama.

7. Montgomery, on the Alabama river, became in 1847 the capital of the state. Wetumpka on the Coosa, and Gainesville on the Tombigby, all in the centre of the state, are thriving towns. Florence, Tuscumbia, Decatur, and Huntsville, in the valley of the Tennessee river, are each places of some note.

Map No. 12.—What bounds Alabama on the north? Tc.—The east? Ga.—The west? Mi.—What state and gulf on the south? Fa., Mo.—What river separates Alabama from Florida? Po.—What river flows into Mobile Bay? Mc.—What two rivers form Mobile river? Ty., Aa.—What rivers form the Alabama? Ca., Ta.—What river flows through the northern part of the state? Te.—On what river is Tuscaloosa? B.-Wr.—How long is the Tombigby? Alabama? Coosa? Tallapoosa? What is the population of Mobile? Wetumpka? Huntsville? Tuscaloosa? Florence? Montgomery? In what county is Mobile? Me.—Tuscaloosa? Ta.—Florence? Le.—Huntsville? Mn.—Wetumpka? Ca.—How many miles are the following rivers navigable for steam-boats: viz. Tennessee? Tombigby? Black Warrior? Alabama? In what year was the battle of Tohopeka fought? On what river is Florence? Decatur? &c.

111

MISSISSIPPI.

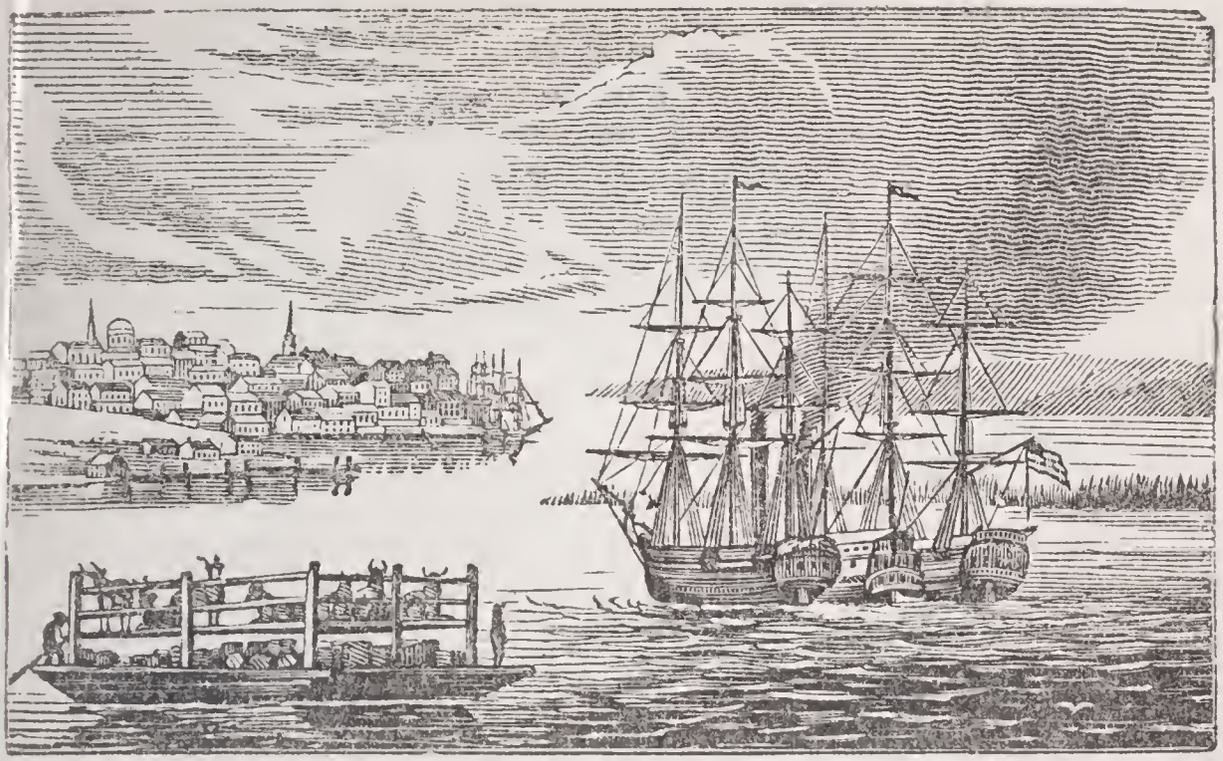
1. This state, like Alabama, is remarkable for the great increase of its population. Emigration some years ago was so extensive, that the number of the inhabitants, between the years 1830 and 1840, was very nearly trebled.

2. Cotton is the chief production of Mississippi, and it employs nearly all the industry of the people. The crop in 1840 was upwards of 193 million pounds, being the largest

---

5. By whom were the people harassed? What is said of them? 6. Describe Mobile. Tuscaloosa. 7. Montgomery. Wetumpka and other towns.

Mississippi. Q.—1. What is this state remarkable for? What has taken place since 1830? 2. What is the chief production? What



View on the Mississippi River.

of any state in the Union. Some tobacco and rice are cultivated, and Indian corn is raised to a considerable extent.

3. Some sugar has been produced in the southern counties, but the cane does not appear to thrive. Sweet potatoes, with the peach, fig, and other fruits, grow in abundance. Several important rail-roads have been projected, and some of them are completed.

4. Mississippi is now entirely under the control of a white population. The northern and central parts of the state were lately occupied by the Choctaw and Chickasaw Indians; but these have nearly all removed to the Indian Territory.

5. Jackson, on the west bank of the Pearl river, is the capital of the state. It is finely situated, and contains the State House, Penitentiary, and other public buildings.

6. Natchez is the largest and most important place in the state. It is nearly 300 miles above New Orleans; and is built principally on a high bluff, 200 feet above the surface of the Mississippi. That part of the town on the margin of the river is called Natchez; below the hill, it is chiefly a collection of stores. The upper town is regularly laid out, and has wide streets, ornamented with fine shade-trees. A great amount of cotton is shipped from this city; and its inland and river trade is extensive.

---

were formerly cultivated? Of Indian corn? 3. Of sugar? What is said of the rail-roads? 4. Of Mississippi? The northern and central parts? 5. Describe Jackson. 6. Natchez. What of its commerce?

7. Vicksburg is on the left bank of the Mississippi river, 520 miles from its mouth. It is a flourishing place, and, like Natchez, has a great trade in cotton. The town is situated on the shelving side of some hills, with the houses built in groups upon the terraces. It is connected with the capital by a rail-road.

8. Among other thriving places in the state, are Grand Gulf, on the Mississippi river, and Port Gibson, 7 miles from it, in the interior, Manchester, or Yazoo city, on the Yazoo, Grenada, on the Yalabusha, and Aberdeen and Columbus, on the Tombigby river. The latter is the north-eastern emporium of the state.

Map No. 12.—What state bounds Mississippi on the north? Te.—On the south? La., G.-Mo.—On the east? Aa.—On the west? As., La.—What river separates it from Louisiana and Arkansas? Mi.—On what river is Natchez? Jackson? Grand Gulf? Vicksburg? Manchester, or Yazoo city? Grenada? Columbus?—What is the population of each of these towns?—How many miles from the sea do steam-boats ascend the Tombigby? Tallahatchie? Yalabusha? Big Black? Pearl?—How far is Vicksburg from the sea? What kind of vessels ascend to it? In what county is Natchez? As.—Vicksburg? Wn.—Jackson? Hs.—Columbus? Ls.—Grand Gulf? Ce.

112

LOUISIANA.

1. The territory comprising this state, together with the vast region lying west of the Mississippi river, was formerly all called Louisiana, and was purchased from France by the United States' Government in 1803.

2. The country bordering the Mississippi, in this state, is generally lower than the surface of the water, and a large portion of it is protected by levées, or embankments of earth, nearly 200 miles along the shores of the river.

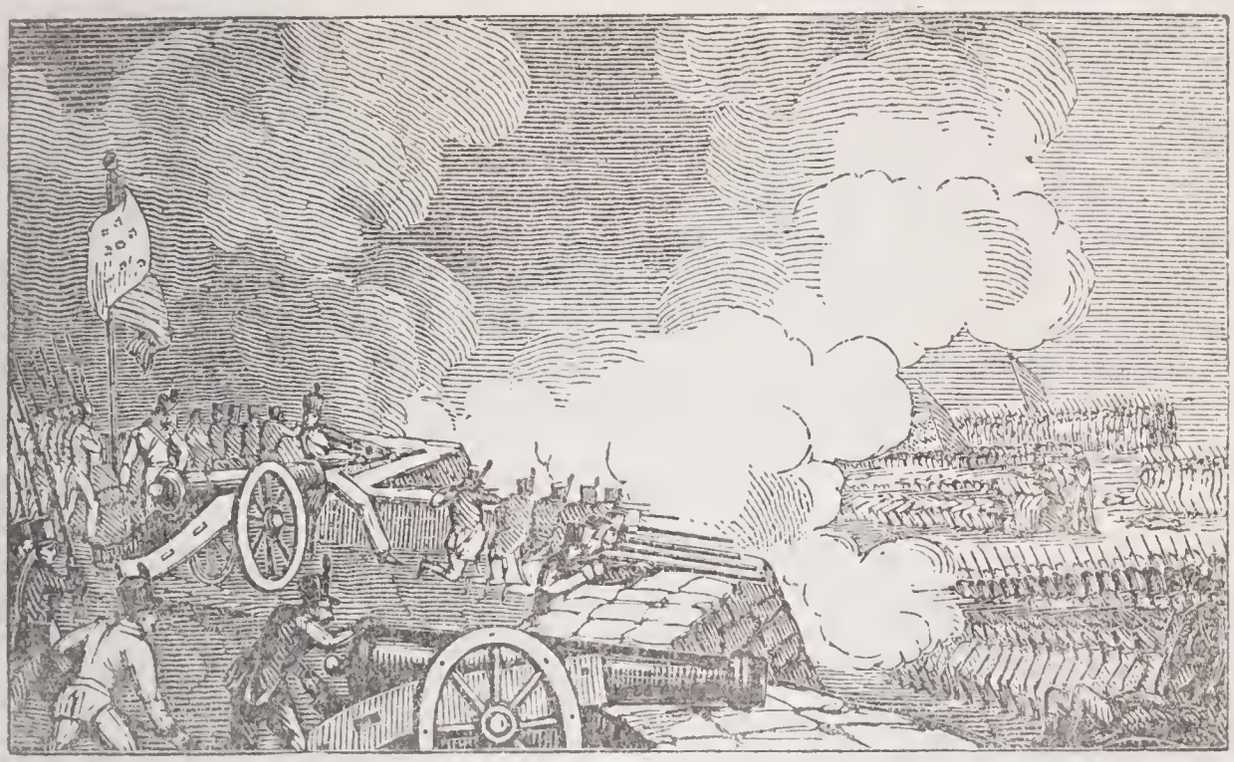
3. The great staples of Louisiana are sugar and cotton, but rice, corn, and tobacco, are also cultivated. A vast amount of capital is invested in the sugar business, in lands, slaves, &c., and the produce of that article has increased tenfold within twenty years; in 1845 it amounted to about 207 million pounds.

4. During the late war, a powerful British army invaded this state;

---

of Vicksburg? How are ships brought up to this place? 8. The other towns?

Louisiana. Q.—1. What is said of the territory comprising this state? When was it purchased? 2. What is said of the country? 3. What are the great staples? 4. What took place during the late



Battle of New Orleans.

but they were totally defeated by the American army, under General Jackson, January 8th, 1815, and left the country shortly afterwards.

5. New Orleans, the southern emporium of the Union, is on the left bank of the Mississippi river, about 100 miles from its mouth. The inland and foreign trade of this city is very great. From 1500 to 2000 flat-boats, 50 to 60 steam-boats, and a forest of masts of sea vessels, may be seen nearly always lying along its levée.

6. The produce that arrives at New Orleans annually from the extensive regions watered by the Mississippi river and its tributary streams, is estimated to reach in value from fifty millions to seventy-five millions of dollars; among which, cotton, flour, sugar, tobacco, pork, hemp, and lead, are the principal staples.

7. The city is built on level ground, and is several feet below the surface of the river at high water. The levée in front of the town is from 20 to 40 feet wide. New Orleans contains a number of public buildings, some of which are splendid structures.

8. Baton Rouge, the new capital of Louisiana, is on the left bank of the Mississippi, 140 miles above New Orleans. It is built chiefly on a plain, elevated 30 feet above the river. Among the public buildings are the Court House, State Penitentiary, College, Land Office, &c. Just above the town is a barracks for United States troops.

9. The other chief towns are Donaldsonville, Plaquemine, Bayou Sara, and St. Francisville, on the Mississippi river, and Alexandria, Natchitoches, and Shreveport, on Red river.

---

war? When were they defeated? 5. Describe New Orleans. 6. What of the produce? 7. How is the city built? 8. Baton Rouge. 9. The other towns.

Map No. 12.—By what is Louisiana bounded on the north? As., Mi. — On the east? Mi. — South? G.-Mo. — West? Ts. — What rivers separate Louisiana from Mississippi? Mi., Pl. — What river from Texas? Se. — What lakes in the eastern part of the state? Pn., Be. — What two in the southern part? Cu., Mu. — How long is the Mississippi? Red river? Washita? Sabine? Calcasiu? Bayou Macon? Some rivers are termed Bayous in Louisiana. What is the population of New Orleans? Donaldsonville? Baton Rouge? Alexandria? Natchitoches? In what parishes are these situated? N.-Os., An., E.-B.-Re., Rs., Ns.—When was the battle of New Orleans fought?

113

View on the Prairies of Texas — Catching wild horses.

TEXAS.

1. The state of Texas, the 28th in number, was annexed to the United States, by the consent of the Legislatures of both republics, in the year 1845. It was formerly a Mexican State, but the people, in 1836, achieved their independence by defeating Santa Anna, the Mexican President, at the battle of San Jacinto.

2. Texas extends from the Gulf of Mexico north to Red river, and the 42° of north latitude, and west from the Sabine river to the Rio Grande. It is about seven times larger than the state of Pennsylvania.

Texas. Q. — 1. What is said of the state of Texas? What was it formerly? What occurred in 1836? 2. How far does Texas extend?

3. The climate is mild and healthful. The face of the country consists chiefly of vast prairies, the soil of which is exceedingly fertile, and produces cotton, tobacco, sugar, rice, wheat, &c. Silver is reported to exist, as well as lead, copper, coal, and salt; but the mineral products of this country are not yet explored.

4. Texas is one of the finest countries in the world for raising cattle. Pasturage being very plentiful, they increase rapidly, and great numbers of them are driven every year into the adjacent States, for sale.

5. Vast herds of buffalo, deer, and mustangs or wild horses, roam over the prairies of the interior. Numbers of the latter are taken with a leather thong or rope, with a running noose at the end of it, and being properly broke are used, either as draught or saddle horses.

6. The inhabitants are chiefly Anglo-Americans; natives, for the most part, of the earlier settled Southern States. There are also a number of European immigrants, negroes, and a few Mexicans. The warlike Apache and Comanche Indians hover around and sometimes plunder the inland settlements.

7. Austin, the capital of Texas, is on the Colorado river, about 200 miles from the sea. The other principal towns are Houston, Brazoria, Matagorda, San Felipe, Nacogdoches, San Augustine, and Galveston. The latter is on Galveston Island. It is the chief sea-port of Texas.

8. The commerce of Texas already employs a number of trading vessels between the principal towns and New Orleans; and foreign vessels carry the products of the state to various European ports.

Map No. 13.—What bounds Texas on the North? I.-Ty. — South? G.-Mo. — East? La., I.-Ty. — West? Mo. — What river forms the north boundary? Rd. — East? Se. — West? R. G. — Which are the other chief rivers of Texas? Co., Bs., Ty., Ns. — How long are they? From what lake does the Brazos river flow? Se. — On what river is Austin? Co. — Into what bay does it flow? Ma. — How far do steam-boats ascend the Brazos river? When, and where, was the battle of San Jacinto? Point out the Cross Timbers. This is a remarkable forest in the midst of the prairies: it extends northward from the Brazos river for a distance of a hundred miles. What Indian tribes are there in Texas? As., Cs., Ls., Ks.

How does it compare with Pennsylvania? 3. What is said of the climate? Face of the country? Soil? Products? Silver, &c.? 4. What is Texas? 5. What is said of Buffalo, &c.? How are they taken? 6. What are the inhabitants? 7. What is said of the towns in Texas? 8. Of the commerce?

— 114 —

WESTERN STATES.

1. The western States comprise Ohio, Kentucky, Tennessee, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Missouri, Arkansas, Wisconsin and Iowa, together with the territories of Oregon, Upper California, New Mexico, Missouri, Minnesota, and the Indian Territory.

2. From the great extent of this region, its climate possesses considerable variety of temperature; the winters are more variable, and the quantity of snow is less than in the same parallels in the Atlantic States.

3. The most striking features of this vast country are its numerous rivers, towering forests, and extensive prairies. The latter are wide-spreading plains, stretching farther than the eye can reach, destitute, for the most part, of trees, and covered with tall grass and flowering shrubs.

4. That part of this region lying between the Rocky and Alleghany Mountains is often called the Mississippi Valley,

---

Western States. **Q.** — 1. What do the Western States comprise? 2. What is said of the climate? The winters? 3. The most striking features? What are prairies? 4. What is part of this region called?

from its being chiefly watered by that great river, and its tributary streams. These afford immense facilities for internal commerce, and, in fact, constitute it one of the best watered districts on the face of the globe.

5. There are, at present, on the western waters about 400 steam-boats, many hundreds of arks or flat-boats, besides a multitude of smaller craft constantly engaged in the commerce of the country, and immense quantities of produce of various kinds are annually conveyed by them to New Orleans.

6. Lead, iron, coal, salt, and lime, abound in the Western States, and, probably, no region of equal extent in the world exhibits such a combination of mineral wealth and fertility of soil, united with such rare facilities of transportation.

7. Cotton and tobacco are produced in the southern districts, while wheat, Indian corn, hemp, oats, and barley, are extensively cultivated in the other parts. Cattle, hogs, and horses, are raised in abundance, and constitute an important part of the wealth of the people of these states.

8. A considerable portion of the western country has been recently settled; but the cheapness of land, the fertility of the soil, and the general character of the climate, are causing a tide of emigration to flow, which is filling up the country with unexampled rapidity.

9. A laudable zeal is manifested in the cause of education. The number of common schools is rapidly increasing, while colleges and the higher seminaries of learning are also multiplying.

10. The population of the Western States and Territories amounts to about seven millions, of which the negro slaves constitute probably one-eleventh part. Slavery is prevalent in Tennessee, Kentucky, Missouri, and Arkansas, but does not exist in the other states and territories.

— 115 —

11. Nearly all the Indians in the United States are found within the limits of this quarter of the Union. Some of these

---

Why? What do they afford? 5. What is said of steam-boats, arks, &c.? What is conveyed by them? 6. What is said of lead, iron, &c.? 7. What is produced in the southern districts? In other parts? What of cattle, &c.? 8. What has been recently settled? What is filling up the country? 9. What is manifested? Of common schools, colleges, &c.? 10. Of the population? Where is slavery prevalent? 11. What is said of the Indians? What is narrowing their bounda

are partially civilized, but a considerable number still remain unchanged; and while the settlements, arts, and improvements of white men are narrowing their boundaries, they still retain their original savage character and condition.

Indians viewing the improvements of white men.

12. The Creeks, Choctaws, Cherokees, and other tribes now resident in the Indian Territory, are under the protection of the General Government, and increase steadily in population and prosperity: while the Sioux, Riccarees, Black Feet, and other rude, roving bands of the Upper Missouri, are decreasing rapidly in number and importance.

13. The small-pox, so fatal to the Indians, and the intemperate use of ardent spirits, have swept them off by thousands; and tribes once numerous and powerful are now reduced to a few individuals.

Map No. 5.—Which is the largest Western State? Mi.—The smallest? Ia.—The most northern? Mn.—Southern? As.—Eastern? Oo.—Western? Mi.—Which is the largest western territory? U. Ca. The three northernmost? On. Mi. Ma. The most eastern? Ma. Most southern? U. Ca.—The western states and territories extend from latitude 33 to 49 degrees. How much latitude do they include? They extend from about 4 degrees of longitude to 47 degrees west from Washington. How much longitude do they include? What states have the Mississippi river for their west-

---

ries? What do they still retain? 12. What of the Creeks, Choctaws, &c.? The Sioux, Riccarees, &c.? 13. What is said of the small-pox?

ern boundary? Te., Ky., Is., Wn.—Which have the Mississippi for their eastern boundary? As., Mi., Ia.—Which states have the Ohio for their southern boundary? Oo., Ia., Is.—What state has the Ohio for its northern boundary? Ky.—Which has the Ohio for its western boundary? Va.—How many miles by the scale from the mouth of Columbia river eastward to the Rocky Mountains? How many miles from the Rocky Mountains to Lake Michigan, measured on the parallel of 44 degrees? How many miles from the head of the Arkansas to the head of the Alleghany river? This is about the greatest extent that can be measured through the centre of the Mississippi valley east and west. How far from the head to the mouth of the Mississippi river in a straight line? How far from the mouth of the Ohio river to the northern boundary of Illinois? and from the same point to the east boundary of Kentucky? The states of Missouri and Indiana are about the same extent from north to south. What is the number of miles?

116

OHIO.

1. This flourishing state, though settled so lately as the year 1789, already ranks next to Pennsylvania in the number of its inhabitants; and its increase in wealth and importance is unequalled in the history of any other country.

2. The southern section of Ohio is uneven and hilly; the

Ohio. Q.—1. When was this state settled? How does it rank? 2. What is said of it? How is it intersected? 3. What are the

remainder is generally level, with extensive prairies in many parts. The whole state is intersected with numerous rivers, which afford a vast amount of water-power for mills, manufactories, &c.

3. The staple products are wheat and corn; but rye, oats, buckwheat, and tobacco, are cultivated. Orchards flourish here, and produce the finest apples, and all the fruits of the Western States, in perfection. Horses, cattle, and hogs, are abundant, and thousands are every year driven to the eastern markets.

4. Iron and coal are found in vast quantities, and salt springs are numerous. Manufactures are carried to a greater extent than in any other western state. They consist of cotton and woollen goods, with flour, paper, and machinery.

5. The Ohio state canals were projected about the year 1823; they are for the most part in successful operation. The influence of these works has, in many cases, enhanced four-fold the value of private property in the vicinity, besides increasing greatly the commerce of the state. An important railroad from Cincinnati to Sandusky is completed, and others are in progress.

6. Columbus, the capital of the state, is on the left bank of the Scioto river, 100 miles from the Ohio, and is situated in a rich and beautiful district. It is regularly laid out, and contains several public buildings, churches, &c.

7. Cincinnati is on the right bank of the Ohio river, 520 miles from its mouth. The growth of this city has been exceedingly rapid, and has kept pace with the increase of the state. It is regularly laid out: many of its private dwellings are elegant, its public edifices are numerous, and some of them are handsome specimens of architecture.

8. This city carries on an immense trade both up and down the Ohio river, and the Miami canal, which joins the former at this place. Pork is one of the chief articles of trade; besides which, wheat, flour, whiskey, and a great variety of manufactured articles, are exported.

9. Zanesville is an important place, and is noted for its flour-mills and various manufacturing establishments. Cleveland is the principal port on Lake Erie, and is a place of extensive business. Steubenville, Dayton, Portsmouth, Toledo, and Sandusky, are all thriving and flourishing towns.

---

staple products? What is said of horses, &c.? 4. Iron and coal? Manufactures? 5. State canals? What has been their influence? Other canals and rail-roads? 6. Describe Columbus. 7. Cincinnati. How is it laid out? 8. What does it carry on? What are exported? 9. Describe Zanesville. Cleveland. Steubenville, and the other towns.

Map No. 14. — What bounds Ohio on the north? Mn., L.-Ee. — South? Ky., Va. — East? Va., Pa. — West? Ia. — What river forms its south boundary? Oo. — What rivers flow into Lake Erie? Me., Sy., Hn., Ca. — Which flow into the Ohio river? Mi., L.-Mi., So., Mm. — What is the population of Cincinnati? Zanesville? Cleveland? Steubenville? Columbus? Chillicothe? Dayton? Portsmouth? In what counties are these places? Hn., Mm., Ca., Jn., Fn., Rs., My., So. — How long is the Ohio? Maumee? Miami? Scioto? Muskingum? What road extends through the state from east to west? Nl. — On what rivers are Zanesville, Dayton, and the other chief towns?

— 117 —

Early Settlers attacked by Indians.

KENTUCKY.

1. This state was first settled by the celebrated Daniel Boone and others, in 1769. It formed for a time a part of Virginia, but in 1790 a separation took place, and two years afterwards Kentucky was admitted into the Union.

2. The surface in the eastern section of the state is hilly and undulating, but in the western it is level, occasionally extending into prairies. Much of the soil of Kentucky is celebrated for its fertility.

3. The principal products are Indian corn, wheat, oats,

Kentucky. Q. — 1. By whom was this state settled? What did it form? What took place? 2. What is said of the surface? Of the

hemp, and tobacco. Cattle, horses, and hogs, are raised to a great extent, and numbers are annually driven into the neighbouring states.

4. Salt springs or licks are numerous, from which large quantities of salt are made. Great numbers of the bones of the mammoth have also been found in some of them.

5. There are several extensive caves found in this state that are great curiosities, of which the Mammoth Cave is the most remarkable, having been explored to a distance of several miles from its mouth. The earth in some of these caves is strongly impregnated with nitre or saltpetre, and considerable quantities of that article were made from it during the late war.

6. Until the year 1795 the people suffered greatly from Indian hostilities; many had fallen in battle in their fields or houses, by the hands of their savage foes; but since that period, Kentucky has advanced rapidly in population, wealth, and importance.

7. Frankfort, the capital of the state, stands on the right bank of the Kentucky river, 70 miles from its mouth. Lexington, the oldest town in the state, is 25 miles east of Frankfort, in the midst of a well-cultivated district. It is the seat of Transylvania University.

8. Louisville, the principal city of Kentucky, is on the left bank of the Ohio, 370 miles from its mouth. It carries on an extensive trade. Many thousands of flat-boats arrive here, yearly, from all parts of the upper Ohio, and steam-boats are daily arriving and departing in every direction. The town is well built, and regularly laid out; with spacious, straight, and well-paved streets, running parallel with the river, intersected by others meeting them at right angles. Louisville was founded in the year 1780; in 1828, it was incorporated as a city.

9. Maysville is a flourishing commercial place. Newport and Covington, both opposite Cincinnati, are thriving towns, and contain some manufactures of cotton-bagging. These towns are all on the Ohio river.

Map No. 14. — What states bound Kentucky on the north? Is., Ia., Oo. — South? Te. — East? Va. — West? Mi., As. — What river forms its northern boundary? Oo. — Its western? Mi. — What river and mountains are its eastern boundary? B.-Sy., Cd. — Which are the principal rivers in the state? Te., Cd., Gn., Ky., Lg. — Tell the lengths of all these. On what river is Frankfort? Louisville? Maysville? Covington? What is the population of each of these towns? Of Lexington? Which is the most northern county? Be. Eastern? Fd. — Western? Hn.

---

soil? 3. The principal products? Cattle, &c.? 4. Of salt springs? What has been found in some of them? 5. What is said of the caves? Of the earth in them? 6. Of the people? 7. Describe Frankfort, Lexington. 8. Louisville. 9. Maysville, and other towns.

— 118 —

Tennessee Iron Works—View of the Cumberland Mountains.

TENNESSEE.

1. The country comprising the state of Tennessee, was originally a part of North Carolina. In 1790, that state ceded it to the General Government. In the same year it was organized into the Territory south-west of the Ohio river; and in 1796 became an independent state.

2. West Tennessee lies between the Mississippi and Tennessee rivers. Middle Tennessee extends eastward to the Cumberland mountains; and East Tennessee is situated between the latter and the eastern limits of the state.

3. The climate is mild, and salubrious, and the soil generally fertile. Agriculture is the chief employment. A greater amount of Indian corn is raised here than in any other state in the Union. Cotton and tobacco are extensively cultivated; besides wheat, rye, hemp, &c.

4. The mountains contain numerous caverns, which abound in nitrous earth, from which saltpetre is made. Iron, gold, coal, and salt,

---

Tennessee. Q. — 1. What was Tennessee originally? When did it become an independent state? 2. Where is West Tennessee? Middle Tennessee? East Tennessee? 3. What is said of the climate? Of agriculture? 4. What do the mountains contain? What are the

are the chief minerals. The iron made in the state gives employment to a number of furnaces, rolling-mills, and nail-works.

5. Nashville, the capital, is on the left bank of Cumberland river, 200 miles from its mouth: it is situated in a fertile and picturesque district; and contains an elegant State House recently erected, besides some other fine buildings.

6. Memphis is the second town in the state: it stands on a fine bluff on the east bank of the Mississippi river, and bids fair to become an important town. A United States Navy Yard is established here.

7. Knoxville, on the Holston river, was the first seat of government of Tennessee. Franklin and Columbia, both south of Nashville, Murfreesboro', south-east of the same, and Bolivar, on the Hatchee river, are among the most flourishing towns in Tennessee.

Map No. 12. — What state bounds Tennessee on the north? Ky. — On the south? Mi., Aa., Ga. — East? N.-Ca. — West? As. — What river separates this state from Arkansas? Mi. — Which are the two principal rivers? Te., Cd. — Name the head branches of the Tennessee? Pl., Ch., Hn., F.-Bd. — Tell how long all these rivers are? How many miles from the sea do steam-boats navigate the Hatchee, Cumberland, and Holston rivers? To what towns do they ascend? Br., Co., Ke. — What mountains separate Tennessee from North Carolina? Ay. — The Alleghany Mts., in this part, are distinguished by the local names of Stone Mt., Smoky Mt., &c. — What mountains between the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers? Cd. — How high are they? What is the population of Nashville? Memphis? Knoxville? Columbia? In what counties are each of these towns? Dn., Sy., Kx., My.

— 119 —

MICHIGAN.

1. This state comprises two large peninsulas, one of which is situated between Lakes Huron and Michigan, and the other between Lakes Superior and Michigan.

2. The former contains the chief part of the population. The latter, though thinly inhabited, is noted for its valuable copper-mines, which lie along the southern shore of lake Superior.

3. The settled part of Michigan is level, and fertile. Large crops of wheat, corn, oats, and rye, are obtained; while apples, pears, and other fruits, grow in abundance.

4. The great lakes by which Michigan is surrounded, are

---

chief minerals? What is said of iron? 5. Describe Nashville. 6. Memphis. 7. Knoxville, and the other towns.

Michigan. Q. — 1. What does this state comprise? How are they situated? 2. What does the former contain? The latter? 3. What is said of the settled part? What are obtained? 4. How is Michigan

Perry's Victory.

navigable by vessels of the largest size, and even naval battles have been fought on them. Perry's victory was gained within the limits of this state, September, 1813.

5. Numerous steam-boats and other craft are employed in the trade of the country, and in conveying emigrants from the east to the west. The lakes abound in lake trout, and other excellent fish, of which large quantities are taken and cured.

6. Detroit, formerly the capital, and the largest town in the state, is on the river of the same name; it is admirably situated for commerce, of which its share is already extensive. The city is regularly laid out, and contains a number of handsome public buildings.

7. Lansing, the new capital of Michigan, is pleasantly situated in the northwest part of Ingham county, near the confluence of Grand and Cedar rivers, and nearly midway between Lake Michigan and St. Clair river. It is laid out in a fertile and improving district.

8. Monroe city, near the mouth of the river Raisin, is an important town. Mackinaw, on an island at the entrance to Lake Michigan, and St. Mary's, at Fort Brady, are the most northern settlements in the state. Mount Clemens, Tecumseh, and Ann-Arbour, in the eastern, and Niles and St. Joseph, in the western part of the state, are flourishing towns.

Map No. 5.—What lake bounds Michigan on the north? Sr.—On the east? Hn.—West? Mn.—What states on the south? Ia., Oo.—What rivers separate Michigan from Wisconsin? Ml., Me.—What country east of Michigan? C.-Wt.—What state on the west? Wn.—Where is Mackinaw? Fort Brady?

---

surrounded? What has taken place on them? 5. What is said of steam-boats, &c.? The lakes? 6. Describe Detroit. 7. Lansing 8. Monroe city, Mackinaw, &c. Mount Clemens, and other towns.

Map No. 14.—What lake lies between Lakes Huron and Erie? S.-Cr.—What river unites it to Lake Huron? S.-Cr.—Which to Lake Erie? Dt.—What is the population of Detroit? Monroe? Niles? To what place on the St. Joseph's river do steam-boats ascend? How far from the sea is it? On what river is Grand Haven? Palmer? Saginaw.

120

Battle of Tippecanoe.

INDIANA.

1. Indiana is the smallest in extent of the Western States; it is similar to Ohio in soil and surface, but contains a larger proportion of prairie land.

2. The labour of the farmer is here amply repaid with luxuriant crops of Indian corn, wheat, rye, and oats, which, with beef, pork, &c., are the chief articles of exportation.

3. The mineral resources of Indiana have been but little attended to; but coal, iron, lime, and salt, are known to abound, and Epsom salts are found in a cave near Corydon.

4. An extensive system of canals and rail-roads has been adopted by this state, which, when completed, will be of immense advantage to the inhabitants.

5. The people of Indiana were greatly harassed by the Indians

Indiana. Q.—1. What is Indiana? In what is it similar to Ohio? 2. How is the farmer repaid? 3. What are the minerals? 4. What of canals and rail-roads? 5. By whom were the people harassed?

until the year 1811, when General Harrison defeated the Shawanese Prophet, after a gallant contest, near the mouth of the Tippecanoe river.

6. Indianapolis, the capital of the state, stands on a fine plain near the White river, and is laid out with much taste and regularity. It contains several handsome public buildings.

7. New Albany, on the Ohio river, is the largest town in the state: it carries on a considerable trade. Madison and Jeffersonville, also on the Ohio, are flourishing towns. Vevay is settled by a colony of industrious Swiss, who cultivate extensive vineyards, and make considerable quantities of excellent wine.

8. Vincennes is the oldest town in Indiana. New Harmony, Terre Haute, Lafayette, and Logansport, on the Wabash river, are all thriving towns. Michigan City, at the head of Lake Michigan, South Bend, on the St. Joseph's, and Fort Wayne, on the Maumee river, are the principal places in the north part of the state.

Map No. 14. — What state on the north? Mn. — On the south? Ky. — East? Oo. — West? Is. — Which river on the south? Oo. — On the west? Wh. — What river flows into Lake Erie? Me. — What rivers flow into the Wabash? El., Se., My., Te., We. — How long are the foregoing rivers? How far from the sea do steam-boats navigate the Wabash? East fork of White river? What is the population of New Albany? Madison? Rushville? Indianapolis? Vincennes? Terre Haute? Lafayette? Logansport? In what counties are all these towns? Fd., Jn., Rh., Mn., Kx., Vo., Te., Cs. — When was the battle of Tippecanoe fought? On what rivers are the chief towns?

121

ILLINOIS.

1. Illinois is one of the most fertile states in the Union: it consists chiefly of rich and extensive prairies, and is watered by a number of beautiful streams, of which, the Illinois, and some others, are navigated by steam-boats.

2. Agriculture is the chief and most profitable employment, The principal products are Indian corn, wheat, rye, hemp, and tobacco. Cattle, horses, and swine abound, and are raised on the fertile prairies with but little trouble.

3. The chief minerals are lead and coal. The first is the most

---

6. Describe Indianapolis. 7. New Albany. Madison. 8. Vincennes, and the other towns.

Illinois. Q — 1. What is Illinois? Of what does it consist? 2. What is said of agriculture? Cattle, &c.? 3. Of minerals? The

Illinois College in the distance.

abundant. The lead-mines around Galena, with those of the adjoining Territory of Wisconsin, are among the richest in the world, and cover a region of country hundreds of square miles in extent.

4. The canal to connect Lake Michigan with the Illinois river has been recently completed, and is an important means of communication between the eastern and western parts of the Union.

5. Chicago, near the head of Lake Michigan, is the most important place in Illinois. It has become, within a few years, the centre of a large and growing trade. Numerous steam-boats, ships, brigs, and other vessels, are constantly arriving at, and departing from, its wharves.

6. Springfield, the capital, is very near the centre of the state, and not far from the southern bank of the Sangamon river. It is a flourishing town, and is situated in one of the most fertile districts of Illinois.

7. Peoria, Beardstown, and Naples, on the Illinois river, Quincy and Alton, onthe Mississippi, Galena, in the northern part of the state, and Jacksonville, near its centre, are thriving places. In the vicinity of the latter is Illinois College, the principal literary institution in the state. Nauvoo, formerly the chief settlement of the Mormons, is on the east bank of the Mississippi river, 200 miles above St. Louis.

Map No. 14.—What bounds Illinois on the north? Wn.—On the south? Ky.—East?—Ia.—West? Mi., Ia.—What river on the west? Mi.—On the south? Oo.—On the east? Wh.—

---

lead-mines? 4. Michigan &c. Canal? 5. Describe Chicago. 6. Springfield. 7. Peoria, Beardstown, &c. Quincy, Alton, Galena &c.

What rivers flow into the Mississippi? Rk., Is., Ka.—What rivers into the Illinois? Ke., D.-Ps., Fx., Vn., Mw., Sn., Sn.—What rivers flow into the Wabash? Vn., Es., L.-Wh.—How long is each of the foregoing rivers? What lake on the north-east? Mn.—How many inhabitants has Chicago? Galena? Peoria? Quincy? Springfield? Jacksonville? Alton? In what counties are these towns? Ck., Js., Pa., As., Sn., Mn., Mn.—How far from the sea do steam-boats ascend the Illinois? Rock? and Sangamon rivers? On what lake is Chicago?

— 122 —

MISSOURI.*

1. Missouri is the third state for extent in the Union. The face of the country is diversified with hills, plains, and prairies, of which the latter predominate.

2. Indian corn, wheat, oats, hemp, and tobacco, are largely cultivated, with some cotton in the southern part of the state. This is an admirable grazing country, and vast herds of horses, cattle, and hogs, are raised in it.

3. Missouri is rich in minerals: the lead-mines have been worked for more than 100 years, and produced, in 1840, more than five million pounds of the metal.

4. The Pilot Knob and the Iron Mountain are immense masses of nearly pure iron, and surpass every thing of the kind found elsewhere. Copper, zinc, and coal, also abound, and salt is made to some extent.

5. There is a considerable trade carried on across the prairies between this state and Santa Fé, in New Mexico. The traders form caravans of numerous individuals, with many horses and wagons. They carry various articles of merchandise, and being sometimes attacked by Indians, defend themselves with their rifles.

6. Jefferson city, the capital, is on the south side of the Missouri, 150 miles from its mouth; here are the State House and Penitentiary.

7. St. Louis is on the west bank of the Mississippi, 1200 miles from the sea, and is the largest town in Missouri. It is favourably situated for trade, and has an extensive commerce. Numerous steam-boats are constantly departing for, and arriving from, nearly all parts of the Mississippi valley. Among the public buildings are the Cathedral, a number of churches, the Hospital, Orphan Asylum, Convent of the Sacred Heart, City Hall, Theatre, &c. Jefferson Barracks, 5 miles

Missouri Q.—1. What is Missouri? What is said of the country? 2. What are cultivated? Raised? 3. What of the minerals? 4. Describe Pilot Knob and the Iron Mountain. 5. What trade, &c.?

* *Missouri*, Mis-soo'-re.

below St. Louis, is the head-quarters of the western division of the United States army.

8. St. Charles, Franklin, Booneville,* and Lexington, are all on the Missouri river. From Independence, a small town in the western part of the state, the Santa Fé traders usually depart for their journey across the prairies. Herculaneum, New Madrid, St. Genevieve, and Cape Girardeau, are on the Mississippi. At Herculaneum, large quantities of shot are made. Columbia is the seat of the University of Missouri.

Map No. 14.—What state on the North? Ia.—Territory west? I. Ty.—What states on the east? Is., Ky.—South? As.—What river on the east? Mi.—On the west, and in the centre? Mi.—What rivers flow into the Missouri? Pe., Gd., Cn., Oe., Ge.—Into the Mississippi? St., Mi., Mc.—What rivers flow into Arkansas? W.-Wr., B.-Bk., Ct. Wc.—What mines in Washington county? Ld.—What mountains? In., P.-Kb.—How many inhabitants has St. Louis? St. Charles? Palmyra? In what counties are these towns? In which is Jefferson city? Ce.—Booneville? Cr.—Lexington? Le.—Liberty? Cy—On what rivers are the other principal towns?

— 123 —

ARKANSAS.

1. Arkansas was admitted into the Union in 1836. The eastern part of the country along the Mississippi is low and marshy; but the interior is elevated, healthful, and pleasant.

2. The land bordering on the rivers is generally fertile, and produces good crops of cotton and corn. Wheat and other grains grow well in the upper country, while peaches, plums, and other fruits, are raised in abundance.

3. This state has considerable advantages for commerce. Nearly every part of it is intersected by streams that flow into the Mississippi river. Steam-boats ascend the Arkansas during high water nearly 600 miles above its mouth; and the Red, White, St. Francis, and Washita rivers, are all more or less navigable.

4. The Hot Springs, about fifty miles west of Little Rock, are among the chief curiosities of the country; the water of some of them is sufficiently hot to boil an egg in fifteen minutes. They are very numer

---

What do the traders form? 6. Describe Jefferson City. 7. St. Louis 8. St. Charles, and the other towns.

Arkansas. Q.—1. What is said of Arkansas? Of the country? 2. Productions? 3. Commerce? Steam-boats? 4. Hot Springs? 5. Describe Little Rock, and other towns.

---

* *Booneville*, Boon'-vil.

ous, and much resorted to by invalids, who generally find the use of the water beneficial to their health.

5. Little Rock, the capital of the state, situated on the Arkansas river, about 300 miles above its mouth, is the most important town. The chief of the others are, Arkansas, Batesville, Helena, Fulton, and Fayetteville. These are all of limited population.

Map No. 12.—What bounds Arkansas north? Mi.—South? La.—East? Te. Mi.—West? I. T., Ts.—What river separates it from Tennessee and Mississippi? Mi.—What rivers flow into the Mississippi? As., We., S.-Fs.—What two flow into Louisiana? Rd., Wa.—Tell the lengths of the foregoing rivers. How far are the Arkansas, White, Washita, and Red rivers navigable for steam-boats from the sea? Where does the navigation end? F.-Gn., Be., Cn., Jo.—In what county is Little Rock? Pi.—Fort Smith? Cd.—Fulton? Hd.—Fayetteville? Wn.—Batesville? Ie.—On what rivers are the chief towns?

124

WISCONSIN.

1. Wisconsin formed, until the year 1836, the western division of Michigan, when it became a territory. In 1846 Congress passed an act for its admission into the Union as a state; which did not, however, take place until 1848.

2. It lies between Lake Michigan and the Mississippi river: the surface is mostly level, consisting of prairie and timber land, with a rich, deep soil. In the northern part of the state the land is hilly and broken, and in some parts mountainous.

3. Wisconsin is rich in mineral products; lead is found in greater quantities than in any other part of the United States. Copper and iron also abound. The copper region of Lake Superior extends into this state. Corn and wheat are the principal agricultural products.

4. Madison, the capital of Wisconsin, is finely situated on a branch of Rock river, and nearly half-way between Lake Michigan and the Mississippi river. It is regularly laid out, with a large central square, in which the State-House is situated.

5. Milwaukie, the largest town in the state, is situated on the river of the same name, near its entrance into Lake Michigan. It possesses an extensive commerce. The river, across which a dam is erected above the town, furnishes a vast amount of water-power.

Wisconsin. Q.—1. What is said of Wisconsin? What occurred in 1846? In 1848? 2. Describe the position of Wisconsin? Surface? Northern part of the state? 3. In what is Wisconsin rich? What is said of lead, &c.? Copper, &c.? Corn, &c.? 4 Describe Madison. 5. Milwaukie. 6. The next important towns?

6. The next important towns are Racine, Southport, and Sheboygan, on Lake Michigan, Janesville and Watertown, on Rock river, Prairieville, on Fox river, and Prairie du Chien, on the Mississippi.

Map No. 5.—What bounds Wisconsin on the north? B. Aa.—South? Is.—East? L. Mn.—West? Ma., Is.—What river forms part of the west boundary? Mi.—What lake on the north? Sr.—East? Mn.—West of Lake Michigan? Wo.—What rivers flow into Lake Superior? S. Lo., Ml.—Into Green Bay? Fx., Me.—Into the Mississippi river? Cy., Bk., Wn., Rk.

Map No. 14.—In what county is the capital? De.—Milwaukie? Me.—Racine and Southport? Re.—Janesville? Rk

125

IOWA.

1. The state of Iowa lies north of Missouri, and westward of Illinois and Wisconsin. It was first settled in 1833; five years afterwards it was organized as a territory, and in 1846 was admitted into the Union as a state.

2. It comprises about a third part of the late territory of Iowa. On the east is the Mississippi, and on the west the Missouri and Great Sioux rivers. The largest of the other streams are the Des Moines, the Skunk, the Iowa, and Red Cedar: the two latter unite before they join the Mississippi.

3. The surface of the state consists chiefly of prairie land, interspersed with groves of timber. The soil is famed for its fertility; and most luxuriant crops of corn, wheat, rye and oats are cultivated. Sheep abound, the wool of which is of excellent quality.

4. Lead is the principal mineral. It is found in great quantities, and some of the richest lead-mines in the United States are worked in the vicinity of Dubuque. Coal, iron and limestone also abound.

5. Iowa city, the capital of the state, is on the left bank of Iowa river. The situation is dry and pleasant, and at the head of navigation. The state capitol is a fine building, of the Grecian order of architecture. The University of Iowa is established here.

6. Burlington, the oldest and largest town in the state, is on the left bank of the Mississippi river. The trade of the place is valuable and important. Dubuque is the centre of the mining district of Iowa.

Iowa. Q.—1. What is the position of Iowa? When was it first settled? Organized as a territory? Admitted as a state? 2. What does it comprise? How is it bounded? The other streams? 3. Describe the surface of the state? Soil? Crops? Sheep. 4. What is said of lead? Coal, &c.? 5. Describe Iowa city. 6. Burlington. Dubuque. The other towns.

Fort Madison, Muscatine or Bloomington, Davenport, the seat of Iowa College, Montrose and Salem are among the chief of the other towns

---

Map No. 5.—What bounds Iowa on the north? M. Ty.—South? Mi.—East? Wn., Is.—West? I. Ty., Mo. Ty.—What river on the east? Mi.—West? Mo., G. Sx.—What rivers flow into the Mississippi? Ty., R. Cr., Ia., D.-Ms.—Into the Missouri? G. Sx., L. Sx.

Map No. 14.—On what river is Iowa city? Ia.—In what county? Jn.—On what river is Dubuque? Davenport? Muscatine? Burlington? Fort Madison? Mi.—How many miles do steam-boats ascend the Des Moines river from the sea?

126

MINNESOTA TERRITORY.

1. MINNESOTA is a new territory, formed out of portions of Iowa and Wisconsin. It extends from Iowa, northward, to British America. As yet, it is inhabited chiefly by the Sioux, Chippeway, and Winnebago Indians; but white settlers are already emigrating from other parts of the Union.

2. Much of the surface of the territory consists of prairie; but there are large tracts of timber—principally of white pine, hemlock, oak, and sugar maple. In the interior, there are some ridges of hills, which divide the waters flowing into the Mississippi river from those that flow into the Missouri.

3. On the east, Minnesota is bounded by the Mississippi river and Lake Superior; and on the west, by the Missouri and White Earth rivers. The other important streams are the St. Peter's, or Minnesota, the Red river, the au Jacque, and the St. Louis.

4. The lakes are numerous, and abound in excellent fish. With the exception, however, of the Lake of the Woods, Rainy lake, Red lake, and a few others, they are mostly of small size. The wild rice, for which this region is noted, grows in these lakes abundantly; when fit to gather, it is harvested by the Indian women, in their canoes.

5. White pine lumber is extensively cut, and is rafted in large quantities down the St. Croix and Mississippi rivers. Maple sugar is made both by the whites and Indians. Wheat, rye, oats, corn, and potatoes, are cultivated.

6. In winter, the climate of Minnesota is cold, but the atmosphere is dry and bracing, and the weather constant. The settlers are an intelligent and enterprising people, chiefly from the eastern and western states.

Minnesota. Q.—1. What is said of Minnesota? Its extent? How inhabited, &c.? 2. Describe the surface. The interior. 3. How is it bounded? Name the other important streams. 4. What is said of the lakes? Wild rice? How is it harvested? 5. What is said of white

7. St. Paul, on the left bank of the Mississippi river, eight miles by land below the falls of St. Anthony, a new and rapidly improving town, is the capital of the territory. Stillwater, on the St. Croix, and St. Anthony, on the Mississippi river, are thriving villages. Fort Snelling, at the mouth of the St. Peter's, and Fort Gaines, at the junction of the Mississippi and Crow-Wing rivers, are forts garrisoned by United States' troops.

Map No. 5.—What country north of Minnesota? B. Aa.—State south? Ia.—East? Wn.—Ty. west? Mi.—Principal rivers? Mi., Mi., Rd., S. Pr., a. Je.—Principal lakes? Sr., Ws., Ry., Rd., Pn., Ek., Ds.—From what lake does the Mississippi flow? Ia.—On what river are the falls of St. Anthony? Mi.—What rivers flow into the Mississippi? Rm., St. P., St. C.—Into the Missouri? W. E., a. J., G. S.—How many miles from the sea do steam-boats ascend the Mississippi? Where is the Grand Portage? This is the route by which the Canadian traders pass to the central and north-west regions of the continent.

127

MISSOURI TERRITORY.

1. Missouri Territory is a vast wilderness, thinly inhabited only by different tribes of Indians. It consists of extensive prairies, over which roam countless droves of buffalo, elk, deer, and wild horses.

---

pine lumber? Maple sugar? Wheat, &c.? 6. Of the climate? Settlers? 7. Describe St. Paul. Stillwater, &c. Forts Snelling and Gaines.

Missouri Territory. Q.—1. What is Missouri Territory? Of what

2. On the western frontier the Rocky Mountains rise up to a great height, and have their tops covered with perpetual snow. Among these the grizzly bear is found: he is the largest and fiercest animal of his kind, and is peculiar to North America.

3. This region is visited by the white traders, who barter with the Indians for the skins of buffaloes, bears, beavers, &c., taken by them in hunting. There are also many white trappers and hunters, who live like the Indians, and are absent from the settlements frequently for years at a time.

4. The principal native tribes are the Pawnees, Sioux, Riccarees, Crow, and Black-Feet Indians. Most of these savages, possessing many horses, roam from place to place, in quest of buffalo and other game.

Map No. 5.—What bounds this territory on the north? B.-Aa.—South? I.-Ty.—East? Ma.—West? O.-Ty.—What Mts. separate it from Oregon? Ry.—What river from Minnesota? Mi.—From the Indian territory? Pe.—What hills west of the Missouri? Bk.—Where is Frémont's Peak? Its height? What tribes inhabit this territory? B.-Ft., Cw., Ms., Rs., Sx., Ss., Ss., Ps., Ps.

— 128 —

INDIAN TERRITORY.

1. The Indian Territory is the region assigned by Congress for the residence of those native tribes who have from time to time emigrated, or been removed, from the eastern parts of the Union. It lies westward of the states of Iowa, Missouri, and Arkansas.

2. Here the Indians are to be secured in governments of their own choice, subject only to such control of the United States as may be necessary to preserve peace between the several tribes. The population numbers near 80,000, of whom two-thirds are emigrants; the remainder belong to tribes long resident in this region.

3. The Choctaws, Creeks, Cherokees, and Shawnees, are the most improved of the emigrant tribes. They have generally good houses, well-tilled fields, and own horses and cattle to some extent. They have also native mechanics and merchants among them.

---

does it consist? 2. What is said of the Rocky Mts.? Grizzly bear? 3. White traders? Trappers and hunters? 4. Native tribes, &c.?

Indian Territory. Q.—1. What is the Indian Territory? 2. What is said of the Indians? Population, &c.? 3. Name the most improved

4. The Aboriginal Indians consist, for the most part, of Pawnees, Osages, Kanzas, Omahas, &c. They still retain their original savage habits unchanged, and live mostly by hunting.

5. The emigrant tribes are advancing in civilization, and the enjoyment of the comforts of settled life. Their condition has been improved by removal. They receive annuities from the United States, in recompense for relinquishing their rights in the lands which they vacated.

Map No. 5.—How is the Indian Territory bounded on the north? M.-Ty.—South? Ts.—East? Ia., Mi., As.—West? Ts., U. Ca. What are the principal rivers that flow through it? Pe., Ks., As., Cn., Rd.—What desert in the western part of the territory? G.-An.—What mts. form part of its western boundary? Ry.—Where is Long's Peak? Pike's Peak? How high are they? Name the Indian tribes wholly resident in the Territory. Os., Os., Ks., Ds., Ss., Ks., Os., Cs., Cs., Cs., As. Name those that are partly so. Of the latter there are three tribes. Ps., Ks., P.-Ps.

129

NEW MEXICO.

1. New Mexico is an elevated inland region, situated in a valley on both sides of the Rio Grande, and on the upper part of its course, which here is fordable at nearly all seasons.

2. On the west it is separated from Upper California by the Sierra Madre, and on the east from the settled portions of the United States by prairies 600 or 700 miles across.

3. During the late war this region was conquered by the American arms, and was confirmed to the United States by the treaty of 1848. Its limits are yet undefined, that portion lying east of the Rio Grande being claimed by Texas. The chief magistrate is a governor appointed by the President of the United States.

4. Corn and wheat are the chief products; frijoles, a species of bean, and chili, or red pepper, are likewise grown. Grapes abound in the south, at Paso del Norte and its vicinity, from which both wine and brandy are made.

---

tribes. Describe their condition. 4. What do the aboriginal Indians consist of? What do they still retain? 5. What is said of the emigrant tribes? Their condition, &c.? What do they receive?

New Mexico. Q.—1. Describe the position of New Mexico. 2. How is it separated from Upper California? From the United States? 3. What occurred during the late war? What is said of its limits? The chief magistrate? 4. What are the chief products? What are like-

5. Mules, sheep and goats are the principal domestic animals; the horse is of the prairie or Mustang breed. Gold is dug to the amount of $75,000 to $100,000 annually. Salt is procured from the salt ponds or salinas, of which there are several in the country.

6. Nearly all the inhabitants are of the Mestizoe race, the offspring of whites and Indians, and speak the Spanish language. There are no negroes, and the pure whites are few in number. The commerce is carried on chiefly by American traders.

7. Santa Fé, the capital, is situated on a small tributary of the Rio Grande, 12 miles east of that stream. The houses are chiefly built of adobes, or sun-dried bricks. An extensive trade is carried on hence with the state of Missouri. Taos, north, and Albuquerque, Tome, and Socorro, south of Santa Fé, are small towns on the Rio Grande.

Map No. 5.—What state bounds New Mexico on the east and south-east? Ts.—North? I. Ty.—South? Mo.—West? U. Ca.—What mts. form the western boundary? S. Mc. This range is the southern part of the Rocky Mts.: by some it is called the Sierra Anahuac, and by others the Mexican Cordilleras. It extends through Mexico and Guatemala to the Isthmus of Darien.

130

OREGON TERRITORY.

1. Oregon Territory extends from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific Ocean, and northward from latitude 42° to 49° north. In a large portion of this region the fertility of the soil is limited, and timber and game are scarce.

2. The Columbia or Oregon is the chief river. The Rocky Mountains form the eastern boundary. Farther west are the Blue Mountains. Nearer to, and almost parallel to the coast, is the Cascade Range: it equals the Rocky Mountains in elevation, and two of its summits are volcanoes.

---

wise grown? What abound in the south, &c.? 5. Which are the chief domestic animals? What is said of the horse? Of gold? Salt? 6. What are nearly all the inhabitants? What language do they speak? What is said of negroes? Of whites? Commerce? Describe the capital. Which are the other towns?

Oregon Territory. Q.—1. How far does Oregon Territory extend? What is said of it? 2. Of the Columbia river? Rocky Mts.? Blue

Missionary preaching to the Indians.

3. The country lying westward of the Cascade Range is the finest part of Oregon: its wheat and other productions are very superior. The pasturage is excellent, and cattle are raised with little trouble. Gigantic pine trees, 250 feet high, are met with on the lower part of the Columbia river.

4. The Columbia, as well as the other rivers of Oregon, are noted for the abundance of their salmon: these fish form a large share of the food of the Indians, and are much used by the white inhabitants.

5. For many years Oregon was claimed both by the United States and Great Britain; but, in the treaty of 1846, the parallel of 49° north was adopted as the dividing line. The navigation of the Columbia river was, at the same time, declared free to citizens of the United States, to the Hudson's Bay Company, and to all British subjects trading with the same.

6. The inhabitants of Oregon consist of Americans, the traders attached to the Hudson's Bay Company, Indians, and the missionaries employed in converting the latter. The chief of the native tribes are the Flatheads, Nezperces, Wallawallas, and Shoshones. The principal trading forts or houses belonging to the Hudson Bay Company are Forts Vancouver, Wallawalla, and Colville.

7. Oregon City, the capital of the territory, stands in a fine fertile

---

Mts.? Cascade Range? 3. Which is the finest part of Oregon? What is said of its wheat, &c.? Pasturage, &c.? Pine trees? 4. For what is the Columbia river, &c., noted? What is said of these fish? 5. By what nations was Oregon claimed? What occurred in 1846? What is said of the navigation of the Columbia river? Of the inhabitants? Chief Indian tribes? Principal trading forts, &c.? Oregon city? Astoria? Portland, &c.?

valley at the falls of Willamette river, and contains about 500 inhabitants. Astoria, on the Columbia river, once a trading post, is now a port of entry. Portland and Linton, both on the Willamette, below Oregon City, are villages recently founded.

Map No. 5.—What bounds Oregon on the north? B. Aa.—South? U. Ca.—East? M. Ty.—West? P. On.—What mts. on the east? Ry.—Highest peak? Fs.—What mts. west of Lewis river? Be.—Near the coast? C. Re.—Chief summits? Rr., S. Hs., Hd., Jn.—Point out the South Pass. This is a gap in the Rocky Mts., 15 or 20 miles wide, through which emigrants travel to Oregon.—Chief river? On. or Ca.—Chief branches? Ls., Cs.—Lengths of the principal rivers? Principal forts? Vr., Wa., Ce.—Capes? Fy., Fr., Od.—Lakes? Km., Kt.—On what river is Oregon city? Astoria?

— 131 —

UPPER CALIFORNIA.

1. Upper California, now so noted for its gold, lies eastward of the Pacific Ocean, between Oregon and Mexico. It was conquered by the American arms in 1846 from Mexico, and was confirmed to the United States by the treaty of 1848.

2. A large portion of the country is mountainous and sterile, and, with the exception of the district between the Sierra Nevada and the Pacific Ocean, seems to be of little value for agricultural purposes. The Coast and Sierra Nevada Mountains extend along the sea-shore: on the eastern frontier are the Rocky Mountain and Sierra Madre ranges.

3. The central part of California is called "the Great Basin:" this is a vast barren district, 1500 miles in circuit, as yet but imperfectly explored. The Colorado, Sacramento, and San Joaquin are the largest rivers: the two last flow through the finest portions of California. The Great Salt, Pyramid, and Tulé, are the largest lakes.

4. The gold region of California lies at the base of the Sierra Nevada, and extends nearly 500 miles along the branches of the Sacramento and Joaquin rivers. Here the

---

Upper California. Q.—1. What is said of Upper California? What occurred in 1846? In 1848? 2. Describe the country? What mts. extend along the coast? On the eastern frontier? 3. What is the central part of California called? Describe the Great Basin? Which are the largest rivers? Lakes? 4. Describe the gold region, &c.

precious metal exists in great abundance, and thousands of individuals are employed in collecting it.

5. The white inhabitants of California comprise Mexicans, Americans, and emigrants from all parts of America and Europe. The Utahs, Apaches, and Navahoes are the principal Indian tribes. Cattle and horses abound, and hides, horns and tallow are exported. Wherever the soil can be irrigated, grain is produced in abundance, and the wheat is of the finest quality.

6. San Francisco Bay is the chief port of California, and is sufficiently spacious to contain the ships of all nations. San Francisco, the largest town, lies on the west side of the bay. Monterey, the capital, is a town of 1000 inhabitants. Sacramento city, Benicia, Sonoma, Puebla de los Angeles, and Santa Barbara, are small towns.

7. The Mormon settlement or city is on the Jordan or Utah, a river which connects the Utah and Great Salt lakes: it contains about 350 houses, and is sufficiently fortified to resist an Indian assault. The land in the vicinity is fertile, and timber and game are abundant.

Map No. 5.—What bounds Upper California on the north? On.—South? O.-Ca., Mo.—East? I. Ty., N. Mo.—West? P. On.—What mts. near the coast? C. Mts.—East of the Coast Mts.? S. Na.—What mts. on the east? Ry., S. Me.—What islands on the coast? S., Ba.—Bays? S.-Fo., My.—Cape? Mo.—Points? Dn., D. La.—Chief river? Co.—Which of its branches forms part of the southern boundary? Ga.—What lakes west of the Sierra Nevada? Te Kn., Mn.—Principal lakes east? Pd., Nt., G. St.

Map No. 6.—Point out San Pablo Bay. Suisun Bay. These are the names of particular divisions of San Francisco Bay. What rivers flow into San Francisco Bay? So., S. Jn.—Point out San Francisco? Sonoma? Benicia? Sacramento city? Santa Clara?

132

MEXICO.

1. Mexico lies chiefly between the Pacific Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico. It is noted for the early civilization of its inhabitants, and its rich silver-mines. A large portion of its territory has been recently annexed to the United States.

---

5. What is said of the inhabitants? The Utahs, &c.? Cattle, &c.?
6. San Francisco Bay? San Francisco? Monterey? The other towns?
7. Describe the Mormon settlement. The land, &c.

Mexico. Q.—1. Describe the position of Mexico? For what is it

Pyramid of Cholula. Indians. Creoles. Maguey Plant.

2. The low country on the coast is fertile, but hot and sickly. The interior is a table-land of 6000 or 8000 feet high, and is temperate and healthful. The principal mountains are the Sierra Madre, of which the highest peak is the volcano of Popocatapetl. The rivers are generally small; and few of them are navigable, except for boats.

3. The country is famous for the variety of its vegetable products, comprising, according to the elevation at which they are planted, the principal grains and fruits of torrid and temperate climates.

4. Indian-corn is the staple product. Wheat, rice, and barley, are also cultivated; and sugar, coffee, vanilla, cochineal, &c., are raised for internal consumption. The American aloe, or maguey plant, is cultivated, for the sake of its juice, from which the liquor called pulque, the favourite drink of the lower order of Mexicans, is made.

5. The commerce and manufactures of Mexico are unimportant. Silver comprises its principal wealth. The mines produce less at present than they did 50 years ago, but are slowly regaining their former value. Gold and copper are mined to some extent.

6. There are three classes of inhabitants in Mexico; the whites or Creoles, the Indians, and the mixed races. The latter consist of Mestizoes, the descendants of whites and Indians; Mulattoes, of whites and negroes; and Zamboes, of Indians and negroes.

---

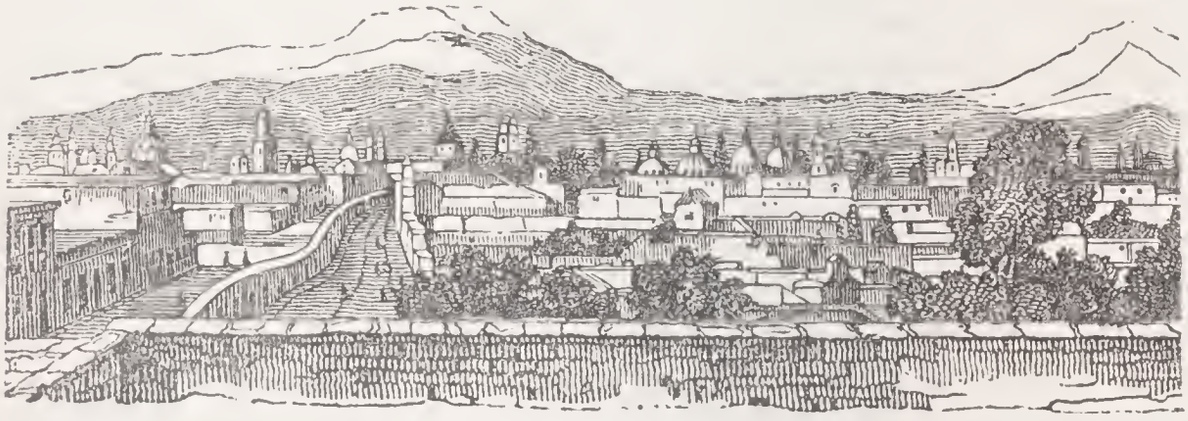
noted? What has occurred recently? 2. What is said of the country? Mountains? Rivers? 3. Vegetable products? 4. Indian corn? Wheat, &c.? The American aloe? 5. What is said of the commerce and manufactures? Silver? The mines? Gold and copper? 6. Describe

7. The Catholic religion is established by law. Education is limited; and the mass of the population, chiefly Indians, are very ignorant. The amusements of the Mexicans are similar to those of Old Spain, consisting mainly of bull-fights and religious processions.

8. At the time of the discovery of America, Mexico formed a powerful native empire. Being conquered by Spain, it remained for 300 years her most important colony. In the year 1821, the Mexicans threw off the Spanish yoke, and established first an imperial, and then a republican government.

9. From the years 1846 to 1848, war was waged between Mexico and the United States. Several important victories were gained by the American armies, and the territories of Upper California and New Mexico were conquered. The cities of Mexico, Puebla, Vera Cruz, and other towns, were also taken, and afterwards given up.

— 133 —



City of Mexico.

10. The city of Mexico is situated in a delightful valley, which is elevated 7000 feet above the sea, about half-way between the Pacific Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico. It is distinguished for the beauty of its architecture, the regularity of its streets, and the extent of the squares and public places.

11. The market is well supplied with all the animal and vegetable products of the country: many of the latter are raised on the chinampas or floating gardens in the neighbouring lakes. At Chapultepec, Contreras, and Churubusco, in the vicinity of the city, battles were fought in 1847, in all of which the Americans defeated the Mexicans

---

the inhabitants. The mixed races. 7. What is said of religion? Education? Amusements? 8. What did Mexico form? What then took place? Afterwards, in 1821? 9. What occurred from 1846 to 1848? State the result. 10. Describe the position of the city of Mexico. For what is it distinguished? 11. What is said of the market, &c.? Of

12. Guadalaxara is next to Mexico in population; the inhabitants are remarkable for their republican spirit. La Puebla is noted for its manufactures of glass and earthen-ware. Guanaxuato, Zacatecas, and San Luis Potosi, are all connected with rich silver-mines. Oaxaca, Durango, and Chihuahua, are considerable towns.

13. The chief sea-ports of Mexico are, Matamoras, on the Rio Grande; Vera Cruz and Tampico, on the Gulf of Mexico; Acapulco and San-Blas, on the west coast; and Guaymas and Mazatlan, on the Gulf of California.

14. During the late war, Monterey, which lies west of Matamoras, was taken by General Taylor; and at Buena Vista, in the vicinity, he afterwards gained a brilliant victory over a superior Mexican army, commanded by Santa Anna. Vera Cruz, also, though defended by the strong castle of San Juan d'Uloa, surrendered to General Scott.

15. YUCATAN is a peninsula which lies between the Bay of Campeche and the Caribbean Sea. It is a hot sterile region, and deficient in running streams. Logwood and mahogany are the chief products. This country formed one of the States of Mexico, but, in 1841, the people declared themselves independent. Population about 500,000. Merida is the capital. Campeche on the west, Sisal on the north, and Laguna on Carmen Island, are the chief sea-ports.

16. THE BALIZE, or BRITISH HONDURAS, is on the west side of the peninsula of Yucatan: it extends along the Bay of Honduras upwards of 150 miles, and is valuable for its logwood and mahogany. Population about 4000. The town of Balize, the capital, is at the mouth of a river of the same name. It contains about 500 houses.

Map No. 15.—What bounds Mexico N. and N. E.? U. S.—South and West? P. On.—East? Ga., G. Mo.—What rivers flow into the Gulf of Mexico? R. G., Sr., Ta., To.—Gulf of California? Yi., Fe., Sa.—Pacific Ocean? Gc., Bs., Na., Ve.—Rio Grande? Cs., S. Jn.—What lakes in Mexico? Cn., Ca.—Mts.? S. Me.—Islands? Ls., T., Ms.—Population of the city of Mexico?—What cities have 30,000 and upwards? Pa., Zs., S. Z. P., Qo., Go., Ga., Oa.

Map No. 16.—What lake near the city of Mexico? To.—Southward? Co.—Volcano south-east? Pl.—How high is it? What river near Puebla? Na.—Where is the pyramid of Cholula? What mts. encircle the Valley of Mexico? Ac.

Chapultepec, &c. 12. Guadalaxara? La Puebla? Guanaxuato, &c.? 13. Which are the chief sea-ports? 14. What is said of Monterey? Buena Vista? Vera Cruz? 15. Yucatan? Products? What occurred in 1841? Population? The capital, &c. 16. Describe the Balize? For what is it valuable? What is said of the capital?

— 134 —

GUATIMALA, OR CENTRAL AMERICA.

1. Guatimala occupies the narrow tract between the northern and southern divisions of the Western Continent; and has, in consequence of its position, assumed the title of the United States of Central America.

2. It became independent in 1824, and adopted a form of government modelled after that of the United States; but instead of acquiring the order and prosperity of that republic, it has long been the seat of anarchy and civil war.

3. The country is traversed by lofty ranges of the Sierra Madre, which contain many volcanoes, one of which, the Water Volcano, is noted for throwing out vast quantities of water; while the eruptions of another, Cosiguina, were, in 1834, heard 1000 miles distant, and the ashes thrown by it were carried to Jamaica, 800 miles. The largest lake is that of Nicaragua, from which a ship canal to the Pacific Ocean has long been projected.

4. The soil is fruitful, and yields, in perfection, all the most valuable tropical products. The indigo and cacao are of superior quality. Mines of silver are numerous, but few of them are now productive.

5. One-half the population consists of Indians, one-fifth whites, and the remainder of the mixed races. The Catholic is the established religion, but all others are tolerated.

6. Part of the east coast of this republic is called the Mosquito shore. It is covered with vast forests, and peopled by independent Indians; of whom, some of the tribes have long been in alliance with the English.

7. San Salvador, the capital, is situated nearly half way between the northern and southern extremities of Guatimala. Its inhabitants are chiefly employed in the indigo trade. This city, besides, being the capital of the Republic, is also the capital of the Federal District, a territory which extends from 20 to 30 miles around it.

8. Old Guatimala, formerly the capital, was destroyed by an eruption of water from the Water Volcano, but is now reviving. New Guatimala is the most populous place in the country, and is a handsome city. Leon and Cartago are considerable towns. Omoa and Truxillo, on the bay of Honduras, are the chief sea-ports.

Guatimala. Q. — 1. What does Guatimala occupy? What has it assumed? 2. When did it become independent? What is said of the government? 3. Country? Water Volcano? Cosiguina? Largest lake? 4. The soil? Mines? 5. What is said of the population? The Catholic religion? 6. The east coast? 7. Describe San Salvador. The Federal District. 8. Old Guatimala. New Guatimala &c.

Map No. 4.—What bounds Guatimala on the north? Mo., Be.—East? C.-Sa.—West and south? P.-On.—What bay on the north? Hs.—On the east? Ga.—What lake in the south? Na.—How long is it? What river connects it with the sea? S.-Jn.—Which is the most populous city? N.-Ga.—The four next in population? Ln., Co., S.-Sr., O.-Ga.—What is the population of these places?

Map No. 6.—Guatimala comprises five states. Point them out? Ga., Hs., S.-Sr., Na., C.-Ra.—What is the capital of each? N.-Ga. Ca., S.-Sr., Ln., Co.—In what state is the Water Volcano situated? Ga.—Volcano of Cosiguina? Na.—Lake Nicaragua? Na.

——— 135 ———

Slaves cultivating the Sugar-cane.

WEST INDIES.

1. The West Indies consist of a large collection of islands, situated between North and South America. They are all, with the exception of Hayti, subject to different European powers.

2. These Islands comprise four great divisions: the Bahama Islands, the Great Antilles, the Little Antilles, and the Caribbee Islands. The latter are divided into two groups, the Windward and Leeward Islands.

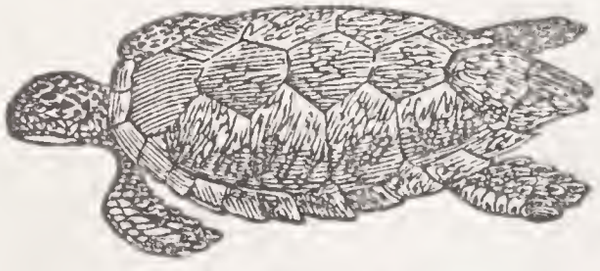
3. The climate is mild and pleasant in winter, which lasts

West Indies. Q.—1. Of what do the West Indies consist? 2. What do they comprise? 3. What is said of the climate? What sometimes

from December to May; but the remainder of the year is hot and unhealthy for strangers. Between August and October, tremendous hurricanes or storms sometimes occur, which often do great injury to towns, houses, and shipping.

4. The West Indies abound in nearly all the productions of warm climates, and are rich in a variety of articles of great importance in commerce; while the forests furnish mahogany and several other woods useful in the arts.

5. The principal fruits are, oranges, lemons, pine-apples, papaws, bananas, plaintains, &c. The two last afford a supply of excellent food, with but little attention to their cultivation. A great variety of birds is found in the West Indies, nearly all of which are, however, common to the neighbouring continents.



Green Turtle.

Guana Lizard.

6. The green turtle and guana lizard are both highly prized, as affording delicious food. The former are sent in considerable numbers to Europe and the United States. They come on shore in the night, when the fishermen turn them on their backs, and collect them at leisure. The guana is from four to five feet long; it is very nimble, and is hunted with dogs. The flesh is tender, sweet, and delicate.

7. Commerce is carried on from the West India Islands with great activity, and to a larger amount than in any other region of the same extent and population.

8. The chief articles of export are, coffee, sugar, rum, cotton, cocoa, pimento, mahogany, logwood, &c. The imports are, manufactured goods of all kinds from Europe, with flour, lumber, fish, and salted provisions from the United States and British America.

9. The islands of the West Indies are under the control of Governors,

---

occur? 4. In what do the West Indies abound? 5. What are the principal fruits? What is said of birds? 6. Of the green turtle, &c.? 7. What is said of commerce? 8. What are the chief articles of export? Imports? 9. What control are the islands under? How are

appointed by the powers to which they respectively belong. The inhabitants of the British Islands are represented in the Houses of Assembly, which exercise some of the functions of the British Parliament. Hayti forms an independent republic.

10 The inhabitants consist of whites, free blacks, and slaves, of whom about 500,000 are whites. The remainder are of Negro origin; and, except in Hayti and the British and French Islands, the principal part are in a state of slavery.

11.

	Population.		Population
Spanish Islands	1,357,000	French Islands	245,000
Hayti	800,000	Danish, Dutch, &c.	96,000
British Islands	758,000	Total	3,256,000

— 136 —

SPANISH WEST INDIES.

12. The western colonies of Spain, which formerly comprised the greater part of the American Continent, are now limited to the two islands of Cuba and Porto Rico.

13. Cuba, the largest of the West India Islands, is nearly equal in extent to all the rest of the islands taken together. Population 1,000,000. Porto Rico contains about one-tenth the area of Cuba. Population 357,000. They are both fertile islands, and carry on an extensive trade, chiefly with the United States.

14. Havana, the capital of Cuba, is the largest and most flourishing city in the West Indies. Matanzas, Puerto Principe, and St. Jago de Cuba, are, after the capital, the most important towns. St. John's is the chief town in Porto Rico. It has a safe and capacious harbour, and is strongly fortified.

BRITISH WEST INDIES.

15. Jamaica is the largest and most valuable of the British islands. The towns of Jamaica, and the other islands, are all sea-ports, and dependent on commerce.

16. Kingston is the largest town in the British West Indies, and contains about 30,000 inhabitants. The chief of the other towns are, Bridgetown, in Barbadoes, with 20,000 inhabitants; St. John's, in Antigua, with 15,000; Port of Spain, in Trinidad, with 12,000; and Basseterre, in St. Christopher's, with 7000.

---

the white inhabitants of the British islands represented? 10. Of what do the inhabitants consist? How many are whites? 11. What is the population of the different islands?

12. What are the colonies of Spain? 13. What is said of Cuba? Porto Rico? 14. Havana? Other towns? St. John's? 15. Jamaica? 16. Kings-

BRITISH ISLANDS.

17.	Inhabitants.	Capital.
Jamaica	375,000	Spanish Town.
Barbadoes	103,000	Bridgetown.
Trinidad	45,000	Port of Spain.
Antigua	37,000	St. John's.
Grenada	29,000	St. George's.
St. Vincent	27,000	Kingston.
St. Kitt's	25,000	Basseterre.
Dominica	22,000	Roseau.
St. Lucia	18,000	Castries.
Tobago	15,000	Scarborough.
Nevis	12,000	Charleston.
Montserrat	8,000	Plymouth.
Tortola	8,000	Road Harbour
Anguilla	3,000	Anguilla.
Bahamas	22,000	Nassau.
Bermudas	9,000	St. George's.

18. The Bahamas comprise about 650 islands, of which only 14 are of considerable size. The soil is arid and rocky, and these islands are, in consequence, not fruitful in the usual products of the West Indies.

19. The Bermudas lie to the eastward of the United States, and are a collection of rocks and small islands, of which only eight possess any importance. They enjoy an almost perpetual spring, and are clothed in constant verdure.

20. FRENCH ISLANDS.		
Guadaloupe	110,400	Basseterre.
Martinico	118,000	St. Pierre.
Mariegalante	11,500	Basseterre.
Deseada, &c.*	5,100	

21 DANISH.		
Santa Cruz	32,000	Christianstadt.
St. Thomas	7,000	St. Thomas.
St. John's	3,000	

22. DUTCH.		
St Eustatia	14,000	The Bay.
Curacoa	13,000	Williamstadt.
St. Martin's	3,000	

23. SWEDISH.		
St. Bartholomew	9,000	Gustavia.

24. VENEZUELA.		
Margarita	15,000	Pampatar.

— 137 —

25. Hayti was formerly called Hispaniola, and also St. Domingo. It is one of the finest of the West India Islands, and once belonged jointly to France and Spain. The French portion was uncommonly flourishing, and the exports nearly equalled those of all the other Islands united.

In 1791, an insurrection of the negroes broke out in the French part of the island. In 1793, the slaves were emancipated by a decree of the French National Assembly. In 1801, the independence of Hayti was declared; and in 1822, the Spanish part of the island came under the control of the Haytien government.

---

ton, and the other towns? 17. Which is the most populous of the British Islands? Ja. — The next? Bs. — The least? Aa. — What do the Bahamas comprise? What is said of the soil? 19. Of the Bermudas? What do they enjoy? 20. Which is the most populous of the French islands? Ge. — 21. Of the Danish? S.-Cr. — 22. Dutch? S.-Ea. — 23. What islands belong to Sweden? S.-Bw. — 24. To Venezuela? Ma.

25. What is said of Hayti? The French portion? 26. Of the

---

* The population of the French part of St. Martin's, 3,600 in number, is included in this estimate.

The government of Hayti was, until of late, professedly republican; but it is now, and in fact has always been, a military despotism. The regular army amounts to 40,000 men; there is also a large militia force.

28. The annual exports are in value about 4 million dollars, or one-sixth the amount of those sent from the French part of the island only, previous to the year 1791.

29. The principal towns are Port au Prince, the capital, Jeremie, and Aux Cayes, [O-kay'.] In 1842, a dreadful earthquake destroyed Cape Haytien, and several other towns, besides many of the inhabitants.

30. In 1843, an insurrection took place in Hayti, and President Boyer was expelled; at the same time, the Spanish population, about 100,000 in number, declared their independence, and now form the Republic of St. Domingo. The Haytiens have endeavoured to conquer the new state, but hitherto without success. The city of St. Domingo is the capital. In 1849, President Soulouque became Emperor, under the title of Faustin I.

Map No. 4. — Which is the largest of the West India Islands? Ca. — The second in size? Hi. — Third? Ja. — Fourth? P.-Ro. — How long is Cuba? Hayti? Jamaica? Porto Rico? These are the Great Antilles. What sea between the Great Antilles and South America? Cn. — What islands north of Cuba? Bs. — Which are the principal of the Bahamas? N.-Pe., Ao., Ia., Ts., Lg., Gi. — Who discovered Guanahani? In what year? What is the name of the eastern range of the West India Is.? Ce. — What six islands on the coast of South America? Oa., Ca., B.-Ae., Oa., Ta., Ma. — These are the Little Antilles. The Bermudas are about the same distance from Charleston, from Halifax, and from St. John's, Porto Rico. How many miles is it by the scale? How far are the Bermudas from Madeira? What is the population of Havanna? Kingston? Port au Prince? St. Domingo?

— 138 —

SOUTH AMERICA.

1. South America, the southern part of the New World, is smaller in extent than the northern division of the continent by almost one million of square miles: it is thinly settled, and for the most part uncultivated.

2. Like North America, it is noted for the grandeur and extent of its mountains, rivers, and plains: it is also unrivalled

---

slaves? 27. Government? President? Army? 28. Exports? 29. The principal towns? 30. What took place in 1843? What occurred at the same time, &c.?

South America. Q.—1. How much smaller is South America than North

South American Scenery.

for the number and richness of its mines of gold, silver, mercury, and precious stones.

3. The climate of South America possesses every variety which vast extent and great diversity of surface can give. Its vegetable productions are numerous and valuable, and comprise the chief articles raised in tropical and temperate regions.

4. The principal mountains are the Andes, which range along the western shores of South America, from north to south. The highest peak, Mount Sorata, is almost five miles high. The mountains of Brazil extend along a great part of the eastern coast, and are in height from 3,000 to 6,000 feet.

5. The Andes contain numerous volcanoes, many of which are constantly burning: the most noted is Cotopaxi, near Quito, one of the loftiest volcanoes in the world; the noise of its eruptions has been heard 600 miles, and the flames from its mouth have been known to ascend half a mile high.

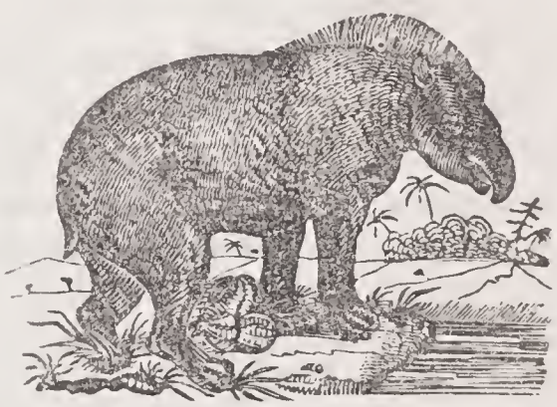
6. The principal rivers are the Amazon, Rio de la Plata, and Orinoco. The first, though not the longest, is the largest river in the world: and drains, with its tributaries, an extent of country nearly equal to the whole of Europe: its chief branches rival the largest rivers of the eastern continent.

America? 2. For what is it noted? For what unrivalled? 3. What is said of the climate? Productions? 4. Which are the principal mountains? The highest peak? 5. What is said of volcanoes? 6. Of the

South American Forest.

7. The forests of many parts of South America exhibit a luxuriance and diversity of aspect different from those of most other parts of the world. They are enlivened by a great variety of birds of singular forms and superb plumage, which flutter through the branches; and troops of monkeys and squirrels, that leap from bough to bough; while the occasional appearance of the alligator, with numerous serpents and lizards, presents a singular and varied scene.

Lama.



Tapir.

8. Among the most remarkable animals of this continent, are the jaguar, puma, and ocelot, the lama or South American camel, the tapir, peccary, sloth, ant-eater, armadillo, and chinchilla. The horse, ox, ass, and hog, were all strangers to the New World, and were brought from Europe by the first settlers: they have increased prodigiously, and have in some instances regained their original wild state.

9. The birds are numerous and of various kinds; the largest are the rhea or American ostrich, and the condor or vulture of the Andes, which is the largest bird of flight known. There are also toucans,

---

principal rivers? 7. Forests? 8. The most remarkable animals? 9. The

Red-billed Toucan.

Oriole Nests.

orioles, or hanging-birds, with the blacksmith or bell-birds, and humming-birds of a hundred different species, from the size of a wren to that of a humble-bee.

10. The inhabitants of South America amount to about 15 millions, and consist of nearly the same classes as those of the northern division of the continent—Whites, Indians, Negroes, and the mixed races: the latter comprise Mulattoes, Mestizoes, and Zamboes.

11. The whites are chiefly Spaniards and Portuguese, and their descendants: of these, many of the wealthy classes are well educated and intelligent; but the great majority of the people are ignorant, indolent, and often vicious in their habits.

12. Considerable attention has been lately paid in some of the South American States to education. Schools and universities have been established in several places, and knowledge is beginning to dispel part of the ignorance which prevailed.

13. Nearly the whole of South America was, for three hundred years, subject to Spain and Portugal: it is now, with the exception of Guiana, entirely independent of European control. The Spanish part is divided into a number of distinct republics, whose governments are similar to that of the United States; while Brazil, the part settled by the Portuguese, is a limited monarchy.

14. The Catholic is the established religion in all the South American States; but persons of other persuasions are allowed to reside without molestation. In British and Dutch Guiana the Protestant faith prevails.

---

birds? 10. What is said of the inhabitants? 11. Of the whites? 12. Education, &c.? 13. How long was South America subject, &c.? What is said of the Spanish part? Portuguese? 14. Which is the established religion?

— 139 —

Map No. 17.—What ocean bounds South America on the east? Ac.—On the west? Pc.—What sea on the north? Cn.

How is New Granada bounded? Its capital?

Venezuela—bounded? Capital?	Brazil—bounded? Capital?
Ecuador—bounded? Capital?	Chili—bounded? Capital?
Guiana—bounded? Capitals?	Buenos Ayres—bounded? Capital
Peru—bounded?	Paraguay—bounded? Capital?
Bolivia—bounded? Capital?	Uruguay—bounded? Capital?

Patagonia—bounded?

On what side of South America are the Andes? Wt.—What number of miles do they extend? Between what two states do they form the entire boundary? Ci., B.-As.—Between what two do they form the boundary in part? Ba., Pu.—What is the next greatest range of mountains? Bn.—What number of miles do they extend? In what state are they almost wholly? Bl.

Which are the three largest rivers? An., Pa., Oo.—How long is each? How wide the mouths of the two largest? Where is the Magdalena? Into what sea does it empty? Cn.—Which are the four principal branches of the Amazon on the north side? Ta., Po., Ca., No.—Which are its chief branches on the south side? Ue., Ja., Ps., Ma., Ts., Xu.—How long are each of the foregoing? Which two rivers form the Amazon? Ue., Ta.—Which two form the Rio de la Plata? Pa., Uy.—Into what ocean do the Orinoco, Amazon, St. Francisco, and the Rio de la Plata, flow? A.-On.—What rivers are south of the Rio de la Plata? Co., No., Cs., P.-De.

Where is the Gulf of Darien? N.-Ga.—G. of Venezuela? Va.—G of Guayaquil? Er.—G. of Penas? Pa.—Where is the Bay of Panama? N.-Ga.—Talcahuana B.? Ci.—B. of St. George? St. Mathias B.? Pa.—B. of All Saints? Bl.

Where is Puno Island? Er.—Islands of St. Felix? Is. of Juan Fernandez? Chiloe I.? Ci.—Wellington I.? Pa.—I. of Terra del Fuego? Where are the Falkland Is.? Pa.—I. of St. Catharina? Itamaraca I.? Joannes I.? Bl.—Between what two rivers is the latter situated? An., Pa.

Where is the Strait of Magellan? What regions does it separate? Pa. and T.-Fo.—Where is the Strait of Le Maire? What does it separate? T.-Fo. and S.-Ld.

Which is the largest city of S. America? R.-Jo.—The next? Ba.—Which three cities number respectively 100,000, 70,000, and 55,000? B.-As., Qo., La.—The most northerly and most southerly capes? Gs., Hn.*—Most easterly and most westerly? S.-Re., Bo.

---

* This cape is called by seamen the "Horn:" when vessels sail from the United States to the west coast of America, they are said to go round the Horn.

What proportion of South America lies north of the Tropic of Capricorn? The largest or smallest? Lt. — In what zone, then, is it mostly? Td. — In what zone is the remainder? S.-Te. — In what hemisphere is South America wholly? Wn. — In what hemisphere is it partly? Sn. — South America contains about 12° of north, and 55° of south latitude. In what latitude is it then? Sh. — It extends from 35° to 81° of longitude, west from Greenwich. In what longitude then is it reckoned? Wt.

How many miles is it from Guiana to Newfoundland? Brazil to Greenland? Guiana to Liberia? New Granada to Borneo? Ecuador to the Gallapagos Is.? Peru to Otaheite? Chili to New South Wales? Chili to New Zealand? Brazil to the west coast of Africa? Uruguay to the Cape of Good Hope? Patagonia to Van Diemen's Land? Patagonia to Kerguelen's Land?

— 140 —

COLOMBIA.

1. The late Republic of Colombia occupied an extensive region stretching from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean. It was the most powerful of the South American States that threw off the yoke of Spain, and was divided in the year 1831 into the republics of New Granada, Venezuela, and Ecuador.

2. The western part of this territory is traversed by some of the loftiest ranges of the Andes. In the east it consists of extensive plains (called llanos by the inhabitants) which form a part of the vast level region that spreads from north to south over the whole interior of the continent.

3. The climate changes according to the elevation; hence the vegetable productions are various. On the high table-lands, among the mountains, are raised the wheat, rye, barley, oats, and fruits of temperate climates, while the low country is prolific in the most valuable products of the Torrid Zone.

4. Manufactures are but little attended to in Colombia, but commerce is carried on to some extent, chiefly with the United States and Great Britain. The exports are mostly of the tropical productions of the country, and consist of sugar, coffee, cacao, indigo, hides, sarsaparilla, &c.

5. The mines of New Granada yield in gold and silver about two

---

Colombia. Q. — 1. What did the Republic of Colombia occupy? What was it? When and how was it divided? 2. What is said of the western part? In the east? 3. How does the climate change? What of the vegetable productions? 4. Manufactures? Exports? 5. Mines? Pearl fishery?

millions of dollars annually. There are also mines of copper, lead, and tin; and diamonds, emeralds, and other precious stones, are found. The pearl fishery, which once yielded half a million dollars a year, now amounts in value to only $180,000.

Rope bridge. Silleros carrying travellers.

NEW GRANADA.

6. New Grenada is the most powerful and populous of the Colombian States. Its coast is washed on the west side by the Pacific Ocean, and on the north by the Caribbean sea. Part of its territory extends into North America westward from the Isthmus of Darien.

7. Roads hardly exist in the mountainous districts of New Granada and the other parts of Colombia. Travellers are often carried in a kind of chair, placed on the backs of persons called silleros, hired for the purpose.

8. The bridges across the rapid torrents of the Andes are frequently formed of a single rope, and a hammock or basket made to run from one end to the other, in which the Colombian passes securely.

9. Bogota, the capital of New Granada, is situated a few miles east of the Magdalena river, on a fertile plain, 8000 feet above the sea. It contains a number of handsome churches and convents, and a university. The surrounding country yields two crops of grain annually.

10. Carthagena, on the coast of the Caribbean sea, is the principal port of this republic: its trade with the United States and Great Bri-

---

New Granada. Q.—6. What is said of New Granada? 7. Of roads? How are travellers carried? 8. What is said of bridges? 9. Describe Bogota. The surrounding country. 10. Carthagena. Popayan, &c.

tain is extensive. Popayan and Pasto are in the southern part of New Granada. Chagres is on the north, and Panama on the south side of the isthmus of Darien. Great numbers of emigrants pass through these towns, and take passage from the latter for Upper California.

Map. No. 17.—What bounds New Granada on the North? C.-Sa.—South? Er.—East? Va.—West? P.-On.—What Isthmus connects it with North America? Dn.—Which are the principal rivers? Ma., Ca., Ca., Us., No., Ge., Ma.—What is the length of each? Population of Bogota? Popayan? Carthagena? Mompox? Honda? What mountains extend along the west coast? As.—What mountains east of the Magdalena? Ans. The north-east range of the Andes.

141

VENEZUELA.

1. Venezuela comprises the eastern part of Colombia. A range of mountains, the north-east branch of the Andes, extends along the northern coast. The chief part of the republic consists of a vast plain, or llanos.

2. Like the Pampas of Buenos Ayres, and the Sertam of Brazil, the Llanos are covered with herbage, on which graze vast herds of horses, oxen and mules. Of these, many of the inhabitants possess from 10,000 to 20,000 head.

3. The people of the plains are called Llaneros. They are all excellent horsemen; and particularly distinguished themselves, in the contest with Spain, for their patriotism and bravery.

4. Caraccas, the capital, is situated about 12 miles from the coast. Previous to 1812 it was a large city with more than 40,000 inhabitants. In that year it was destroyed by one of the most dreadful earthquakes on record, and 10,000 persons perished on the spot. The city is reviving, and now contains about one-half of its former population.

5. La Guayra* is the chief port of this republic. Maracaybo, Coro, and Valencia, are all considerable towns. Angostura, or Bolivar, is the most important place on the Orinoco river. The island of Margarita, one of the lesser Antilles, belongs to Venezuela.

Venezuela. Q.—1. What does Venezuela comprise? Of what does the chief part consist? 2. With what is it covered? What graze there? 3. What is said of the people of the plains? 4. Describe Caraccas. When was it destroyed? How many persons perished? 5. Describe La Guayra. Maracaybo, &c. Margarita.

---

* *La Guayra*, La-gwi'-ra.

ECUADOR.

6. The Republic of Ecuador lies on both sides of the equator. The civilized part of the population is confined to the western coast and the valleys of the Andes; while the eastern portion of the territory is occupied by independent tribes of Indians.

7. The climate, especially of the region around Quito,* is that of perpetual spring. Vegetation never ceases, and the trees and meadows are crowned with constant verdure. The country is delightful, and is called the evergreen Quito. It is, however, subject to earthquakes and violent tempests.

8. The Gallapagos, or Turtle Islands, are claimed by the Republic of Ecuador. They lie on both sides of the equator, about 650 miles westward from South America. These islands, of which 9 are of some size, enjoy a delightful climate; they were recently occupied by a colony from Guayaquil.

9. Quito, the capital of Ecuador, is situated on the side of Mt. Pichincha, 9,000 feet above the sea. It contains handsome streets and squares, and many churches and convents, built with magnificence and taste. It has two universities, which are well attended.

10. Guayaquil,† on a gulf of the same name, is the sea-port of this republic. It is one of the most flourishing commercial towns of South America. Cuenca, Riobamba, and Otabala, are important towns.

Map No. 17. — What bounds Venezuela on the north? C.-Sa. — South? Bl. — East? Ga. — West? N.-Ga. — Which is the chief river? Oo. — How long is it? How far is it navigable for ships? For sloops? What river connects the Orinoco and Rio Negro? Ce. — What lake in the N.-W. part of Venezuela? Mo. — How long is it? From what lake does the Orinoco flow? Ia. — What Indians in Venezuela? Gs., Cs., Os. — How many inhabitants has Caraccas? Coro? Valencia? Cumana? What island belongs to Venezuela? Ma.

What bounds Ecuador on the north? N.-Ga. — South? N.-Pu. — East? Bl. — West? P.-On. — What range of mountains is in the western part? As. — What two large rivers in the south? Ta., Ue. — These form the Amazon river. How far is it navigable for ships?

Ecuador. Q. — 6. How does the Republic of Ecuador lie? What is said of the civilized part? Of the population? The western portion? 7. Of the climate? 8. The Gallapagos islands? 9. What is said of Quito? What does it contain? 10. Describe Guayaquil.

---

* *Quito*, Kee'-to. † *Guayaquil*, Gwi-a-keel'.

For sloops? How many inhabitants has Quito? What three cities number 20,000 each? Ra., Gl., Ca.—What mountain south of Quito? Co. — This was formerly considered the highest in South America.

— 142 —

GUIANA.*

1. Guiana extends from the Orinoco to the Oyapock river, a distance of 700 miles. Along the coast the land is low and level; but in the interior, it is elevated and mountainous. The products are sugar, coffee, cayenne pepper, and cloves, with a great variety of tropical fruits.

2. This region is divided between the British, Dutch, and French. British Guiana comprises the colonies of Essequibo,† Demarara, and Berbice. The Dutch possess Surinam, and the French, Cayenne.‡ The population of the first mentioned is about 96,000; of the second, 65,000; and of the last, 29,000. Total, 190,000.

3. Georgetown, on Demarara river, is the capital of British Guiana: it is a place of considerable trade. Paramaribo, on Surinam river, is the capital of Dutch Guiana: it is also the largest town in this region. Cayenne, the capital of French Guiana, is on an island of the same name, which is 18 miles long, and 10 wide.

4. The mass of the inhabitants is composed of negroes. Those in the British colonies are free; but in Surinam and Cayenne, they are still slaves. The interior is inhabited by Maroons, or runaway negroes, and independent tribes of Indians.

PERU.

5. Peru is one of the most renowned countries in South America, and has always been proverbial for the great wealth furnished by its mines. It was long one of the most valuable

---

Guiana. Q. — 1. Describe Guiana. The products. 2. How is it divided? What is the amount of population? 3. Describe Georgetown. Paramaribo. Cayenne. 4. What is said of the inhabitants? The interior?

Peru. Q. — 5. What is Peru? For what is it proverbial? What farther is said of it?

---

* *Guiana*, Ghe-a'-na. † *Essequibo*, Es-se-kee'-bo. ‡ *Cayenne*, Ki-enn'

Mules and Lamas carrying produce.

of the Spanish American colonies, and is the last territory in America from which the Spaniards were driven.

6. The Andes range through the whole extent of Peru. On the coast the climate is hot, and much of the soil is sandy and arid. Rain seldom falls, and thunder and lightning are unknown. On the high table-land, between the ridges of the mountains, the climate is various, and the products of the soil are chiefly those of temperate regions.

7. Along the sea-coast the agriculture is confined chiefly to the banks of the streams which descend from the Andes. Where the soil can be watered, the vegetation is most luxuriant, and surprises the traveller by the pleasing change from the sterility of the desert to the bright verdure that prevails.

8. The chief products are Indian corn, sugar-cane, and cotton, with the fruits of almost every climate. Some valuable dye-woods and medicinal plants are also produced, particularly the Peruvian bark or Cascarilla. Wine and brandy are made to some extent, but wheat and flour are imported from Chili.

9. The silver-mines of Cerro Pasco are the most important now worked in Peru. There are also some mines of gold and mercury. The commerce consists, for the most part, in the interchange of the precious metals for foreign products and manufactures.

---

6. What is said of the Andes? The climate and products? 7. Of the agriculture? The soil? 8 Chief products? 9. The mines?

10. There is a want of good roads and bridges in Peru; and in the intercourse between the sea-ports and the interior of the country, almost every article of trade is carried on the backs of mules and lamas. In the vicinity of Pisco, and close to the shore, are several small islands abounding in the fertilizing manure called guano.

Map No. 17.—What bounds Guiana on the north? A.-On.—The west? Va.—The south and east? Bl.—The principal rivers? Eo. Sm., Mi., Ok.—How long are the three first? How many inhabitanst has Georgetown? Paramaribo? New Amsterdam? Cayenne? What Indians inhabit the south-east part of Guiana? As.

— 143 —

11. At the time of the Spanish conquest, Peru was more extensive than the modern state of the same name. Its kings were called Incas; they were held to be a sacred race, to be descended from the sun, and were adored by the people.

12. The ancient Peruvians were partially civilized, and cultivated the land with much care. They built temples and palaces of stone; were skilful in the art of making vessels of gold and silver, and constructed excellent roads. These people were ignorant of writing, but preserved the memory of remarkable events by means of paintings and knotted cords of various colours.

13. Forty years after the discovery of America, Pizarro, a brave but cruel Spaniard, invaded Peru, at the head of a small army. He put the reigning Inca to death, conquered the country, and established the dominion of his sovereign.

14. Peru, with the other American provinces of Spain, was long governed by viceroys appointed by the kings of that country; but in the year 1821, the people established a government of their own, and with the assistance of the Colombians, achieved their independence in 1824, by the defeat of the last Spanish army at Ayacucho.

15. In the year 1836, Peru was divided into the states of North Peru and South Peru, which, with Bolivia, were formed in the Peru-Bolivian Confederation, under a chief magistrate, styled the Supreme Protector. Three years afterwards, the army of the Confederation was defeated by the Chilians at Yungay, and the Republic was dissolved.

Commerce? 10. Of what is there a want? How are the articles of trade carried? What exists near Pisco?

Q.—11. What did Peru comprise? What is said of its kings? 12. Of the ancient Peruvians? 13. Of Pizarro? 14. Of Peru and the other provinces? When was independence declared? What was achieved at Ayacucho? 15. What took place in 1836? Three years afterwards?

16. Lima, the capital of Peru, is on the small river Rimae, 7 miles from the sea, and is, next to Mexico, the finest city built by the Spaniards in the New World. It is regularly laid out, and contains many handsome public buildings. The churches and convents, though robbed of a great part of their wealth during the revolution, still present a handsome appearance. In walking abroad, the ladies of Lima use a peculiar dress, in which they may disguise themselves so as to remain unknown to their most intimate friends.

Ladies of Lima.

17. Cuzco, the second city in Peru, is situated far in the interior, on one of the head branches of the Amazon river; though much decayed, it is still a handsome place. At the time of the Spanish conquest, it was the metropolis of the ancient empire of Peru. Arequipa is the chief place of trade in the southern part of the Republic. Ilay, its sea-port, is a small village. Pisco is noted for its brandy.

18. Callao, the sea-port of Lima, is strongly fortified. It was the last place held by the Spaniards in South America. At Cerro Pasco, among the Andes, are the richest mines now worked in Peru: the town is elevated 13,000 feet above the level of the sea. Truxillo is a handsome town; Piura is famous for its fine breed of mules; Caxamarca, Huaura, and Caxatambo, all in the interior, are places of some note. Payta, one of the most northern ports, is much frequented by American whale-ships.

19. Guamanga contains a university richly endowed, and Guancavelica is celebrated for its mines of mercury or quicksilver. Puno and Taena are important towns. Arica is the port through which the chief part of the trade of Bolivia is carried on. Here, owing to the heavy surf, all vessels are loaded and unloaded by means of the balsa, a light raft or float, made of inflated seal-skins.

Map No. 17.—What bounds Peru on the north? Er.—South? Ba.—East? Bl., Ba.—West? P.-On.—What mountains extend along the coast? As.—What desert in the south? Aa.—What lake forms part of the eastern boundary? Ta.—Which is the head branch of the Amazon? Ue.—In what lake does it rise? Rs.—How far does sloop navigation extend on it from the sea? What is the population of Lima? Cuzco? Arequipa? Guamanga? Puno? Cerro Pasco? Truxillo? Taena? What are the ports from Oeono to Iquique called? Is.—When was the battle of Ayacucho fought? Of Yungay?

---

16. Describe Lima. What is said of the ladies? 17. Describe Cuzco, &c. 18. Callao, Cerro Pasco, Truxillo, &c. 19. What is said of Guamanga, Puno, &c.? Arica?

— 144 —

BOLIVIA.

1. Bolivia, formerly called Upper Peru, is one of the most important of the South American states that threw off the yoke of Spain. It became independent in 1825, and was named after General Bolivar, the liberator of South America.

2. The most lofty mountains of the New World are in Bolivia; it lies chiefly in the interior, and consists, for the most part, of a high fertile plain on the east side of the Andes, raised from 8,000 to 14,000 feet above the ocean.

3. This elevated territory has cities above the region of the clouds, and cottages situated as high as the top of Mont Blanc. It yields Indian corn, wheat, rye, barley, and potatoes; the latter also grow wild.

4. Cotton, coffee, indigo, and other tropical products are raised in the less elevated districts. Gold, silver, copper, and other metals are found. The silver mines of Potosi have been for nearly 300 years the most renowned in the world.

Condor.

5. Lake Titicaca forms part of the western boundary of Bolivia. It has no visible outlet to the sea, above which it is elevated 12,795 feet. This lake is navigated chiefly by boats made of rushes plaited together; the mast and rudder only are of wood, which, owing to its scarcity here, forms the most valuable part of the vessel.

6. The condor, the largest of the vulture kind, is found in Bolivia and other parts of the continent. Inhabiting the loftiest summits of the Andes, he descends to the lower country only in pursuit of prey. He feeds chiefly on carrion; but also attacks deer and other quadrupeds. The condor is about 3½ feet long from the beak to the end of the tail, and the wings measure in extent from 9 to 13 feet.

Bolivia. Q.—1. What was Bolivia formerly called? What is it? When did it establish its independence? After whom was it named? 2. What are in Bolivia? Of what does it consist? 3. What of its cities and cottages? What does it yield? 4. The other products? What are found, &c.? 5. Describe Lake Titicaca. 6. The condor?

7. Chuquisaca,* or La Plata, the capital, contains a university, well attended, and a public library, said to be the best in South America. La Paz is the largest city in Bolivia, and, though situated in a deep valley, stands at the height of 12,400 feet above the ocean. It contains a cathedral, and several convents and churches.

8. Potosi, the best known city in Bolivia, is elevated 13,000 feet above the sea. It is but indifferently built, and is not so flourishing as it once was. The mountain on which it is situated is one huge silver mine. It yielded in 258 years the vast sum of sixteen hundred millions of dollars; but it is now less productive than formerly.

9. Cochabamba† lies in a fertile and well-cultivated district, and the city carries on a considerable trade in grain, fruits, and vegetables. Cobija, or Puerto de la Mar, is the only sea-port Bolivia possesses. It is a small village, and being situated in a desert country, is of but little importance.

Map No. 17.—What bounds Bolivia on the north? N.-Pu., Bl.—South? B.-As.—East? Bl., Py.—West? S.-Pu.—On what ocean is the south-west part situated? Pc.—Which are the principal rivers? Mc., Bo., Ge., Py., Po., Vo.—How long is each of these? The largest lake? Ta.—How long is it? What two mountains east of Lake Titicaca? Sa., Ii.—These are the highest in South America. How many inhabitants has the capital? La Paz? Cochabamba? Potosi? Oruro? What desert occupies the coast of Bolivia? Aa.—What tribes of Indians are in Bolivia? Ms., Cs., As.

145

CHILI.‡

1. Chili consists of a long, narrow tract of country, situated between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean. The climate is remarkably fine and healthful, and many parts of the country present such romantic scenes, that Chili has been called the Italy, and from its fertility, the garden of South America.

2. Its chief misfortune is that earthquakes are common, and often lay the cities and towns in ruins. Volcanoes are also numerous: among the Andes, fourteen are said to be constantly burning.

---

7. The capital? La Paz? 8. Potosi? 9. Cochabamba? Which is the sea-port of Bolivia?

Chili. Q.—1. Of what does Chili consist? What is said of the climate? What has Chili been called? 2. What is said of earthquakes and volcanoes? 3. Of the soil? Products? Agriculture, &c.?

---

* *Chuquisaca*, Choo-ke-sa'-ka. † *Cochabamba*, Ko-cha-bam'-ba.
‡ *Chili*, Chil'-le.

3. The soil, except in some of the mining districts, is mostly very fertile, and produces the finest wheat and other grains, besides fruits of various kinds, in abundance. Wine is made to some extent, and agriculture and the raising of cattle are actively pursued.

4. The Chilese are a courteous and polite people, and appear to be more industrious and enterprising than most of the other inhabitants of South America. Mines of gold, silver, and copper, are numerous The latter are the most abundant and profitable.

Route over the Andes.

5. Chili exports to Europe and the United States gold, silver, and copper, and to Peru grain and flour. A considerable trade is carried on with Buenos Ayres across the Andes by troops of mules, which convey merchandise, money, &c., to a considerable amount. In traversing these stupendous heights, the animals, and even their drivers, often slip from the narrow, steep roads, which wind among the mountains, and are dashed to pieces on the rocks beneath.

6. The southern part of this territory is inhabited by the Araucanian Indians, a brave and warlike race, who have defended their liberties against the encroachments of the Spaniards ever since their first entrance into the country.

7. Chiloe and the islands in its vicinity belong to this state: also the Juan Fernandez islands. The most eastern of these is noted for having been the solitary residence for several years of Alexander Selkirk, a Scotch sailor, whose adventures gave rise to the well-known story of Robinson Crusoe.

8. Santiago, the capital of Chili, is situated 90 miles from the coast, in a country that abounds in the most sublime and beautiful prospects. The houses are mostly of one story, and surrounded with gardens. The streets are regularly laid out, and many of the public buildings are handsome.

9. Valparaiso is the chief sea-port; it has an excellent harbour, and carries on considerable commerce. Valdivia, Concepcion, and Coquimbo, have all some trade.

---

4. Of the Chilese? Mines? 5. Exports? Trade with Buenos Ayres? 6. Of the southern part of the territory? 7. Chiloe? For what is Juan Fernandez noted? 8. Describe Santiago. 9. Valparaiso, and the other towns?

Map No. 17.—What bounds Chili on the north? Ba.—South? Pa.—East? B.-As.—West? P.-On.—What mountains separate Chili from Buenos Ayres? As.—What island lies south of Chili? Ce.—How long is it? What islands lie west of Valparaiso? J.-Fz.—What island was the residence of Alexander Selkirk? M.-Ta.—What islands lie north of Juan Fernandez? S.-Fx.—What is the population of Santiago? Valparaiso? Concepcion? * Quillota? Santa Rosa? S. Felipe? Valdivia? Copiapo?

— 146 —

THE EMPIRE OF BRAZIL.

1. Brazil was once a Portuguese colony, but is now an independent empire, second only in extent to the empires of Russia and China. It comprises almost half the area of South America, is more than twenty-five times the size of the British Islands, and rather larger than the United States.

2. It is the only part of the New World that was ever governed by an European sovereign in person. The King of Portugal reigned here from the year 1808 until 1821, when Brazil was declared an independent monarchy, the sovereign assuming the title of Emperor.

3. Brazil is one of the finest regions in the world, and enjoys great natural advantages, in the fertility of its soil, the variety of its vegetable products, and the value of its minerals.

4. The interior is very thinly settled, and much of it is yet covered

Crossing a Brazilian River.

Brazil. Q.—1. What is said of Brazil? What does it comprise? How does it compare with the British Islands and the United States? 2. How was it governed? What king reigned here, &c.? 3. What is Brazil? What does it enjoy? 4. What is said of the interior? How

* *Quillota*, Keel-yo'ta,

with dense forests. Roads are rare; and the numerous streams are destitute of bridges, and, in many cases, of ferry-boats. The rivers are generally crossed on rafts; while the horse is made to swim.

5. The people are mostly ignorant and indolent. Nearly all the labour is performed by Negro slaves, who constitute three-fifths of the population. The Portuguese is the language spoken in Brazil.

6. Agriculture is in a backward state. Manufactures scarcely exist; but commerce is actively carried on. Sugar, cotton, coffee, hides, and other products, are exported chiefly to the United States, Great Britain, and Portugal.

7. Brazil is rich in gold and precious stones, and is the country which, next to Mexico and Peru, has furnished the greatest amount of precious metals. The diamond mines are worked on account of the government, and supply nearly all the diamonds of commerce.

8. Cattle multiply to an immense extent, especially in the region called the Sertam; and in the extensive plains in the south, near Rio Grande, some of the large farms have from 20,000 to 40,000 head.

9. The western part of Brazil is called Amazonia; although not a political division, the name has been long in use, and originated from the reports of the early explorers of a nation of Amazons, or female warriors, residing on the banks of the Amazon river.

10. Rio Janeiro, on the bay of the same name, is the capital of Brazil, and the most populous city in South America. Its harbour is visited

Palace of San Christovao.

---

are the rivers crossed? 5. What are the people? 6. What is said of agriculture? Manufactures? Commerce? 7. In what is Brazil rich? What is said of the precious metals? Diamonds? 8. Of cattle? 9. The western part of Brazil? How did the name, Amazon, originate? 10. Describe Rio Janeiro.

by the vessels of almost every commercial nation. The city is built much in the European style, but the streets are rather narrow. The Emperor's country palace, near the city, is called San Christovao, being of a light and rural style of architecture: it has a very pleasing effect.

11. Bahia, Pernambuco, Maranham, Para, and Rio Grande, are all important sea-ports. Tejuco, in the interior, is the chief town, and centre of the diamond district. Villa Rica, Villa Boa, and Cuyaba, are each surrounded by mining districts.

Map No. 17.—What bounds Brazil on the north? Va., Ga., A.-On. — East? A.-On. — West? Va., Er., Pu., Ba., Py., Uy. — Which are the principal rivers that flow into the Atlantic ocean? An., Pa., Pa., S.-Fo. — How long are they? How wide is the Amazon river at its mouth? Which are the chief branches of the Amazon? Xu., Ts., Ma., No., Ca.—How long are they? How far is the Amazon navigable for ships? For sloops? How far can sloops ascend the Madeira from the sea? What mountains extend along the coast? Bn. — How long are they? What are the chief Indian tribes that inhabit Brazil? Ts., Ms., Bs., Gs., Cs., Xs., Cs., Bs. — What island at the mouth of the Amazon? Js. — How long is it? What land was first seen by Cabral, the discoverer of Brazil, in the year 1500? What is the population of Rio Janeiro? Bahia? Pernambuco? Cuyaba? Sergippe del Rey? What towns have 20,000 inhabitants each? Pa., Mm., Ai., S.-Pl., V.-Ba. — What district east of the St. Francisco river? Dd.

147

BUENOS AYRES.

1. The states comprising the Republic of Buenos Ayres were the first in South America that threw off the yoke of Spain. At their declaration of independence, in 1816, they were, including the Banda Oriental, called the United Provinces of the Rio de la Plata; afterwards the Argentine Republic, and, finally, the present name was adopted.

2. The surface of the country consists of vast plains, called pampas, which stretch from the Atlantic ocean to the

---

11. Which are important sea-ports? What is said of Tejuco, Villa Rica, &c.?

Buenos Ayres. Q.—1. What states first threw off the yoke of Spain? When did they declare their independence? What were they first called? What afterwards? 2. How far do the pampas stretch? 3.

Gauchos catching Cattle with the Lasso.

Andes, and from north to south through the whole extent of the territory.

3. They are chiefly destitute of trees, and covered with high grass. Numerous herds of horses, mules, and cattle, range over them. The rhea, or American ostrich, with the jaguar, and several kinds of deer, also, abound on these plains.

4. The Gauchos, or inhabitants of the pampas, lead a life of rude independence. They have no care in rearing or feeding cattle; but have only to catch them with the lasso, or long leather noose, to kill, or drive them to Buenos Ayres; and, in the case of horses, to break and mark them, that they may be afterwards known.

5. Beef is the principal food used on the pampas; neither grain nor vegetables are cultivated; nor is the cow often made to give milk. Horses are so numerous and cheap, that every one rides; even the beggar begs on horseback.

6. Wheat and barley are raised in the immediate vicinity of Buenos Ayres, Mendoza, and some other towns, but in a very slovenly manner: the grain being threshed by making cattle gallop over it. Fuel is so scarce, that the people make their fires with dried thistles; also, with the bones, fat, and dung of animals.

7. Buenos Ayres, the capital, is situated on the south bank of the

---

Of what are they destitute? What graze on them? What also abounds? 4. What of the Gauchos? How do they catch cattle? 5. What food is used on the pampas? What is said of horses? 6. Of wheat and barley? Of fuel? 7. Describe Buenos Ayres. 8. Cordova. and Mendoza.

Buenos Ayres.

Rio de la Plata, about 200 miles from the sea. It is the centre of trade for this part of South America, and carries on an extensive commerce with the United States and Great Britain, exporting to them large quantities of hides, horns, and tallow.

8. Cordova and Mendoza, in the interior, are noted, the first for its university, the only one in this region, and the last for its wine and brandy, and its trade with Chili, which is carried on across the Andes by means of vast droves of mules.

Map No. 17. — What country lies north of Buenos Ayres? Ba. East? Py., Uy. — West? Ci. — South? Pa. — What mountains separate Buenos Ayres from Chili? As. — What river from Patagonia? R.-No. — From Uruguay? R.-Pa., Uy. — From Paraguay? Py., Pa. — What is the length of the Rio de la Plata? Parana? Paraguay? Colorado? Rio Negro? Saladillo? Salado, and Vermejo rivers? How wide is the Rio de la Plata at its mouth? How far is it navigable for ships? How far is the Paraguay, for sloops? What is the population of Buenos Ayres? Of Cordova? San Juan? Mendoza?

— 148 —

PARAGUAY.

1. Paraguay is a fine fertile district, situated between the Paraguay and Parana rivers. The population is composed chiefly of Indians and Mestizoes, not more than one-twentieth part being whites. Vast herds of cattle and horses feed on its rich plains.

Paraguay. Q. — 1. What is Paraguay? What is said of the popu-

2. This state declared its independence in 1813: shortly afterwards, Dr. Francia, a native Creole, assumed the powers of a Dictator, and ruled the people according to his own will. He died in the year 1840.

3. This singular man lived without pomp or parade, and, though he sometimes acted with severity, maintained his power unimpaired to the last. Under his government, the inhabitants were taught reading, writing, and arithmetic. Every one was obliged to work at some occupation, and idleness and beggary were unknown.

4. Maté, or Paraguay tea, is the most celebrated production of this region, and has been long used in a manner somewhat similar to the tea of China, over a great part of South America.

5. Assumpcion, the capital, is an irregularly built town, on the east bank of the Paraguay river, 1000 miles from the sea. Itapua, Curuguaty, and Villa Rica, are the next important towns.

URUGUAY.

6. The Republic of Uruguay was formerly called the Banda Oriental, and was attached to the United Provinces of the Rio de la Plata. It was afterwards, for a time, claimed by Brazil; but in 1828, at the close of a bloody war between the Brazilians and the Buenos Ayreans, the two parties agreed to its becoming an independent state.

7. Montevideo,* the capital, stands on the north bank of the Rio de la Plata, and has the best harbour on that river. It exports great quantities of hides, &c. The country around this city is fertile, though but poorly cultivated. Maldonado and Colonia are small towns on the Rio de la Plata.

8. On the upper part of the Uruguay river are the remains of the Missions formed by the Jesuits. These contained at one time thirty towns, and 100,000 Indians, who were converted from idolatry, instructed in farming and some of the useful arts, and disciplined as soldiers after the European manner. But the towns are now decayed, and the inhabitants reduced to less than one-tenth of their former numbers.

---

lation? 2. Of the state? Dr. Francia? 3. Of the inhabitants? 4. What is the most celebrated production? 5. Describe Assumpcion, and the other towns.

Uruguay. Q. — 6. What was Uruguay formerly called? To what was it attached? By what power was it claimed? What occurred in 1828? 7. Describe the capital. The other towns. 8. By whom were

---

* *Montevideo*, Mon-te-vid'-e-o.

Map No. 17.—What river forms the east and south boundary of Paraguay? Pa. — The west boundary? Py. — What tropic extends nearly through the middle of Paraguay? Cn. — How many inhabitants has the capital? The other towns? How far is the Paraguay navigable?

What bounds Uruguay on the north? Bl. — On the south? R.-Pa. —West? Uy.-R. — East? Bl. — How long is the Uruguay river? R. — Negro? What is the population of the capital? Of Maldonado? How far is it from Uruguay to the Cape of Good Hope?

— 149 —

Sailors killing seals. Penguins.

PATAGONIA.

1. Patagonia, the southern division of South America, has never been explored except along the coast. The chief part of it appears to be a cold, barren, and desert region.

2. It is very thinly inhabited by various tribes of Indians, who are said to be excellent horsemen, and are usually described as a nation of giants. They hunt the rhea, or American ostrich, which abounds in the northern part of their country.

3. Terra del Fuego, lying south of Patagonia, is peopled by a race of miserable savages, in the lowest state of wretchedness.

---

the Missions formed? The Jesuits were an order of Catholic priests, who established Missions in various parts of the world. What is said of the Indians? The towns?

Patagonia. Q. — 1. What is Patagonia? What does the chief part appear to be? 2. By whom is it inhabited? What is said of them? 3. By whom is Terra del Fuego peopled?

SOUTH AMERICAN ISLANDS.

4. SOUTH-EAST from Patagonia are several groups of islands, scattered at various distances from the continent. They comprise the Falkland Islands, South Georgia, and Sandwich Land.

5. The climate of these islands is cold and severe, and their shores are rugged and barren. They are very seldom visited, and, except the Falkland group, are uninhabited.

6. The latter comprises the East and West Falklands, with many smaller islands: they contain some good harbours, which afford shelter to the ships that navigate the southern seas. Great Britain took possession of these islands in 1833, and established a small settlement and garrison at Port Louis, where the governor also resides. Peat for fuel is abundant, as well as cattle and horses. These animals were first brought from Buenos Ayres, and are now become wild.

7. Farther to the south are the islands of South Shetland, South Orkney, Palmer's Land, and Graham's Land. These have all been discovered since the year 1819.

8. They are desolate, sterile regions, covered even in mid-summer with ice and snow, and are untenanted by a single human being. Their shores abound to some extent with the fur-seal, and sea-elephant, besides vast numbers of penguins.

9. Vessels from Stonington and other ports in New England have frequented these islands for the purpose of procuring seals, the furs of which are very fine and valuable, but so many have been destroyed, that they are now less abundant.

Map No. 17. — How is Patagonia bounded? Which are its chief rivers? Cs., P.-De. — What tribes inhabit it? Ps., Ms. — What islands lie to the eastward? Fd. — What straits separate this region from Terra del Fuego? Mn. — What island on the west coast? Wn. — What island east of Terra del Fuego? S.-Ld. — What celebrated Cape south of Terra del Fuego? Hn. — This cape is the southern extremity of Hermit's Island.

Map No. 1. — Western hemisphere. — Which is the most northern, Graham's Land, or the Falkland Isles? F.-Is. — The most southern? G.-Ld. — Which are the most eastern islands? S.-Ld. — Which is the most distant from Patagonia? S.-Ld.

South American Isles. Q. — 4. What do these islands comprise? 5. What is said of the climate? What do the Falkland Islands contain? 6. What do the latter comprise? Contain? What is said of Great Britain? Of peat? Cattle and horses? 7. What is farther to the south? 8. What are they covered with? In what do their shores abound? 9. What is said of vessels from Stonington, &c.?

— 150 —

EUROPE.

1. EUROPE, though the smallest of the three great divisions of the eastern continent, is the first in importance, the most thickly peopled, and the best cultivated.

2. In modern times it has been the point from which civilization and knowledge have been extended to other nations, and its emigrants have peopled all the civilized countries of the other parts of the world.

3. Europe is deeply penetrated by large inland seas, and numerous gulfs, which afford great natural advantages for commercial pursuits. Its interior regions are well watered, though none of the rivers are of the first magnitude. The principal rivers are the Volga, Don, Dnieper, Danube, Tagus, Loire, Rhine, Rhone, Elbe, and Vistula.

4. Though the surface of Europe is greatly diversified, yet the mountains are inferior in extent and elevation to those of Asia and America. The principal ranges are the Dofrafields, Alps, Carpathians, Apennines, and Pyrenees.

Europe. Q.—1. What is Europe? 2. What has it been in modern times? 3. How is it penetrated? What is said of its interior regions? Which are the principal rivers? 4. What is said of the mountains?

Wild Scottish Ox.

Wild Musmon Sheep.

5. The native animals of Europe are less in number than those of some of the other quarters of the earth. The horse, ass, dog, and cat, came originally from Asia; but the ox and the sheep are, probably, of native origin. A few of the wild Scottish oxen are still preserved in parks in the north of England; and the musmon, or wild sheep, is found in Sardinia and Corsica.

Bearded Vulture.

Golden Eagle.

6. The birds of Europe comprise a number of different kinds, many of which also abound in the neighbouring regions. The bearded vulture is the largest of the European birds of prey. It is found among the highest summits of the Alps, and destroys sheep, lambs, goats, and other animals. The golden eagle frequents the British isles, and the adjacent parts; while the bustard, crane, stork, flamingo, spoonbill, and pelican, are met with in various quarters. The turkey was brought from America, the peacock and common fowl from Asia, and the guinea-fowl from Africa.

7. The cultivation of the soil has been carried, in many parts of Europe, to great perfection, and has been rendered highly productive in all the necessaries, and most of the

---

5. Of the animals? 6 Birds? 7. Of cultivation?, 8. Manufactures?

luxuries of life. Grain of various kinds is raised in all quarters, except in the extreme north; while the vine, olive, mulberry, and orange, flourish in the south.

8. The amount and variety of the manufactures of the European nations are unrivalled; and by means of the extensive commerce carried on by the maritime states, they are distributed over almost every quarter of the globe.

— 151 —

9. Though Europe was the latest portion of the eastern continent that received the light of civilization, yet it is now the centre of refinement and learning. The most useful inventions, the finest productions of genius, and the improvement of all the sciences, belong to the people of this region.

10. Universities and colleges are numerous in almost all European countries. These provide for the higher branches of learning, and are generally on a larger scale than any in America. Some of them are endowed with extensive funds, valuable libraries, and botanic gardens; and attract many students from various quarters, of whom, some are from our own country, and other parts of the world.

11. In several parts of Europe, the common branches of school education are much neglected, and the lower orders of the people are not so well instructed as in the United States. Numbers of them are unable to read or write; and in some countries they are extremely ignorant and bigoted.

12. Schools for instructing the poorer classes are most numerous in Prussia, Switzerland, Holland, Belgium, and Scotland. In the latter country, more of the people receive a learned education than elsewhere. England, Germany and France, excel in literature and science.

13. In almost every part of Europe, great distinctions of rank prevail between the upper and lower classes of society. Orders of nobility are established everywhere, except in Switzerland, Norway, and Turkey. Nearly all the individ

---

9. What is said of Europe? 10. Of universities and colleges? 11. Common branches of education? 12. Where are schools most numer-

uals belonging to these reside in splendid mansions, and enjoy every luxury which money can procure; whilst the poorer classes lodge in mean cottages, and earn a very scanty subsistence by the labour of their hands.

14. The religion of Europe is almost entirely Christian, except in Turkey, where the Mahomedan system is established. The Christian church comprises three great divisions; the Catholic, the Protestant, and the Greek church. The adherents of the first amount to about 128 millions, the second to 61 millions, and the last 54 millions. There are also about $5\frac{1}{2}$ millions of Mahomedans, and $2\frac{1}{2}$ millions of Jews.

15. Europe comprises 58 independent states. Of these, 3 are Empires, 15 Kingdoms, 7 Grand Duchies, 1 Electorate, 10 Duchies, 1 Landgraviate, 11 Principalities, 1 Ecclesiastical State, and 9 Republics. The population of the whole is about 250 millions.

16. The states which rank highest in importance are, Great Britain, France, Russia, Austria, and Prussia. These are called the five Great Powers. They direct and control the affairs of the whole continent, and, more or less, influence the destinies of every civilized nation.

152

Map No. 18. — How is Europe bounded? Which is its largest city and river?

Norway ...	Bounded?—Capital?	France	Bounded?—Capital?
Sweden ...	Bounded?—Capital?	Spain	Bounded?—Capital?
Russia	Bounded?—Capital?	Portugal ..	Bounded?—Capital?
Denmark ..	Bounded?—Capital?	Austria ...	Bounded?—Capital?
Holland ...	Bounded?—Capital?	Prussia	Bounded?—Capital?
Belgium ...	Bounded?—Capital?	Switzerland	Bounded?—Capital?
England ...	Bounded?—Capital?	Italy	Bounded?—Capital?
Scotland ...	Bounded?—Capital?	Turkey ...	Bounded?—Capital?
Ireland	Bounded?—Capital?	Greece	Bounded?—Capital?

Where is the White sea? Baltic sea? North sea? Irish sea? Mediterranean sea? Black sea? Sea of Azov? Sea of Marmora? How long is each of these seas? Where is the Archipelago?

Where is the gulf of Bothnia? G. of Finland? G. of Venice? How long are each of these? Where is the gulf of Dantzick? G. of Lyons? G. of Genoa? G. of Taranto? Where is the bay of Biscay? Where is the Cattegat? The Skager Rack? St. George's Channel? English Ch.? North Ch.? Channel of Constantinople?

---

ous? 13. What is said of the distinctions of rank? 14. Of religion? How is it divided? 15 What does Europe comprise? 16. Which states rank highest?

Where is the strait of Dover? S. of Otranto? S. of the Dardanelles? S. of Enikale? S. of Gibraltar?* How many miles wide is the last?

Where is the Petchora river? The Dwina? Onega? Tornea? Dal? Duna? Niemen? Vistula? Oder? Elbe? Weser? Rhine? Thames? Shannon? Seine? Loire? Garonne? Douro? Tagus? Guadiana? Guadalquivir? Ebro? Rhone? Po? Danube? Dniester? Bog? Dnieper? Don? Volga? How long is each of these rivers?

Where is lake Onega? Ladoga? Peipus? Wener? Wetter? Geneva? How long is each of these lakes?

Where is the peninsula of Jutland? Of the Morea? The Crimea? What peninsula south of the Bay of Biscay? Sn., Pl.—West of the Gulf of Venice? Iy.

Where is cape Sviatoi? North C.? The Naze? C. Clear? Land's End? C. Finisterre? C. St. Vincent? C. de Gatt? C. Teulada? C. Passaro? C. Matapan?

Where is Iceland? The Loffoden islands? Faroe isles? Shetland? Orkney? Hebrides, or Western isles? British isles? Isle of Man? Anglesea? Scilly islands? Balearic Is.? Majorca? Minorca? Ivica? Corsica? Sardinia? Elba? Lipari Is.? Sicily? Malta? Ionian isles? Corfu? Cephalonia? Zante? Cerigo? Candia? Milo? Naxio? Negropont? Lemnos? Where is Aland? Dago? Oesel? Gothland? Oland? Rugen? Zealand? Funen?

Where are the Scandinavian mountains? Dovrefield? Ural? Pyrenees? Cevennes? Auvergne? Cantabrian? Sierra Morena? Sierra Nevada? Alps? Apennines? Carpathian? Balkan? Tell the length of the range, and the heights of those that have figures attached to them.

What people in the northern part of Russia? Ss.—What three races are partly in Europe, and partly in Asia? Bs., Ks., Cs.

How many miles from Iceland to Norway? From Norway to Greenland? Scotland to Labrador? Ireland to Labrador? England to Newfoundland? France to Canada? France to Nova Scotia?

153

SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

1. Sweden and Norway are now united into one kingdom, and are under the control of the same sovereign. The government is a limited monarchy. Each state has its particular constitution, its own laws, and a national legislature.

Sweden and Norway. Q.—1. What are Sweden and Norway?

* Seamen call this passage, by way of eminence, the 'Straits.' A ship bound for the Mediterranean sea, is said to "go through the 'Straits.' or up the 'Straits.'"

2. This region, the ancient Scandinavia, forms a vast peninsula, bounded on the one side by the Atlantic ocean, and on the other by the Baltic sea. The climate, though severe in winter, is healthful; and many of the inhabitants, especially of Norway, live to a great age. Extensive forests cover a large part of the country, and but a small portion of it is suited to agriculture.

3. Formerly, grain was seldom raised in sufficient quantities to supply the wants of the people; and in the northern districts, pine bark or moss was sometimes mixed with flour, in making bread, to increase the quantity; but that is no longer the case, and grain is often exported. The southern sections are the most fertile, and produce potatoes, barley, oats, rye, and some tobacco.

4. Sweden has but few manufactures, and Norway still fewer. The working of the mines, the cutting of timber, and the fisheries, form the chief branches of industry. The commerce is active and extensive. The chief exports are iron, steel, copper, timber, and fish.

5. The habits, manners, and characters of the Swedes and Norwegians have much resemblance. They are lively and cheerful in disposition, polite and hospitable to strangers, and are strongly attached to their respective countries.

6. The religion of both nations is the Lutheran. Education is general, and the chief part of the lower orders of the people are able to read and write. Amongst the peasantry, every man is his own carpenter, shoemaker, blacksmith, &c.

NORWAY.

7. Norway was united to Denmark in the year 1380, and continued to form part of the Danish monarchy until 1814, when it was annexed to Sweden. It is one of the most mountainous countries in Europe; and abounds in sublime and romantic scenery.

8. Near the Loffoden islands there is a terrific whirlpool in the sea, called the Malstrom or Maelstrom, which sometimes draws in ships, as well as whales and other animals, and dashes them on the rocks beneath.

9. Christiania, which stands at the head of Christiania firth or gulf, 25 miles from the sea, is the capital of Norway, and the seat of the storthig, or national legislature. It contains a university, a cathedral, a palace,

---

What is the government? 2. What does this region form? What is said of forests? 3. Grain, &c.? 4. Of manufactures? What are the chief branches of industry? Of the commerce? 5. The habits, manners, &c.? 6. Religion?

7. When was Norway united to Denmark? Annexed to Sweden? 8. Describe the Malstrom. 9. Christiania, Bergen, &c.

several churches, and other public buildings. Its trade is chiefly in timber, tar, and the produce of the mines. Bergen and Drontheim are the next important towns. Hammerfest, on the island of Qualoe, is the most northern town in Europe.

Christiania.

Map No. 18. — What bounds Norway on the north? A.-On. — South? S.-Rk. — East? Sn. — West? A.-On. — What mountains on the east? Dd. — How long and high are they? What islands north of the Arctic circle? Ln. — Which is the chief river? Gn. — How long is it? What is the population of Bergen? Christiania? Drontheim? Kongsberg? Which extends farthest north, Norway or Sweden? Ny.

154

SWEDEN.

1. Sweden, though enclosed by high mountains on the north and west, is, in general, a flat country, much diversified by lakes and rivers. The northern provinces are barren, and thinly peopled; while the southern are much more fertile, containing some thickly settled and well-cultivated districts.

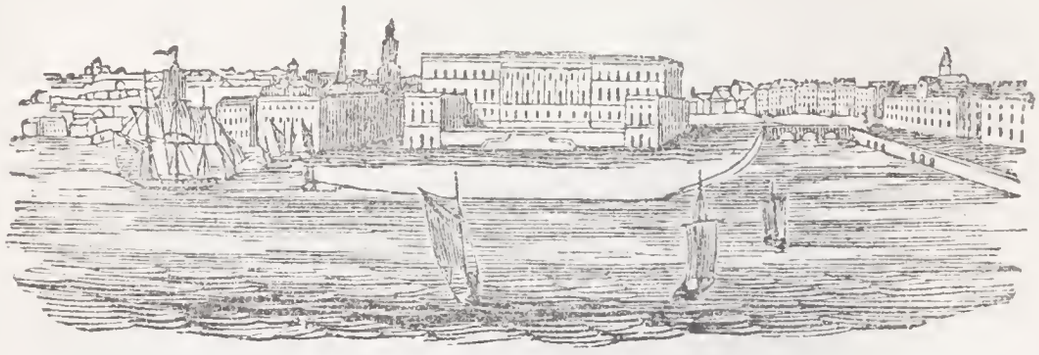
2. In science, the Swedes have attained considerable distinction. They have cultivated, with great ardour, botany, chemistry, and mineralogy; and their learned men are particularly well versed in the languages of other nations. They have also, at different periods, been noted for their martial spirit, and, under some of their kings, have acquired great military renown.

3. Stockholm, the capital is built on several small islands and peninsulas, near the entrance of Lake Malar into the Baltic sea. It has a

---

Sweden. Q. — 1. What is said of Sweden? 2. Of science, &c.? 3. Describe Stockholm. 4. Gottenburg, &c. Islands in the Baltic, &c.

safe and commodious harbour, and an extensive trade. The city contains the royal palace, and a number of other public buildings. The hangar, or great iron warehouse, is remarkable for the immense quantity of that article deposited in it.



Stockholm.

4. Gottenburg is the second town in Sweden, in trade and population. Carlscrona is the station of the Swedish navy. Upsal is noted for its university, and Fahlun for its copper-mines. Several islands in the Baltic sea belong to Sweden, as does also the island of St. Bartholomew in the West Indies.

Laplanders Travelling.

LAPLAND.

5. Lapland is a cold, desolate region, lying north of the Arctic circle. It belongs, nominally, to Sweden and Russia; but such are the sterility of the soil and the poverty of the people, that they are left to themselves, and are not under the cognizance of any general government.

6. The Laplanders are of short stature, being generally under five feet in height. They are a simple, harmless people; greatly attached to their native country, and are never known to leave it. War is their aversion, and no instance has ever occurred of any of them becoming soldiers.

---

5. What is said of Lapland? What is said of the soil, and people?

7. The reindeer, which they train to draw them in sledges over the snow, form their riches. The flesh and milk comprise their food, and the skins their furniture and clothing. The Laplanders move about from place to place, with their herds of reindeer, and seldom reside in towns.

8. In summer, they live in tents, and in winter, in rude huts, formed of stones and earth, and covered with turf. The villages are very small, seldom containing more than 100 or 200 inhabitants; and the whole nation, though occupying a country almost as large as France, does not exceed 30,000 individuals.

Laplander's Tent.

9. These people have been nearly all converted to Christianity, and are, generally, attached to its duties. Among them, great crimes are unknown. They never use profane language; and observe the sabbath very strictly.

Map No. 18. — What bounds Sweden on the north and west? D.-Ms. — East? G.-Ba., B.-Sa. — South? B.-Sa. — Which are the principal rivers of Sweden? Ta., Kx., La., Sa., Il., La., Dl., Ca. — Tell the length of each of these. The chief lakes. Mr., Wr., Wr. — How long are the two last? What is the population of Stockholm? Gottenburg? Gefle? Carlscrona? Calmar? Upsal? and Fahlun?

— 155 —

RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

1. The Russian Empire comprises nearly one-half of Europe and Asia, and part of North America. It reaches half-way round the globe, and embraces one-seventh of the land surface of the earth, and the one-twenty-seventh part of its entire surface.

2. This state has been much increased within the last

---

6. Describe the Laplanders. 7. What is said of the reindeer? 8. How do the Laplanders live in summer? In winter? What is said of the villages? Of the whole nation? 9. To what have the people been converted?

Russian Empire. Q.—1. What does the Russian Empire comprise? How far does it reach, &c.? 2. What is said of its increase? Of its

Russian Army.

80 years, by the annexation of Finland, a great part of Poland, and various districts of Turkey and Persia. Its population, which, a little more than 100 years ago, was only 15 millions, is now four times that amount.

3. The inhabitants consist of a greater variety of different nations, than is to be found under any other government in the world. The chief races in European Russia are Russians, Poles, Finns, Tartars, and Cossacks. The latter form, in time of war, a most efficient part of the Russian army.

4. The established religion is that of the Greek church, but all others are tolerated; and there are to be found in Russia, Catholics, Protestants, Mahomedans, Jews, and Pagans. The government is an absolute monarchy. The Emperor is the head of church and state, and is styled the Autocrat of all the Russias. All power emanates from him, and he is conceived to derive his authority from God alone.

5. The military force of this empire has long been the largest in Europe. The regular army amounts to almost 600,000 men. The naval force consists of between 200 and 300 vessels of various kinds, of which 50 are ships of the line.

---

population 100 years ago? 3. Of what do the inhabitants consist? Name the chief races. 4. What is said of the religion? Government? The Emperor? 5. Military force? Army? Navy? 6. The com-

6. The commerce is extensive, and is increasing. The exports are tallow, hemp, sail-cloth, iron, timber, and grain. The manufactures have hitherto been rude, and chiefly confined to fabrics of hemp and flax; but of late years, cotton, silk, and woollen goods of various kinds have been made to some extent, as well as glass-ware, porcelain, paper, &c.

7. Gold and platina are found in the Ural mountains, and silver in Siberia, and copper, lead, and iron are met with in various quarters. The value of the precious metals mined in 1847 amounted to 25 million dollars. Salt is extensively made, especially in the Crimea.

8. Great fairs are held in different places, which attract vast crowds of merchants and traders from all parts. The inland commerce is much facilitated by the numerous rivers, canals, and lakes; and by the snow, in the winter season, over which sleighs travel with great rapidity. The chief internal trade is with China, Persia, Tartary, Turkey, &c. Several rail-roads are now in progress of construction.

9. The seal and sturgeon fisheries of the river Volga, and of the Caspian and Black seas, are extensive and very productive. Upwards of 10,000 fishing-boats are employed on the Volga alone. A Steam Navigation Company has been formed, for the purpose of introducing steam-vessels upon the various seas, lakes, and rivers of this empire.

10. The great body of the Russian people is divided into two classes, nobles and slaves. The former are often enormously wealthy, and live in great luxury and splendour; the latter are the property of the nobles, who reckon the value of their estates, not by the number of acres, but of slaves.

11. The slaves, or boors, are, for the most part, grossly ignorant. They are rude in their manners, filthy in their habits, and much addicted to intoxication. Yet some of them possess great facility of imitation, and have been found capable of copying some of the finest works of art.

12. In education and refinement, Russia is greatly behind the rest of Europe, but is believed to be advancing. Considerable exertions are made by the government to introduce schools, and instruct the lower orders of the people. There are seven universities, and numerous seminaries of the higher class.

---

merce? Manufactures? 7. What is said of gold, &c.? Silver? Copper, &c.? Salt? 8. Of fairs? Inland commerce? 9. Fisheries, &c.? 10. How is the people divided? What is said of the nobles? The slaves? 11. Describe the slaves. 12 Of education, &c.

— 156 —

Russians leaving Moscow.

RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

Russia in Europe is an extensive region. It stretches from the Baltic sea to the Ural Mountains, and is about equal in area to all the other European states. The surface is generally level; its chief features being vast plains and large rivers, with numerous lakes in the north-western quarter.

2. In the northern provinces, it is intensely cold in winter, and mostly barren; while in the southern the climate is mild and pleasant, and the soil is, in general, highly productive, yielding large crops of wheat, rye, oats, &c.

3. The cold and dreary islands of Nova Zembla and Spitzbergen, belong to Russia; they lie northward of the Arctic circle, and are not inhabited. They abound with white bears, reindeer, seals, &c., and are resorted to by hunters and fishermen. The islands of Aland, Dago, and Oesel, in the Baltic sea, also form part of this empire.

Russia in Europe. Q.—1. What is said of this country? Of the surface? 2. The northern parts? Southern? 3. Of Nova Zembla and Spitzbergen? What of Aland, &c.? 4. What is said of the

4. Vast forests abound in various parts of Russia. These furnish Riga and Memel with large supplies of timber, pitch, tar, &c., which are sent to other parts of Europe. The habitations of the lower orders, especially in the villages, are formed of the rough trunks of trees, and resemble piles of logs, rather than human habitations.

Russian Village.

5. St. Petersburg, the capital of Russia, is situated at the confluence of the river Neva with the Gulf of Finland. It was founded in 1703, by Peter the Great, and is now a magnificent city, with numerous palaces, churches, and other edifices. It is the principal place of commerce for the empire, and the seat of its learning and science.

6. Moscow, the old capital, was one of the largest cities in Europe. It is noted for the great conflagration in 1812, on the approach of the French under Napoleon. It is now nearly rebuilt. One of its curiosities is the great bell, the largest in the world; it is 67 feet round, 19 feet high, and weighs nearly 200 tons. Among the public buildings are the Kremlin, and the church of St. Basil; the latter is remarkable for the peculiar style of its architecture.

Church of St. Basil.

7. Cronstadt, on an island in the Gulf of Finland, 22 miles from the capital, is the chief station of the Russian navy: it is noted for its extensive fortifications, docks, arsenals, &c. Riga and Memel, on the Baltic, Archangel, on the White, and Odessa, on the Black sea, are important sea-ports. The latter carries on a great trade in wheat. Sevastopol is the chief station of the Russian fleets in the Black sea.

8. Tula is noted for its great manufactory of fire-arms. Novgorod was 400 years ago the largest city of northern Europe. Keiv was the capital of Russia when it was only a Grand Duchy. Wilna was the capital of Lithuania, and Kazan of western Tartary. Narva, Poltava, and Borodino were noted battle-fields; the first two battles were fought

---

forests? Of the habitations, &c.? 5. Describe St. Petersburg. 6. Moscow. The great bell. 7. Cronstadt, and the other towns. 8. Tula, Novgorod, &c. What is said of Narva &c.?

between the Swedes and Russians, and the latter between the French and Russians, during the invasion by the Emperor Napoleon.

Map No. 18.—What bounds Russia on the north? A.-On.—What seas on the south? Bk., Av.—What sea and gulf on the west? Bc., Ba.—What Mts. on the east? Ul.—What rivers form the south-east boundary? Va., Dn.—What rivers flow into the White sea? Me., Da., Oa.—The gulf of Riga? Da.—Gulf of Dantzick? Va.—Sea of Azov? Dn.—Black sea? Dr., Bg., Dr.—Tell the length of all these rivers. Which are the three principal lakes? Oa., La., Ps.—How long is each? What is the population of St. Petersburg? Moscow? Kazan? Cronstadt? Odessa? Riga? Wilna? Orel? Warsaw? Cracow? Lublin? On what gulf is St. Petersburg? Cronstadt? and Revel? Fd.—How long is it? How long is the gulf of Bothnia? White sea? Black sea? On what river is Moscow? The other chief cities? When were the battles of Narva, Poltava, and Borodino fought?

157

POLAND.

1. Poland, once an important state, was conquered and divided, in the year 1795, between Russia, Prussia, and Austria. In 1815, the central part of Poland was erected into a kingdom, subject to the Emperor of Russia, who, in consequence, added to his title that of King of Poland.

2. The tyranny of the Russians proving odious to the Poles, they, in the year 1830, attempted a revolution; but, after defeating their oppressors in several battles, were at length overpowered, and forced to submit. Poland is now merged in Russia, and no longer exists as a separate state.

3. Many of the Polish patriots, preferring exile and poverty abroad, to oppression at home, have emigrated to other parts of the world, and some now reside in the United States. During the war of the American Revolution, two Polish generals of distinction, Kosciusko and Pulaski, came to this country, and took part with the Americans in the contest with Great Britain.

4. The people, as in Russia, are divided into two classes, nobles and slaves. The nobles, who are more numerous than in any other country in Europe, have always, in the eye of the world, formed the people of Poland. They are brave, frank, and hospitable, and so lively in their manners, that they have been compared to the French.

Poland. Q.—1. What was Poland? What took place in 1815? 2. In 1830? 3. What is said of the Polish patriots? What officers came to this country? 4. How are the people divided? 5. Of the

5. Some of the nobles possess, as in Russia, vast estates, and live in splendour; while the peasants inhabit wretched hovels, and are ignorant, bigoted, and dirty. The Jews are more numerous in this country than elsewhere. They are industrious, but crafty, and carry on all the trade and commerce of the country. These people enjoy more political freedom here than in any of the neighbouring states.

6. The climate of Poland is cool and moist, yet the soil is so productive in grain, that the annual export has been estimated at sixteen million bushels. Cattle, hemp, flax, wax, and honey, are also exported.

7. Education, except amongst the wealthy, is limited, only 1 in 60 being instructed. The Russian government has lately enacted that every child attending school shall be taught the Russian language.

8. Warsaw was the capital of Poland. It has suffered greatly from the sieges and bombardments it has sustained. This place presents the same contrast, common in the cities of Poland and Russia, of splendid palaces and mean hovels, adjoining each other. Lublin is noted for its fairs, to which traders resort from all quarters.

9. Republic of Cracow. — This little republic was formed in 1815, and comprised the city of Cracow, with a territory of 500 square miles, and 131,000 inhabitants. In 1846, in consequence of some revolutionary movements, the Emperor of Austria, with the consent of Russia and Prussia, forcibly annexed the republic to his empire, and it is no longer independent.

10. The city of Cracow is on the Vistula river, about 500 miles from the sea. It was once the capital of Poland. Its cathedral is noted for containing 50 altars and 16 chapels: there are, also, a number of churches, monasteries, and convents. The tumulus, erected near the city, to the memory of Kosciusko, is 160 feet high, and 275 feet in diameter at the base: it is formed of earth, and was raised by the voluntary labours of the people, continued for four years.

— 158 —

DENMARK.

1. Denmark was once a powerful state, and exercised an extensive control over the adjacent countries; but it now ranks only as a third or fourth-rate kingdom. It comprises Jutland and Sleswick, with several islands lying in the entrance of the Baltic sea, besides the duchies of Holstein and Lauenburg, in Germany.

2. The climate is temperate, and, though moist, is healthy. The soil is generally fertile, and well adapted to the raising

---

nobles? What do they possess, &c.? Of the Jews? 6. What is said of the climate, soil, &c.? 7. Of education? The Russian government? 8. Describe Warsaw. 9. The republic of Cracow. 10 The city, &c. The tumulus.

Denmark. Q.—1. What was Denmark formerly? What is it now?

Copenhagen.

of grain and cattle. Manufactures are limited; but commerce and the fisheries are carried on with some activity.

3. The Danes are an honest, industrious people, but are not remarkable for enterprise or improvement. Literature and science are on a respectable footing, being patronized by the government. There are universities at Copenhagen and Kiel,* and common schools are numerous in almost all parts of the kingdom.

4. The established religion of this country is the Lutheran. The government is an absolute monarchy, but it is administered with mildness. The king of Denmark is a member of the German Confederation, as sovereign of Holstein and Lauenburg.

5. The foreign possessions of this kingdom are Greenland, Iceland, and the Faroe isles, the islands of St. Thomas and Santa Cruz, in the West Indies, some factories on the gold coast of Africa, with the Nicobar islands in the bay of Bengal.†

6. Iceland is a cold and dreary region, inhabited by a simple, moral, and industrious race, who are better educated than the common people of almost any other country in Europe. It is celebrated for its volcano, its caldrons of boiling mud, and its hot-springs, called geysers, which spout up boiling water to the height of 100 feet.

7. Copenhagen, the capital of Denmark, is one of the most handsome cities of northern Europe. It has a good harbour, with considerable commerce, and is noted for its vast docks and extensive fortifications.

8. Elsinore, situated at the narrowest part of the sound, or entrance to the Baltic, is the place where all ships which trade to that sea are

---

2. What does it comprise? What is said of the climate? 3. Of the Danes? Literature and science? 4. Established religion? Government, &c.? 5. Foreign possessions? 6. Describe Iceland. For what is it celebrated? 7. Describe Copenhagen. 8. Elsinore, &c.

---

* *Kiel*, Keel'.

† The Danish government sold the colonies of Serampore and Tranquebar, in Hindoostan, to the British East India Company, in Feb., 1845, for 1,250,000 dollars.

obliged to pay a heavy toll. The money received here pays a large portion of the expenses of the Danish government. Altona, on the Elbe, two miles from Hamburg, is the next largest town to Copenhagen. Its inhabitants are engaged chiefly in commerce. Flensburg and Sleswick are important towns.

Map No. 18. — What bounds Denmark on the north? S.-Rk. — South? Hr. — East? Ct. — West? N.-Sa. — What peninsula forms the chief part of Denmark? Jd. — What two islands lie east of Jutland? Fn., Zd. — On what island is Copenhagen? Zd. — What is the population of Copenhagen? Flensburg? Sleswick? Elsinore? In what direction from Denmark are the Faroe isles? Iceland? How far from Jutland to Scotland? Which is the principal of the Faroe isles? The population? How long and wide is Iceland? What towns in Iceland? Rg., St. — Capes? Nh.-Cy. — Bays? Be., Fe. —The principal Danish islands are Zealand, Funen, Laaland, Falster and Bornholm. (*See Map No.* 20.)

— 159 —

HOLLAND, OR THE NETHERLANDS.

1. Holland, or the Netherlands, was once the most powerful republic in Europe, but now it is only a second-rate monarchy. It formed with Belgium the kingdom of the Netherlands, from the year 1814 until 1830, when each became a separate state.

2. This country is the most level part of Europe, and much of its surface is lower than the sea, which is prevented from overflowing the land by vast dikes, or embankments.

3. The climate is cool, moist, and unfavourable to agriculture; yet the industry of the inhabitants has converted the marshy soil into one of the richest spots in Europe. The cattle, butter, and cheese, are excellent; and the gardens and orchards are cultivated with uncommon care.

4. In commerce, manufactures, and the fisheries, the Dutch formerly excelled all other European nations, but are now surpassed by Great Britain. Canals are more numerous here than in any other part of the world. One, extending from the Helder to Amsterdam, cost 4½ million dollars, and will float a frigate. In summer, all the travelling is performed in canal-boats; and in winter, when frozen, the canals are travelled by sleighs, and by the people on skates.

Holland. Q. — 1. What is said of Holland? 2. Of the country? 3. The climate? The cattle, &c.? 4. The commerce, &c.?

Peasantry in Holland.

5. The Dutch are remarkable for industry, frugality, and neatness. Smoking is almost universal, and a Hollander is rarely seen without a pipe in his mouth. The dress and appearance of the peasantry, in some parts of Holland, are peculiar, and have not varied in a long series of years. The prevailing religion is the Presbyterian, but all others are tolerated, and ministers of all sects are supported by the state. The government of Holland is a limited monarchy.

6. In the east, Holland possesses Java, the Spice Islands, and some other settlements; in Africa, Elmina; in Guiana, Surinam; and in the West Indies, the islands of Curaçoa and St. Eustatius. The population of these colonies is about 7,500,000: total of the monarchy, 10,500,000.

7. Amsterdam, the principal city of the kingdom, is on the river Amstel, an arm of the Zuyder Zee. It is still a place of great commerce. The city is intersected by canals, over which there are 300 bridges. The houses and streets are kept remarkably clean.

8. The Stadt-House, the most splendid building in Amsterdam, rests upon a foundation of 13,659 piles, or long timbers, driven into the ground. It is built of freestone, with a front of 282 feet, and cost nine million dollars. Rotterdam is next to Amsterdam in commerce. It is on the Maese, or lower part of the Rhine.

View of the Hague.

9. The Hague,* the capital of Holland, is 33 miles S. W. from Amsterdam, and about three miles from the sea. It is one of the best-built cities in Europe, and contains many handsome buildings. This city is intersected by numerous canals, which are bordered by rows of trees.

10. Leyden,† Utrecht,‡ and Groningen, are famous for their universi-

---

What is said of canals? 5. For what are the Dutch remarkable? What is said of religion? 6. What does Holland possess? 7. Describe Amsterdam. 8. The Stadt-House. 9. The Hague. 10. Leyden, &c.

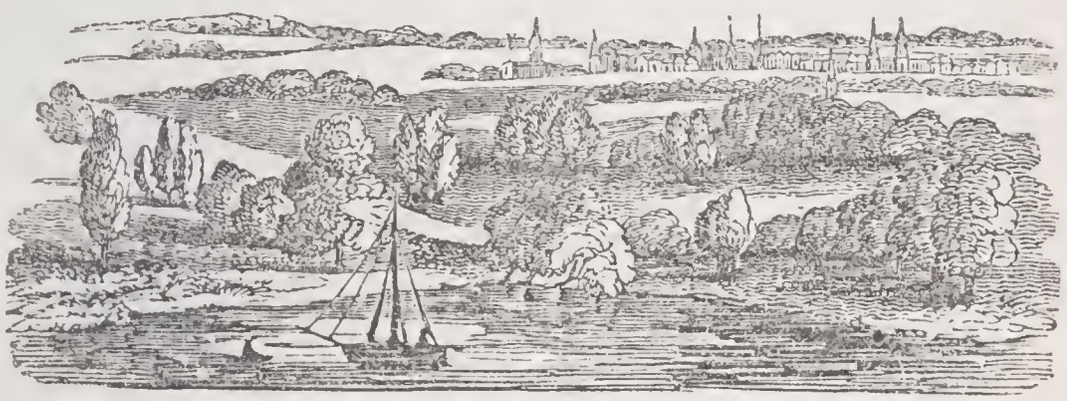
---

* *Hague*, Haig. † *Leyden*, Li'-dn. ‡ *Utrecht*, Yu'-tret.

ties. The former is noted for a siege that it sustained in 1573, against the Spaniards, when the women performed all the duties of soldiers. The cathedral of Utrecht is now partly decayed. From the top of its tower, 466 feet high, more than 50 towns may be seen in a clear day. Harlem is noted for its great organ, and its trade in flowers.

Map No. 18.—What bounds Holland on the north and west? N.-Sa. — On the south? Bm. — East? Hr., Pa. — What river flows through this country? Re. — How long is it? What bay lies north of Amsterdam? Z.-Ze. —What country lies due west from Holland? Ed. — How many miles is it by the scale? What sea separates Holland and England? Nh. — How many inhabitants has Amsterdam? Rotterdam? Groningen? Leyden and Utrecht are on one of the lower branches of the Rhine. (*See Map No.* 20.)

160



Brussels.

BELGIUM, OR FLANDERS.

1. Belgium is, for its extent, the most thickly-peopled part of Europe. It is filled with populous cities, and places remarkable in history, as the scenes of great victories and defeats, among which are Waterloo, Charleroi, and Fleurus.

2. The country is mostly level, with a fertile soil, and so highly cultivated, that it is called the garden of Europe. The productions are grain, flax, madder, hops, tobacco, &c. There are canals, connecting all the great cities, though they are not so numerous as in Holland.

3. The Belgians were formerly called Flemings, and have long excelled in manufactures and the arts. They are no less industrious and persevering than the Dutch, but are more lively in their manners, and approach nearer the French, whom they prefer.

4. They are principally Catholics; but there is entire toleration in

Belgium. Q.—1. What is Belgium? With what is it filled? 2. What is said of the country? The productions? 3. Of the Belgians?

religion. There are a few Protestants in Belgium; their ministers, as well as those of the other sects, are all paid by the state.

5. The universities of Brussels, Louvain, Liege, and Ghent, are all flourishing. The provision made for general instruction in this country is extensive; and there are schools in every village.

6. Belgium once belonged to Austria, and afterwards to France. It was for a time united to Holland, but is now a separate kingdom, with a limited government. The army amounts to 100,000 men; the navy is small. Belgium has no colonies.

7. Brussels, the capital, is on the river Senne, a branch of the Scheldt, 90 miles from the sea. It is one of the finest cities in Europe, and is noted for its public walks and fountains, as well as for its extensive manufactures of carpets and lace. Ten miles south of this city is Waterloo, celebrated for the important battle fought there in 1815.

Antwerp.

8. Antwerp is the chief commercial city in Belgium; in the height of its prosperity it was one of the most wealthy cities in Europe. Its commerce has greatly declined, and the population, once 200,000 in number, is not now more than one-third that amount; the city is surrounded by a wall, with carriage roads on the top, planted with rows of trees: the Cathedral is one of the finest Gothic structures in the world; its spire is 441 feet high.

9. Ghent and Liege have both considerable manufactures. At the former city, the treaty of peace between the United States and Great Britain was signed in 1814. Bruges was once famous for its commerce, but has greatly declined. Tournay is noted for its manufactures of carpets and porcelain; Mons for its coal-mines; Louvain for its university, and Namur for its fire-arms and cutlery.

Map No. 18.—What bounds Belgium on the north? Hd., N.-Sa.—South? Fe.—East? Pa.—Which is the principal river? Ans. The Meuse; the city of Liege is on its west bank: the river is 400 miles long. How many inhabitants has Brussels? Ghent? Antwerp? Liege? Antwerp and Ghent are on the river Scheldt.

---

4. What are they generally? 5. What is said of the universities? 6. Of Belgium? The army, &c.? 7. Describe Brussels. 8. Antwerp. 9. Ghent. Liege, &c.

— 161 —

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

1. The united kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland comprises the kingdoms of England, Scotland, and Ireland, with the principality of Wales. It consists of the islands of Great Britain and Ireland, commonly called the British Isles.

2. The possessions of this kingdom embrace colonies in Asia, Africa, America, and Oceanica, which, with the European part, form the British Empire. The population of the whole is upwards of 160 millions, comprising, with the exception of China, the greatest number of subjects under the control of any one sovereign.

3. Great Britain is one of the most influential states in the world, and surpasses every other for the extent and variety of its manufactures, and for its commercial and naval importance. The intelligence, enterprise, and industry of its inhabitants are no where equalled, except in the United States.

4. The government is a limited hereditary monarchy. The sovereign power is vested in a king or queen, lords, and commons. The two last form the parliament, or great coun-

---

Great Britain and Ireland. Q.—1. What does the united kingdom comprise? Of what does it consist? 2. What do its possessions embrace? What is said of the population? 3. Of Great Britain? The

cil of the nation, a body to which the Congress of the United States bears a strong resemblance.

5. The nation is divided into three classes, the nobility, gentry, and commonalty. The first comprises dukes, marquises, earls, viscounts, and barons; the second all who are distinguished for wealth, education, talents, or office; and the third tradesmen, artificers, and labourers.

6. The principal national force is the navy, which, in time of war, has numbered 1000 vessels, manned by 170,000 sailors and marines. The army amounted, at the same time, to upwards of 300,000 men; but is now reduced to one-third that amount. The present naval force, in service, building, and ordinary, comprises 671 vessels, 121 of which are steamers; the whole mounting 17,772 guns. The national debt, contracted in about 150 years, is 3500 million dollars, to pay the interest of which, requires three-fifths of the annual income of the state.

7. The manufactures are immense, and have raised Great Britain to a decided superiority over all other nations. Cotton, woollen, and silk goods, with the manufacture of metals of various kinds, are the most important. The produce of the fisheries and the mines is very great; the coal trade, alone, is estimated to employ 160,000 persons.

8. The commerce is superior to that of any other nation, and extends to all quarters of the world. The merchant-vessels, including those of the colonies, amount to upwards of 30,000, of the burthen of 3,600,000 tons, and are navigated by 213,000 men. One-sixth of the shipping belongs to the port of London, and two-thirds of the commerce is carried on at that city. From 42,000 to 45,000 vessels enter and depart from the ports of Great Britain every year.

9. *Population of the British Empire and Colonies.*

Great Britain and Ireland, 1841*	27,014,691
Ionian Isles, Malta, Gibraltar, and Heligoland	344,500
British North America	1,986,000
West Indies and Guiana	854,000
Cape Colony, Sierra Leone, Mauritius, &c.	320,000
East India Company's Territories (inc. tributaries) ..	130,000,000
Ceylon, Provinces in Chin India, Singapore, &c.....	2,654,000
Oceanica, British, 225,000; aborigines, 350,000,....	535,000
Total,	163,758,191

---

inhabitants? 4. Government? 5. How is the nation divided? 6. What is said of the national force? Debt? 7. Manufactures? Fisheries and mines? 8. Commerce? What belongs to London, &c.? 9. What part of the British empire has the most inhabitants? What part has the next greater number? How many subjects has Great Britain in America? In Europe? Asia? Africa?

---

* England, 15,119,178; Wales, 911,603; Scotland, 2,620,184; Ireland, 8,175,273. Army and navy, and merchant seamen afloat, 188,453. Total, 27,014 691.

— 162 —

Windsor Castle.

ENGLAND.

1. England embraces the southern part of Great Britain, and is the largest and most populous division of the island. It has great variety of surface, but is chiefly level or gently undulating, and abounds in beautiful and interesting scenery.

2. The climate, though moist and cool, is healthful, and less subject to the extremes of heat and cold than most other countries in the same latitudes.

3. The soil of England is not naturally rich, yet the agriculture is superior to that of any other country in Europe. The chief products are wheat, barley, oats, hops, &c.

4. In no part of the world, perhaps, is wealth more unequally distributed than in England, and seldom do the cottages of the poor contrast so strongly with the mansions of the rich. Costly and splendid buildings are spread over various parts of the kingdom, and many of the parks and country-seats of the nobility and gentry, display a princely magnificence.

5. Though luxury and corruption exist to a considerable extent in certain portions of English society, the mass of the people is distinguished by sound morals. Benevolence may be considered a striking feature in the national character; and in no country are there so many associations for charitable, benevolent, and religious purposes.

England. Q. — 1. What does England embrace? What is said of the surface, &c.? 2. Of the climate? 3. Soil? Products? 4. What is said of wealth? 5. Luxury, &c? Benevolence? 6. Literary in-

6. The literary institutions, and learned men of this country, are highly distinguished; and no language excels the English, in poetry, eloquence, philosophy, and science. Great exertions are made by various religious associations, to spread Christianity and civilization among the heathen; and numerous missionaries have been sent to various parts of the earth, for that purpose.

7. No general provision has been devised for the education of the poor, but efforts are now making for that purpose. Many of the people are very ignorant, and numbers depend on Sunday-schools for instruction. The higher seminaries of learning are numerous, and furnish great facilities for obtaining a superior education.

8. The Episcopal is the established religion, and the sovereign is the supreme head of the church, which is governed by two archbishops and twenty-five bishops. The members of other churches are called dissenters: they comprise Methodists, Baptists, Presbyterians, &c., and with the Roman Catholics, constitute nearly one-half the population.

9. This country is noted for its excellent roads and substantial bridges. Canals are numerous, and, with the various well-constructed rail-roads, greatly facilitate the inland trade of the kingdom. The former are near 300 in number, and extend about 2800 miles in length. The most important rail-roads are those which connect London with Liverpool, Bristol, and Southampton, and Liverpool with Manchester. Projects for new rail-roads are numerous.

— 163 —

10. London, the capital of the British Empire, is on the river Thames, 45 miles from the sea. It is 8 miles in length, from 4 to 5½ in breadth, and covers a space of almost 28 square miles. It is admirably situated for trade, and is the richest, most populous, and most commercial city in the world.

11. It contains many public buildings, of which St. Paul's Cathedral, the Tower, Westminster Abbey, and the Bank of England, are the chief. The bridges of London are seven in number, all built of stone, except one, which is constructed of iron; one of these is a suspension bridge. The Tunnel under the Thames is one of the most remarkable works of the age.

12. London presents a striking contrast of wealth, intelligence, and morality, with ignorance, poverty, and vice. No city in the world has so great a number of learned societies, and literary and scientific establishments; and none can compare with it in its charities for the poor, the sick, and the ignorant.

---

stitutions, &c.? 7. Education? Highest seminaries of learning, &c.? 8. Religion? Dissenters? 9. Roads, &c.? Canals? Rail-roads?

England. Q. — 10. Describe London. 11. What does it contain?

New London Bridge.

13. Five miles below London, on the Thames, is Greenwich, famous for its naval hospital for infirm seamen, and its observatory, from which longitude is reckoned. Above London is Chelsea, containing the great national asylum for invalid soldiers. Windsor, 22 miles from London, is celebrated for its castle, which has been the summer residence of the sovereigns of England for upwards of 700 years.

14. Liverpool, on the river Mersey, near its mouth, is next to London in commerce. It is the principal seat of the trade with America. Bristol is the third commercial town in England. Hull is noted for its trade to the Baltic, and the whale fishery. Newcastle, Sunderland, Whitby, and Whitehaven are largely engaged in the coal trade. Portsmouth, Plymouth, and Chatham are great naval stations.

15. Manchester is the second place in England in population, and is famous for its extensive cotton manufactures; Leeds, Bradford, and Norwich, for woollen goods; Birmingham, for hardware; Sheffield, for cutlery; Kidderminster, for carpets; Worcester, for porcelain; Coventry, for watches and ribbons; and Gloucester, for pins.

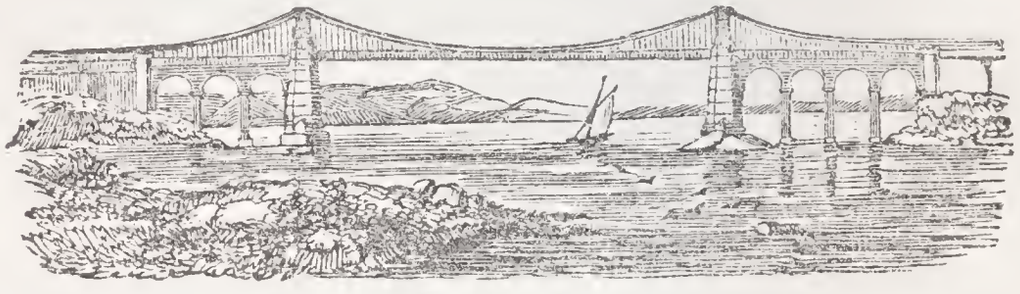
16. Oxford and Cambridge are celebrated for their universities; Eton and Winchester, for their colleges. Bath and Cheltenham are noted for mineral waters, and are visited by persons in quest of health or pleasure. Tunbridge, Scarborough, &c., are well-known watering places, and Brighton, Margate, &c., are much resorted to for sea-bathing. Newmarket is noted for horse-races; and Burton for ale.

---

12. What does London present? 13. Describe Greenwich. Chelsea. Windsor. 14. What is said of Liverpool, Bristol, &c.? 15. Manchester, Leeds, &c.? Sheffield, &c.? 16. Oxford, Cambridge, &c.? 17.

17. Hastings is renowned for the victory gained by William the Conqueror. At Bosworth, Richard 3d was defeated and killed. The battles of North Allerton, Durham or St. Nevil's Cross, Otterburn and Flodden Field, were fought between the English and Scots. At Newbury, Edge Hill, Marston Moor, Naseby, and Worcester, important actions took place between the forces of Charles 1st and the parliament. At the three last, Cromwell gained decisive victories.

18. The isles of Man, Wight, Thanet, Sheppey and the Norman islands, belong to England. The isle of Man was once a distinct kingdom; the people are called Manxmen; their language is very similar to that of the native Irish. The isle of Wight is the most fertile and beautiful of the smaller British isles. The Norman, or Channel Islands, are Jersey, Guernsey, Alderney, and Sark; they have a mild climate and a fertile soil. Jersey is noted for cider.



Menai Bridge.

WALES.

19. Wales is a mountainous and rugged region, situated westward of England. The soil is less fertile and cultivated than in that kingdom, but the products are the same.

20. The manufactures are chiefly of flannel, in which the Welsh excel. Iron, lead, copper, and coal abound. Vast quantities of iron, chiefly for rail-roads, are imported into the United States from Wales.

21. This country, previous to the year 1283, was governed by its own kings; but since that time it has been united to England, and the oldest son of the sovereign of England is styled Prince of Wales.

22. The strait, which separates Wales from the island of Anglesea, is crossed by the Menai bridge, one of the most remarkable of the kind in the world: it consists of strong iron chains, which connect arches of masonry, 560 feet apart; thus forming a safe and useful structure.

23. Merthyr Tydvil is the largest town in Wales. It is situated in the midst of numerous iron founderies and furnaces. Swansea is a noted resort for sea-bathing. Caermarthen, and Caernarvon, are both places of importance. The chief ornament of the latter is its castle once a stately edifice, but now in ruins.

Hastings, Bosworth, &c.? 18. What islands belong to England? What is said of Man? Wight? Norman isles? 19. What is said of Wales? 20. Manufactures? Minerals, &c.? 21. When was Wales governed by its own kings, &c.? 22. What is said of the Menai bridge, &c.? 23. Merthyr Tydvil, Swansea, &c.?

— 164 —

Map No. 18. — What bounds England on the north? Sd. — South? E.-Cl. — East? N.-Sa. — West? Ws., I.-Sa. — What strait separates it from France? Dr. — What channel? Eh. — What channel between England and Wales? Bl.

Map No. 19. — What rivers form part of the boundary between England and Scotland? Td., Ek. — What hills? Ct. — What firth separates the north-west and south-west parts of England and Scotland? Sy. — The most southern extremity of England? L.-Pt. — The most western? L.-Ed.

Which are the three chief rivers? Hr., Ts., Sn. — Which two form the Humber? Oe., Tt. — How long are each? The Thames? Severn? What rivers flow into the North Sea? The Wash? English Channel? Bristol Channel? Sn. — How long is the latter? What rivers flow into the Irish Sea?

What islands lie at the mouth of the Thames? Sy., Tt. — In the English Channel? Wt. — In the Irish Sea? Mn. — In the Bristol Channel? Ly.—Near land's end? Sy.—The latter are dangerous to seamen, and vessels are often wrecked on them. What is the population of the Isle of Man? I. of Wight? Norman or Channel Islands? For the position of the Norman Islands, see Map No. 21. These islands lie off the north-east coast of France; they have belonged to England since the time of William the Conqueror, and formed part of the patrimony of the English kings as Dukes of Normandy. Chief lake in England? We.—How long is it? (*Mere*, or *meer*, signifies a lake.) Chief Mts.? Hn., Sw-—How high are they?

What is the population of *London*? Manchester? *Liverpool*? Birmingham? *Leeds*? *Bristol*? Plymouth? *Norwich*? *Sheffield*? *Hull*? *Nottingham*? Portsmouth? *New Castle*? *Sunderland*? *Bath*? *Cambridge*? *Oxford*? *Worcester*? *Shrewsbury*? *Chester*? *York*? *Carlisle*? On what rivers are the towns printed in Italics situated? In what years did the battles that are marked on the Map take place? What light-house is near Plymouth Sound? Ee.

How far from England to Denmark? To Russia? To Holland? To the island of Jersey? To Guernsey? To Spain? To Newfoundland? To Cape Clear? How wide is the Strait of Dover? How long and wide is the Irish Sea?

What bounds Wales on the north? I.-Sa. — South? B.-Cl. — East? Ed. — West? S.-G.-Cl. — What bay on the west coast? Cn. — On the south? S.-Bs., Cn. — What island lies north of Wales? Aa. — What is its population? What strait separates it from Wales? Mi.

What rivers are wholly in Wales? Cy., Dy., Tf., Ty.—What rivers rise in Wales, but flow into England? De., Sn., Te., We. — What are the three chief mountains in Wales? Sn., C.-Is., Pn. — How high are the two first? How many miles is it from St. David's Head to Carnsore Point? What is the population of Merthyr Tydvil? Swansea? Caermarthen? Mold? Holywell? Caernarvon? Holyhead?

— 165 —

SCOTLAND.

1. Scotland lies northward of England, and is divided by the Grampian hills into the Highlands and Lowlands. It contains the highest hills and largest lakes in Great Britain.

2. The Highlands, the northern part of Scotland, is a cold, hilly region, better adapted to raising cattle than farming. The Lowlands, the southern part, is a more level country, with a moderately fertile soil, which produces oats, barley, wheat, rye, flax, and potatoes.

3. The manufactures are important, especially those of cotton, woollen, and linen. Coal and iron are abundant, and lead and copper are also found. The commerce and fisheries are valuable: the herring fishery employs many vessels and men. There are several canals and rail-roads in Scotland.

4 The Scotch are a serious and reflecting, as well as an enterprising people. They are one of the best educated, and most moral and religious nations in Europe. Many Scotchmen have distinguished themselves in literature, and some have been amongst the most celebrated philosophers, historians, and poets of Great Britain.

5. The Highlanders were originally a different people from the Lowlanders. Some still wear the ancient dress, and speak the Gaelic language. The Presbyterian is the established church: a division has lately taken place, one half of the preachers having seceded, and formed the "Free Church of Scotland," in which the ministers are elected by their hearers.

6. The Hebrides, Orkney, and Shetland Islands, are the resort of vast numbers of sea-fowl, which the islanders catch by descending with ropes, from the high cliffs to which the birds resort.

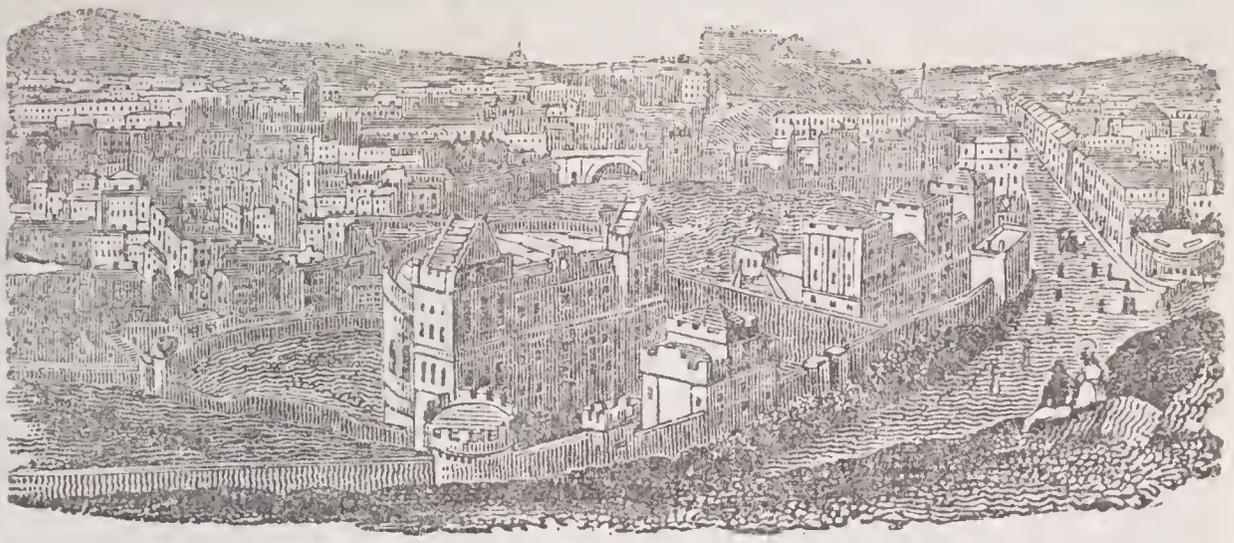
7. Edinburgh, the metropolis of Scotland, lies near the Firth of Forth, and 396 miles N. by W. of London: it has long been noted for its science and learning: the university is distinguished, and has many students. The city has but few manufactures. Leith,* its sea-port, was formerly 2 miles distant, but is now joined to it by continuous ranges of buildings. Edinburgh Castle is conspicuous in Scottish history.

8. Glasgow, the largest city in Scotland, is on the river Clyde, 28 miles from its mouth: it owes its prosperity to the cotton manufacture. The university is celebrated, and the cathedral is the best-preserved specimen of Gothic architecture in Scotland.

Scotland. Q.—1. What is said of Scotland? What does it contain? 2. Describe the Highlands. Lowlands. What is said of manufactures? Coal, &c.? Commerce, &c.? Canals, &c.? 4. The Scotch? Scotchmen? 5. Describe the Highlanders. What is said of religion? The free church? 6. The Hebrides, &c.? 7 Describe Edinburgh. 8. Glasgow.

---

* *Leith*, Leeth



Edinburgh.

9. Paisley is noted for fine cotton fabrics, Perth and Dunfermline for cotton and linen manufactures, Kilmarnock for carpets, and Carron, near Falkirk, for its iron-works. Greenock, Leith, Dundee, Montrose and Aberdeen are the principal sea-ports.

10. Stirling is celebrated for its castle, Melrose and Kelso for their ancient abbeys, Ayr as the scene of some of the exploits of Bruce and Wallace, and Gretna Green for the marriage of fugitive lovers from England. Inverness is considered the capital of the Highlands.

11. Bannockburn is famed for the decisive victory gained by king Robert Bruce over Edward II. of England, and Dunbar for that by Cromwell over the Covenanters. At Preston Pans and Falkirk, Prince Charles, the son of the Pretender, routed the royal forces, and at Culloden Moor his army was totally defeated.

166

Map No. 19.—What bounds Scotland on the north and west? A.-Oc.—East? N.-Sa.—South? Ed., I.-Sa.—What separates it from Ireland? N.-Cl.—How wide is it? The most northern part of Scotland? D.-Hd.—Southern? M.-Gy.—Eastern? B.-Ns.—Western? A.-Pt.

Firth or Frith is used in Scotland for Bay and Strait. Where is Dornoch Firth? Cromarty F.? Murray F.? F. of Tay? F. of Forth? Solway F.? F. of Clyde? Wigton Bay? Glenluce B.? Sound of Jura? The Minch? Little Minch?

Where is Cape Wrath? Dunnet Head? Duncansby H.? Kennaird's H.? Tarbet Ness? Buchan N.? Mull of Galloway? M. of Cantire? Ardnamurchan Point? (Ness and Mull are the same as Cape, Head, or Point.)

What islands lie west of Scotland? Hs. or W.-Is.—What islands

---

9. Paisley, Perth, Greenock, &c. 10. What is said of Stirling, &c 11. Bannockburn, Dunbar, &c.?

north? Oy.—What Firth separates them? Pd.—How wide is it? What islands lie north-east from the Orkneys? Sd.—What is the population of the Shetland Is.? Orkney Is.? Hebrides? Which is the chief town of the Hebrides? Sy.—Orkneys? Kl.—Shetland Is.? Lk.

Where is Staffa? Iona? Staffa contains the magnificent natural curiosity called Fingal's Cave. Iona was anciently celebrated for its religious institutions, schools, and learned men.

Lakes and inlets are called Lochs in Scotland. Where is Loch Shin? L. Mare? L. Ness? L. Rannoch? L. Tay? L. Lomond? L. Leven? On an island in the latter are the ruins of the castle in which the celebrated Mary, Queen of Scots, was imprisoned. How long is L. Ness? L. Lomond? Where is L. Assynt? L. Broom? L. Sunart? L. Linnhe? L. Awe? L. Fine?

What rivers flow into Murray Firth? Sy., Dn.—The North Sea? Yn., Dn., De., N.-Ek., S.-Ek., Td.—The F. of Tay? Ty., En.—The F. of Forth? Fh.—Solway F.? Ek., Nh., De.—The F. of Clyde? Dn., Ar., Ce.—Where is the Caledonian Canal? This work connects Murray Firth and L. Linnhe. The Firths of Clyde and Forth are united by the Forth and Clyde Canal. On what rivers are the chief cities?

Where are the Grampian Hills? Cheviot Hills? Ben Nevis? Cairngorm Mt.? Ben Lawers? How high are the three last? Ben Nevis is the highest mountain in Great Britain. (Ben signifies Mountain.)

What is the population of Glasgow? Edinburgh? Aberdeen? Paisley? Dundee? Leith? Greenock? Kilmarnock? Dunfermline? Where is John o'Groat's House? This was long ago noted as the most northerly dwelling in Scotland: it is now in ruins.

How far from the Clyde to the West Indies? Scotland to Labrador? To Iceland? From the Faroe to the Orkney Is.? From Greenland to the Shetland Is.? To the Faroe Is. from Shetland? To Norway? From Scotland to Norway? To Sweden?

167

IRELAND.

1. Ireland is a fine fertile island, lying west of Great Britain. The climate is mild and moist, which produces a beautiful and continued verdure, and has led to its poetical appellations of the Emerald Isle, and Green Erin.

2. The surface of the country is moderately uneven, with few mountains. There are many peat bogs, which supply fuel, but are useless for other purposes.

3. Agriculture is in a less improved state than in England

Ireland. Q.—1. What is Ireland? What is said of the climate? 2. The surface, &c.? 3. Agriculture? Chief products? 4. Grazing

or Scotland. Barley, oats, wheat, and flax, are extensively cultivated; but potatoes are the chief product, and form the principal food of the poor.

4. Grazing, and the dairy, are the best-managed parts of Irish husbandry, and produce the best beef and butter in Europe. Linen is the staple manufacture, and forms, with the products of the soil, the chief exports of the country.

5. The people of Ireland are generous, quick-witted, and hospitable, but are easily offended, and prone to resentment. The Episcopal is the established religion, yet four-fifths of the inhabitants are Catholics: about half of the remainder are Presbyterians. Many are ignorant of the English tongue, and use the Irish only, a language similar to that spoken by the Scotch Highlanders.

6. The peasantry live mostly in a state of abject poverty and wretchedness. They are oppressed by the agents of their landlords; most of the latter are absentees, spending abroad the money wrung from their wretched tenantry. The tithes, exacted for the support of the established church, and the taxes, help to impoverish the people. Beggars are numerous, and, notwithstanding the natural fertility of Ireland, many of the poor have perished with hunger.

7. The Giant's Causeway is situated on the north coast of the island, and is an astonishing work of nature. It consists of vast numbers of perpendicular columns of basaltic rock, from 200 to 400 feet high.

8. Dublin is the chief city of Ireland: it stands on both sides and at the mouth of the river Liffey. Its public edifices are numerous and beautiful. Among the latter, St. Patrick's Cathedral, the Bank of Ireland, the Exchange, and the Four Courts, are conspicuous. The chief part of the suburbs, and some streets in the city, are the abodes of thousands who live in wretchedness and distress: indeed, few places exhibit a greater contrast between wealth and poverty. Dublin is connected with the Shannon river by the Royal and Grand Canals. Several railroads are in progress, intended to connect the city with other parts of the kingdom.

Four Courts, Dublin.

9. Cork is noted for its trade in salted provisions. Its harbour, called the Cove, is capacious and strongly fortified. Limerick is

---

&c.? Linen? 5. Describe the people. Religion. 6. What is said of the peasantry? Beggars? 7. Describe the Giant's Causeway. 8.

famous for the sieges it has sustained. Belfast is the emporium of the linen trade; it is the most flourishing town in Ireland. Kilkenny is noted for its beautiful white and black marble. Killarney is much resorted to by those who visit the adjacent lake. Maynooth is the seat of a noted Catholic college.

10. Waterford has an extensive intercourse with England and Wales. Galway, Sligo, Drogheda, Dundalk, Newry, and Londonderry, are all considerable sea-port towns. The last is celebrated for its siege by the forces of James II., in 1690–1. Near Drogheda on the river Boyne William III., and at Aghrim General Ginkell, defeated the army of James II.

— 168 —

Map No. 19.—What bounds Ireland on the north, south, and west? A.-On. — On the east? I.-Sa.—What separates it from England? I.-Sa. — How long and wide is the Irish Sea? From Scotland? N.-Cl. — How wide is it? From Wales? S. G.-Cl. — How wide is it? Which is the most northern part of Ireland? M.-Hd. — Most southern? M.-Hd. — Most western? C.-Sl. — Where is Rathlin I.? Tory I.? North Isles of Arran? Achil I.? Enisture I.? South Isles of Arran? Blasket I.? Valentia I.? C. Clear I.?

Where is Carlingford Bay? Dundalk B.? Dublin B.? Bantry B.? Kenmare B.? Dingle B.? Galway B.? Killala B.? Donegal B.? Wexford Harbour? Waterford H.? Cork H.? Malin Head? Fair H.? Kinsale H.? Mizen H.? Loop H.? Urris H.? Teillen H.?

Where is Lough Swilly? (The term Lough is used in Ireland for lakes and inlets of the sea.) Where is Lough Foyle? Belfast L.? L. Strangford? L. Neagh? L. Earne? L. Allen? L. Ree? L. Deirgart? Of what river do the three last named loughs form a part? Sn.—Where is L. Mask? L. Corrib? Lake of Killarney? This lake is celebrated for the beauty and grandeur of its scenery. How long is Lough Neagh? This is the largest lake in Ireland.

Where is the Bann river? Foyle? Boyne? Liffey? Avoca, or Ovoca? Slaney? Barrow? Suire? Blackwater? Lee? Shannon? How long is the Shannon? What river flows into L. Neagh? Br.—Where is the Ghurane Tuel Mt.? How high is it? This is the highest mountain in Ireland. When were the battles of Aghrim and the Boyne fought? On what river is Dublin? The other principal cities?

What is the population of Dublin? Cork? Belfast? Limerick? Waterford? What towns have from 10,000 to 19,000? Ah., Ly., Ny., Dk., Bn., Ae., So., Cl., Da., Gy., Ky.— How far from Ireland to Iceland? To Labrador? To Spain? From Cape Clear to Land's End?

In what part of Ireland is Ulster? Leinster? Munster? Connaught? (These are provinces which are subdivided into counties; they were in ancient times independent kingdoms.)

Dublin. 9. Cork, Limerick, Belfast, &c. 10. What is said of Waterford, Galway, &c.? Londonderry? Drogheda?

169

Making Wine. Gathering Grapes.

FRANCE.

1. France is now the most important republic in Europe; it is a great and powerful state, and has long held a distinguished rank among the nations of Christendom.

2. The country is beautiful and fertile, and the climate temperate and salubrious. The surface is mostly an extended plain, a large portion of which is well adapted to cultivation.

3. Agriculture is more advanced than in many other parts of Europe. The manufactures are various; and the commerce, though not so extensive as that of Great Britain or the United States, is carried on with almost all parts of the globe. Rail-roads are exciting much attention in France.

4. The chief products are wheat, Indian-corn, grapes, olives, and the sugar-beet. From the latter large quantities of sugar are made annually. The vineyards of France yield 250 different kinds of wine, they occupy near 5 million acres, and their annual produce is about 859 million gallons. Claret, Burgundy, and Champagne are the principal wines. Silk and wool are important products.

5. The French are brave, active, and ingenious—polite in their manners, and fond of show and amusement. Their learned men excel in the belles-lettres, mathematics, astronomy, and chemistry.

France. Q.—1. What is France? 2. What is said of the country? 3. Of agriculture, &c.? 4. Products? Vineyards? 5. Of the

The mass of the people are, however, but indifferently educated, not more than half being able to read and write.

6. Colleges, schools, and public libraries are numerous, and the city of Paris contains the most celebrated scientific association in the world. There is no established religion in France, but the people are chiefly Catholics. Ministers of all sects are paid by government.

7. The French language is the most refined, and the best adapted to conversation of any in Europe, and is much used in polite society. The upper classes in France excel in dancing, fencing, and other graceful accomplishments; and the women take an active share in all the affairs of life.

8. The government was a limited monarchy, the legislative power being shared by the king with a chamber of peers and a chamber of deputies, until February, 1848, when a great revolution occurred, and France is now a republic, with a President as chief magistrate.

9. France has long been a great military power. Under the Emperor Napoleon the army was the most formidable in Europe, and comprised 800,000 men. It has now 344,000. The navy consists of 342 vessels, 46 are ships of the line, and 74 are steamers.

10. The principal colonies are Algeria, Senegal, and Isle Bourbon, in Africa; Guadaloupe, Martinique, &c., in the West Indies; Cayenne, in Guiana, and Pondicherry, in Asia. The colonial population is 2,063,000, which, added to that of France, amounts to 37,463,000.

— 170 —

11. Paris, the capital of France, is on the river Seine, 112 miles from its mouth. It is the second city in Europe for size, and the first in splendour. The public buildings and palaces are numerous, and, generally, excel those of London.

12. This city is also noted for the beauty of its public gardens, fountains, and monuments, and for the value of its libraries and literary institutions. It is especially distinguished for the gaiety of its inhabitants, and the variety of its public amusements.

13. Lyons is on the river Rhone, at its junction with the Saone. It has long been noted for its silk manufactures. Marseilles is the principal sea-port in the Mediterranean. Bordeaux is well known for its wines; Rouen for its manufactures of cotton, woollen, and linen; and Strasburg for its cathedral, the steeple of which is 465 feet high.

14. Rheims, Lille, Nantes, and Orleans, are important towns. Toulon is the chief naval station on the Mediterranean; and Brest, on the

---

French? Learned men? Mass of the people? 6. Colleges, &c.? Religion? 7. The French language? The upper classes? The women? 8. The Government, &c.? 9. Army and navy? 10. Principal colonies?

11. Describe Paris. 12. For what is it noted? 13. Lyons, &c.?

Atlantic, is the principal naval depôt of the kingdom. Havre de Grace, or Havre at the mouth of the Seine, is the sea-port of Paris, and the chief seat of the trade of France with the United States.

15. Tours is noted for the great victory gained by Charles Martel over the Saracens, more than 1100 years ago. During the middle ages, important battles took place at Crecy, Poitiers, and Agincourt, between the English and the French; also, in recent times, at Orthez and Toulouse, in the south of France.

16. Bayonne is noted for its fisheries, and the invention of bayonets; Versailles for its magnificent palace and gardens; Amiens for a treaty of peace; Orleans for the exploits of Joan of Arc; Avignon for having been the residence of the popes; Montpellier for its salubrious air; Nismes for its Roman amphitheatre, and Rochefort for its fine arsenal.

17. The island of Corsica, in the Mediterranean sea, is a department of France. Its surface is mountainous, and its soil stony and ill cultivated. It has some iron-mines and fisheries. Bastia is the chief town. Ajaccio (A-yach'-cho) is the birth-place of Napoleon Bonaparte.

Map No. 21.—What bounds France on the north? E.-Cl., Bm.—South? Sn., M.-Sa.—East? Bn., Sd., Sa.—West? B.-By.—What river flows into the English channel? Se.—B. of Biscay? Le., Ge.—G. of Lyons? Re.—How long is each river? What river forms the boundary between France and Baden? Re.—What lake does the Rhone flow from? Ga.—What Mts. separate France from Spain? Ps.—From Sardinia? Fr., As.—From Switzerland? Ja.—What Mts. between the Rhone and the Loire? Cs.—West of the Loire? Ae.—West of the Rhine? Vs.—What islands on the coast of France. Which belong to Great Britain? What is the population of Paris? Marseilles? Lyons? Bordeaux? Rouen? Nantes? Lille? Toulouse? Strasburg? Orleans? Toulon? What island in the Mediterranean belongs to France? Ca.—How long and wide is it? How many inhabitants has Bastia? Ajaccio? On what river is Bordeaux? Rouen? Nantes? Tours? Orleans? Toulouse? Strasburg? Point out Tours, and other noted battle-fields.

French geographical names, with their pronunciation.

Amiens, A-me-an'
Angouleme, An-goo-lame'
Artois, Ar-twa'
Auch, Osh
Auvergne, O-vern'
Auxerre, O-sair'
Avignon, Av-een-yon'
Bayonne, Ba-yon'
Besancon, Be-zan-son'
Bordeaux, Bor-do'
Boulogne, Boo-lone'
Caen, Kan
Calais, Kal'-is
Cevennes, Sa-ven'
Chalons, Sha-lon'
Champagne, Sham-pane
Chaumont, Shaw-mo'
Cherbourg, Sher'-bourg
Cognac, Kone-yak'
Crecy, Cres'-se
Dieppe, De-ep'
Foix, Fwa
Fontainebleau, Fon-tane-blo'
Franche Comte, Fransh Con-ta'
Garonne, Gar-on'
Gironde, Je-rond'
Havre, Hav'r
Lille, Leel
Limoges, Le mozh'
Loire, Lwar
L'Orient, Lor-e-an'
Marseilles, Mar-sailz'
Metz, Mets
Montauban, Mon-to-ban'
Nantes, Nants
Narbonne, Nar-bon'
Nismes, Neem
Orthez, Or-ta'
Poitiers or Poictiers, Poy-tears'
Rennes, Ren
Rheims, Reemz
Rochefort, Rosh-for'
Rochelle, Ro-shel'
Rouen, Roo'-en
Saone, Sone
Seine, Sane
Toulon, Too-lon'
Toulouse, Too-looz'
Valenciennes, Va-lan-se-en'
Versailles, Ver-sailz'
Vosges, Vozh

---

14. Rheims. Lille, &c. 15. Tours, Crecy, &c. 16. Bayonne, and the other towns. 17. Corsica. What is said of its surface, &c.

— 171 —

Madrid.

SPAIN.

1. Spain was once the most powerful of European kingdoms, but it is now one of the most feeble. Including Portugal, it comprises that part of western Europe often called, by way of distinction, the "Peninsula."

2. The interior is traversed by the Sierra Nevada, and other mountain ranges, which cause the surface to be greatly diversified. Much of the soil is fertile, but agriculture is neglected; and the commerce and manufactures have greatly declined.

3. The exports are Sherry, Malaga, and other wines, raisins, almonds, wool, silk, &c.; the imports are chiefly British manufactures, and colonial produce. Merino sheep are numerous, and the fineness of their wool is well known; they are said to amount to 14 millions.

4. The Spanish government, once the most absolute in Europe, is now limited. The constitution of 1837 guaranties the liberty of the press, and other essential principles of freedom. The Catholic is the national religion; and the maintenance of its ministers is provided for by law. There are several universities in Spain; but the modes of instruction are unsuited to the present times. Education is not general; and but few of the lower class learn to read and write.

5. Gravity of manner, with great pride of birth and rank, distinguish the higher class of Spaniards; but the lower orders are cheerful,

---

Spain. Q.—1. What was Spain, &c.? What does it comprise? 2. What is said of the interior? Soil? Commerce, &c.? 3. The exports? Imports? Merino sheep? 4. Of the government? Religion? Universities, &c.? 5. What is said of the higher class? Lower orders? Amusements? 6. What did this country formerly

frugal, and courteous. The favourite amusements are music, dancing, and bull-fights: the latter are attended by thousands of all ranks.

6. Spain once possessed vast territories in America; of which, Cuba and Porto Rico alone remain. The other colonies are the Canary Islands in the Atlantic Ocean, and the Philippine, Caroline, and Ladrone Islands, in the Pacific. The colonial population is about 4,200,000.

7. Madrid, the capital of Spain, is on the Manzanares, a small branch of the Tagus. It contains a number of churches and convents, besides several splendid palaces. It is a handsome but gloomy city. Barcelona and Cadiz are the chief sea-ports: the latter is on the isle of Leon. It is strongly fortified, and is one of the oldest towns in Europe.

8. Granada, Seville, and Cordova, were once Moorish capitals. Malaga and Alicant export wines and fruits, Bilboa wool, and Santander grain and flour. Valencia is noted for silks, Toledo for sword-blades, Salamanca for its university, Almaden for its rich silver-mines, and Palos as the port whence Columbus sailed on his first voyage to America. Ferrol is the chief station of the Spanish navy.

9. Saragossa, Badajoz, Pampeluna, St. Sebastian, and Cadiz, are famous for their sieges; and Talavera, Salamanca, Burgos, and Vittoria, for battles fought between the French and English. Off Capes St. Vincent and Trafalgar great naval victories were gained by the British; at the last, the renowned admiral Lord Nelson was killed.

10. Gibraltar, at the southern extremity of Spain, is the strongest fortified town in the world; it is often called the 'Rock.' This place was captured by the British in 1704, who have held it ever since.

11. The Balearic Isles are Majorca, Minorca, Ivica, and some others: they are inhabited by a hardy, industrious people. Port Mahon, in Minorca, is often resorted to by United States' ships of war.

12. Andorra.—This little republic, with a territory of 190 square miles, and 8,000 inhabitants, lies on the south side of the Pyrenees. Besides Andorra, the capital, it contains five small villages.

Map No. 21.—What bounds Spain on the north? Fe., B.-By.—South? M.-Sa., A.-On.—East? M.-Sa.—West? Pl.—Which are the chief rivers of Spain? Do., Ts., Ga., Gr., Eo.—How long are each of these? Which are the chief Mts.? Ps., Cn., S.-Ma. S.-Na.—How high are they? Which separate France from Spain? Ps.—What Mt. lies west of Barcelona? Mt.—This is noted for its singular form, and the monasteries built on it. What islands lie east of Spain? Bc.—What strait separates Spain from Africa? Gr.—How wide is it? What is the population of Madrid? Barcelona? Seville? Granada? Valencia? Cordova? Cadiz? Malaga? Saragossa? Point out the places noted for sieges. Battles. Naval battles.

---

possess? What is said of the colonies? 7. Describe Madrid, Barcelona, &c. 8. Granada, &c. 9. Saragossa, &c. Talivera, &c. 10. Gibraltar. 11. Balearic isles. 12. Andorra.

— 172 —

Lisbon.

PORTUGAL.

1. This kingdom, like Spain, has declined from its former greatness. Three centuries ago, it was celebrated for the valour of its soldiers, and the skill of its sailors. It took a distinguished lead in maritime discoveries, and was for a time the first commercial nation in Europe.

2. The surface of the country is much diversified. The climate is mild and healthful; and the soil is rich in the fruits and products of southern Europe. Port and Lisbon wine, salt, oil, and wool, are the chief staples.

3. The commerce of Portugal was once very extensive, but is now quite limited. The manufactures are small in amount; and an imperfect knowledge of the commonest arts is observable.

4. The agriculture is in a backward state; and few of the improvements common elsewhere are known here. Much of the produce of the soil is carried to market on the heads of female peasants.

5. The Catholic is the established religion. The government was formerly an absolute monarchy, but it is now limited; a new constitution having been adopted in 1838. Literature and science are but little encouraged, and the education of the people is greatly neglected.

6. The Portuguese and Spaniards are very similar in character and manners; yet a strong dislike exists between the two nations. The peasantry of this country have been usually represented as indolent, cowardly, and revengeful; but on many occasions, during the last war with France, they displayed qualities not unworthy their gallant ancestors.

7. Brazil, the most important colony of Portugal, became independent in the year 1821. The remaining colonies comprise the Azores, Madeira, and Cape Verd islands in Africa; besides Congo, &c., the towns of Goa and Macao, in Asia, and part of the island of Timor in Malaysia. The population of the colonies is about 1,632,000.

Portugal. Q.—1. What is said of Portugal? 2. The surface? Climate? Chief staples? 3. What is said of commerce? Manufactures? 4. The agriculture? 5. Religion? Government? Literature, &c.? 6. The Portuguese? 7. What is said of the colonies?

8. Lisbon, the capital, is a place of considerable commerce, and has one of the finest harbours in the world. It was nearly destroyed by an earthquake in 1755, and 30,000 of the inhabitants perished. It is ill-built and dirty, but contains some fine public buildings and squares. There are many negroes and mulattoes; dogs are very numerous.

9. Oporto, the second city in the kingdom, has long been famous for its port-wine. St. Ubes is noted for its salt-works, at which 100,000 tons of salt are made yearly. Coimbra is celebrated for its university which contains 40 professors, and about 1900 students.

10. Ourique is noted for the defeat of five Moorish kings by Alphonso I. of Portugal, 700 years ago. At Vimeira, Lord Wellington obtained his first victory in the Peninsular war; and at Busaco, he repulsed the French marshal, Massena, with an inferior force.

Map No. 21.—What bounds Portugal on the north and east? Sn. —West and south? A.-On.—Which are the principal rivers? Ts., Do., Ga.—How long is each of these? On what river is Lisbon? Ts.—Oporto? Do.—Coimbra? Mo.—Which are the principal mountains? What is the population of Lisbon? Oporto? Coimbra? St. Ubes? Braga? Elvas? Evora? Where is Ourique? Vimeira? Busaco?

——— 173 ———

GERMANY.

1. Germany is an extensive country, in the centre of Europe; and once contained 300 separate states. It now comprises the Empire of Austria, the kingdoms of Prussia, Bavaria, Saxony, Hanover, and Wirtemberg, with 28 smaller states and 4 republics or free cities.

2. These form the Union called the "Germanic Confederation;" the object of which is to provide for mutual safety and defence. Each state is independent within itself, but for general purposes the whole is governed by the Diet, a body composed of plenipotentiaries from the different states.

3. This region is traversed by numerous rivers and extensive ranges of mountains. Agriculture is carried on with diligence, and mining is one of the chief sources of wealth. The inland trade is considerable, and the manufactures are

---

8. Describe Lisbon. 9. Oporto, St. Ubes, &c. 10. What occurred at Ourique? Vimeira? Busaco?

Germany. Q.—1. What did it once contain? What does it comprise? 2. What do these form? What is said of each state? Of the Diet? 3. By what is this region traversed? What is said of

Brown European Bear.

The Wolf.

important and various. Rail-roads are in progress of construction through all parts of Germany.

4. Germany is well supplied with cattle, horses, hogs, and sheep: of the latter, those of Saxony are particularly noted for the fineness of their wool. The bear, wolf, and wild boar, are less common than formerly, but are still found in the remote districts.

5. The Germans are an industrious and persevering people: by them printing, watches, and gunpowder were invented; they are fond of music, and their learned men are distinguished for their attainments in literature and science.

6. The public libraries of this country are 150 in number, with 5 million volumes; and there are not less than 10,000 authors, producing every year from 4,000 to 5,000 books. The universities are celebrated, and much resorted to from other countries. Seminaries, styled gymnasia, are numerous, many of which rank as noted schools of learning.

7. In the means of education, the north of Germany surpasses the south. In Prussia, Saxony, Bavaria, and some of the smaller divisions of the north, schools are numerous, and there are very few persons who cannot read; while in other parts of the country the lower classes are still ignorant, and averse to improvement.

8. In religion, Germany is divided between the Catholic and Protestant churches: the former includes the majority of the people, numbering 21 millions, while the Protestants amount to 18 millions: the latter, comprising Lutherans and Calvinists chiefly, have united in many places into one body, under the name of the Evangelical Church. There are also some Moravians, Mennonists, Jews, &c.

---

agriculture? Mining? Trade? Manufactures? 4. What is Germany well supplied with? What is said of sheep? The bear, &c.? 5. Describe the Germans. What did they invent? What is said of music? Learned men? 6. The public libraries, &c.? Authors? Universities? Seminaries, &c.? 7. Of education? 8. Religion? Catholics? Protestants? Lutherans, Calvinists, &c.?

— 174 —

EMPIRE OF AUSTRIA.

1. Austria is one of the most important states in Europe: it comprises about one-third of Germany, with Hungary. Galicia, Dalmatia, and the kingdom of Lombardy and Venice.

2. The inhabitants are mostly Catholics; but there are some Protestants, as well as members of the Greek church; all sects being tolerated. The liberty of the press, and the freedom of debate, are, however, much restricted.

3. Austria has but a small extent of sea-coast, and a limited commerce. It has no colonies; but the Duchies of Tuscany, Parma, and Modena, in Italy, are dependent states. Gold, copper, iron, mercury, and salt, abound; the mines of Wieliczka in Galicia have been worked for 600 years, and still furnish salt. Grain and wine are the chief products.

4. The Emperor of Austria is absolute in all parts of his dominions, except in Hungary and some other districts. In the former he is styled king only, and his authority is limited by a diet or assembly of the nobles and elergy. The inhabitants comprise Germans, Poles, Italians, Magyars or Hungarians, Jews, and Gypsies. Seventeen different languages are spoken in the Empire.

5. The Austrian army amounts to upwards of 270,000 men, and is thought to be more efficient than formerly. The Empire possesses few advantages for a navy; yet a force of about 30 vessels, 8 of which are ships of the line, has been organized on the Gulf of Venice.

6. Vienna, the capital of the Austrian Empire, is one of the finest cities in Europe. It contains a number of palaees, churches, and other public buildings, some of which are splendid struetures. The citizens are described as a good-natured, hospitable people, mueh devoted to pleasure and luxurious living.

7. Some of the dwelling-houses in Vienna are immense structures, and are occupied by a number of different families. No city in Europe has so many resident nobility, and none, except London, so many wealthy citizens. It is on the Danube, 1100 miles from its mouth.

8. Prague, Gratz, Presburg, and Lemburg, are all places of note. Buda and Pesth, situated on opposite sides of the Danube, are joined together by a beautiful suspension bridge. These towns united, form

---

Austria. Q.—1. What is Austria? What does it comprise? 2. What is said of the inhabitants? 3. The sea-coast and commerce? Of gold, &c.? 4. The Emperor? The inhabitants? Languages? 5. What is said of the army? Navy? 6. Deseribe Vienna. 7. What is said of its dwelling-houses, &c.? 8. Prague, &c.? Trieste?

the largest city in Hungary. Debretzin is also an important town Trieste is the chief sea-port of Austria; a considerable trade is carried on with the United States, and other countries.

9. Brunn, Lintz, Salzburg, and Steyer, are manufacturing towns. Hallein and Halle are noted for their salt works, and Idria for its mines of quicksilver. Marienbad, Carlsbad, Toplitz, and Sedlitz, are much visited for their baths and mineral waters. At Olmutz, General Lafayette was imprisoned for a considerable time.

10. Sor, Lowositz, Reichenberg, Kolin, &c., are famous for important battles fought between the Austrians and Prussians. At Austerlitz and Wagram, the emperor Napoleon gained decisive victories; at Aspern he was repulsed by the Archduke Charles.

— 175 —

Berlin.

PRUSSIA.

1. Prussia, formerly a dukedom, was erected into a kingdom in the year 1701, and from a small and weak state has become one of the most powerful in Europe.

2. It is in general a level country, with numerous rivers, lakes, and marshes. In some parts the soil is fertile, while in others there are large tracts unfit for cultivation. Grain and cattle are the chief productions.

3. Prussia has but little foreign commerce, but the inland trade is considerable. The manufactures are principally linens, woollens, and articles of iron and steel. The chief part of the people are of the Protestant faith, and belong to

---

9. What is said of Brunn, &c.? Hallein, &c.? Marienbad, &c.? Olmutz? 10. Sor, &c.? Austerlitz, &c.?

Prussia. Q. — 1. What is said of Prussia? 2. The country? Its productions? 3. Commerce? Manufactures? What are the chief

the Evangelical or Lutheran Calvinistic Church; but all other sects are tolerated, and are on an equal footing.

4. The government is an absolute monarchy. The army is famous for its discipline, and almost every man must serve in it for three years. The navy consists of a single ship. Education is more general, and schools more numerous here than in any country in Europe.

5. This kingdom comprises two detached sections. The western part, which is situated on the river Rhine, was annexed to Prussia in 1815. The eastern contains various provinces, some of which once belonged to Poland. Neufchatel in Switzerland, and some other small districts, also belong to this state.

6. Berlin, the capital of Prussia, is a handsome city, and is remarkable for its splendid edifices, its numerous literary institutions, and particularly for its university. Manufactures of printed cotton, woollen, linen, silk, and porcelain, are carried on to some extent.

7. Dantzick, Konigsberg, Stettin, and Stralsund, are the chief sea ports. Breslau is noted for its fairs; Magdeburg for its sieges and strong fortifications; Halle for its university and salt-works; and Potsdam for its palace of Sans Souci and other splendid buildings. Halberstadt and Erfurt are important towns.

8. At Wittenberg, Luther commenced the Reformation. Cologne is famed for Cologne-water; Dusseldorf, Elberfeld, and Barmen, for manufactures of various kinds; Aix-la-Chapelle for its warm baths; and Treves for its cathedral. Coblentz is an important fortress.

9. At Rosbach, Lissa, Zorndorf, Liegnitz, &c., Frederick the Great gained important victories, and at Cunnersdorf he was defeated. The actions fought at Minden, Eylau,* Friedland,* Erfurt, and Lutzen, are all celebrated. At the first battle of Lutzen, in 1632, Gustavus Adolphus, the renowned king of Sweden, was killed.

176

BAVARIA, &c.

1. This kingdom is, next to Austria and Prussia, the most important state in Germany. It consists of two distinct territories, situated about 40 miles apart, and separated from each other by Wirtemberg and Baden.

---

part of the people? 4. What is said of the government? Army? Navy? Education? 5. What does this kingdom comprise? 6. Describe Berlin. 7. Dantzick, and other towns. 8. What is said of Wittenburg? Cologne, &c.? 9. Rosbach, Lissa, &c.? Minden, &c.? Erfurt, &c.?

Bavaria, &c. Q.—1. What is said of Bavaria? 2. Of the soil, &c.?

* For the position of these places, see Map No. 18.

2. The soil is moderately fertile. Cattle and hogs are reared in considerable numbers. Wine, brandy, and beer, are made to some extent. Education has been of late years very generally diffused, and the institutions of learning are in a flourishing condition.

3. Munich, the capital, is one of the handsomest cities in Germany, and is noted for its university, theatre, library, and splendid galleries of sculpture and paintings. Nuremberg, Augsburg, Ratisbon, Wurtzburg, and Bamberg, are important places: watches and globes were invented in the first named city, and it has been long famous for its trade in children's toys.

4. Famous victories were gained at Blenheim by the Duke of Marlborough, at Hohenlinden by General Moreau, and at Eckmühl and Ratisbon by the Emperor Napoleon.

HANOVER.

5. Hanover, formerly an electorate, became a kingdom in 1815; and was governed by a viceroy, appointed by the king of England. When queen Victoria ascended the British throne, her uncle, Ernest, became king of Hanover.

6. Agriculture and manufactures are not very flourishing; of the latter, linen is the chief fabric. The mines are important, and extensively wrought. Gold, silver, iron, lead, and copper, all abound. Potatoes form the chief food of the people.

7. Hanover is the capital of the kingdom, and derives its chief importance from that circumstance. Gottingen is celebrated for its university: its library, observatory, and botanic gardens, are among the most valuable in Europe. Emden is the chief sea-port. Hildesheim, Luneburg, and Osnaburg, have considerable manufactures.

SAXONY.

8. This kingdom, the smallest in Europe, is, for its extent, one of the most populous of the German states. Commerce, manufactures, and mining, are carried on with great industry. Vast flocks of sheep are raised, the wool of which is largely exported, and is highly esteemed for its fineness.

9. Dresden, the capital, is one of the finest cities in the north of Germany. Its public buildings, libraries, and galleries of paintings, are remarkable. Leipsic is famous for its university; and for its great fairs, held twice a year, at which vast quantities of books and other articles are sold.

Education? 3. Describe Munich, &c. 4. What is said of Blenheim? &c.? 5. Of Hanover? 6. Agriculture, &c.? 7. Describe Hanover. Gottingen, &c. 8. What is said of Saxony? 9. Describe Dresden.

10. Chemnitz is noted for its cotton manufactures, Meissen for porcelain, Freyburg for its mines and mining academy, Zittau for its extensive trade with Bohemia, and Herrnhut as the original seat of the Moravian brethren. Leipsic, Dresden, and Bautzen, were the scenes of important battles fought by the emperor Napoleon against the allies.

WIRTEMBERG, OR WURTEMBURG.

11. This state was erected into a kingdom in 1806. It is one of the best cultivated parts of Germany, and produces grain, wine, and fruits of various kinds. Cherries are extent sively raised, from which the liquor called kirchwasser is made. Geese and snails are reared and fattened in great numbers, and sent to Vienna and Italy.

12. Stuttgard, the capital, is a well-built city. The royal library contains 200,000 volumes, and is remarkable for its collection of bibles, which comprises 8250 copies, in 68 different languages. Ulm is celebrated for its cathedral. Reutlingen and Tubingen are both important towns: the latter is noted for its university; Halle for its salt-works, and Heilbron for mineral springs.

— 177 —

THE SMALLER GERMAN STATES.

1. *The Grand Duchy of Baden* consists principally of a narrow but fertile plain on the east side of the Rhine. Grain and wine are the chief products. The manufacture of wooden clocks is a considerable branch of industry: they are sent in great numbers to various parts of the world.

2. Carlsruhe, the capital, and Manheim, are amongst the finest cities in Germany. At Heidelberg there is a great tun, now empty, which held 800 hogsheads. Baden* is noted for its warm baths, and Freyburg for a magnificent Gothic minster, the spire of which is 380 feet high.

3. The Hessian States comprise the *Electorate of Hesse Cassel*, the *Grand Duchy of Hesse Darmstadt*, and the *Landgraviate of Hesse Homburg*. Hesse Cassel lies chiefly on the river Fulda, southward of

---

Leipsic. 10. Chemnitz and the other towns. 11. What is said of Wirtemberg? What is extensively raised, &c.? 12. Describe Stuttgard, Ulm, &c.

Smaller German States. Q.—1. Describe Baden. 2. Carlsruhe, and the other towns. 3. What is said of the Hessian States? Hesse Cas-

---

* Baden is a German word signifying bathing; and is the name of two other towns noted for their baths, viz., Baden in Austria, and Baden in Switzerland.

Hanover and Prussia. It comprises also two small districts, situated one 35 miles north, and the other 20 miles east, of the principal territory. The soldiers of this state are no longer hired to foreign powers.

4. *Hesse Darmstadt* consists of three separate districts, two of which are on the north, and the other on the south side of the river Mayne. It is the most densely peopled of the Hessian States. *Hesse Homburg* comprises two distinct sections, separated 50 miles from each other.

Mentz.

5. Cassel, Darmstadt, and Homburg, are the capitals. Hanau, Fulda, and Marburg, are important towns in Cassel; and Worms and Mentz in Darmstadt: the latter is strongly fortified, and is celebrated as the place where printing was invented. The house where Faust and Guttemburg made their first essays in that art is still shown.

6. The Saxon Duchies comprise the *Grand Duchy of Saxe Weimar*, and the *Duchies of Saxe Coburg Gotha*, *Saxe Meiningen Hilburghausen*, and *Saxe Altenburg*. They are situated between Prussia and Bavaria, the kingdom of Saxony and the Hessian States.

7. Saxe Coburg Gotha contains also a small district situated 170 miles south-west from the residue of the state. Weimar, Gotha, Meiningen, and Altenburg, are the capitals of the Saxon Duchies.

8. Weimar enjoys a high reputation for learning. It has been the residence of some celebrated authors. Gotha, Altenburg, Eisenach, and Jena, are important towns. The last is noted for its university and the great victory gained by the French over the Prussians.

9. Mecklenburg comprises the *Grand Duchies of Mecklenburg Schwerin* and *Mecklenburg Strelitz*. The capitals are Schwerin and New Strelitz. The former is situated on a lake of the same name. Rostock and Wismar are important commercial towns. Gustrow is noted for its beer, and Ludwigslust for its magnificent palace.

10. *Oldenburg* is almost surrounded by the dominions of Hanover. Some small districts in Holstein and the south part of Prussia also

---

sel? 4. Hesse Darmstadt? Hesse Homburg? 5. Cassel, &c.? 6. The Saxon Duchies? 7. Saxe Coburg Gotha? 8. Weimar, &c.? 9. Mecklenburg, &c.? 10. Oldenburg, &c.? 11. Brunswick, &c.? 12.

belong to this state. Oldenburg, the capital, is a well-built city, with a handsome ducal palace. The other towns are small and unimportant.

11. *Brunswick* consists of five distinct portions, surrounded by the territories of Prussia and Hanover. The city of Brunswick, the capital, is noted for its annual fairs. Wolfenbuttel, 7 miles south of Brunswick, contains one of the most valuable libraries in Europe.

— 178 —

12. The *Duchy of Nassau* is situated on the rivers Rhine and Mayne. It is famous for its wines and mineral waters. Wisbaden, the capital, is much visited on account of its warm springs. At Niederselters, two million bottles are filled annually with the celebrated Seltzer water.

13. *Anhalt Dessau*, *Anhalt Bernburg*, and *Anhalt Cothen*, form two detached portions, entirely enclosed by Prussia and Brunswick. The capitals are Dessau, Bernburg, and Cothen.

14. The Principalities of *Schwartzburg Rudolstadt* and *Schwartzburg Sondershausen* form separate territories, which lie about 25 miles apart. The capitals are Rudolstadt and Sondershausen.

15. *Reuss Greitz* and *Reuss Schleitz* consist of two distinct sections, separated but a short distance from each other. Greitz and Lobenstein are the capitals. Gera is the chief town.

16. *Lippe Detmold* and *Lippe Schauenburg* are situated, the latter on the north and the other on the south side of the Weser river, and about 10 miles apart. Buckeburg and Detmold are the capitals.

17. *Hohenzollern Hechingen* and *Hohenzollern Sigmaringen* form a connected domain. They lie in the southern part of the kingdom of Wirtemberg. Hechingen and Sigmaringen are the capitals.

18. *Waldeck* consists of two detached sections about 30 miles from each other. Pyrmont, the largest town, is noted for its mineral waters, and is annually visited by many strangers. Arolsen is the capital.

19. *Lichtenstein*, the smallest of the principalities, is situated on the upper part of the river Rhine, between Austria and Switzerland. Vadutz is the capital. The Prince usually resides in Vienna.

20. The Lordship of *Kniphausen* is the smallest of the German States, and the smallest in Europe. It is situated within the territories of Oldenburg. The capital is the castle of Kniphausen, with a small adjoining village containing only 8 houses and 50 inhabitants.

21. The Free Cities of Germany are *Hamburg*, *Lubec*, *Bremen*, and *Frankfort*. These are all that remain of the famous Hanseatic League.

Describe Nassau, &c. 13. Anhalt Dessau, &c. 14. Schwartzburg Rudolstadt, &c. 15. Reuss Greitz, &c. 16. Lippe Detmold, &c. 17. Hohenzollern Hechingen, &c. 18. Waldeck. 19. Lichtenstein. 20.

that once comprised 85 of the most commercial European towns, and ruled, by their wealth and arms, a great part of northern Europe.

22. Hamburg is the chief commercial city in Germany. It is the seat of extensive manufactures, and the ships of almost all nations visit its port.* Lubeck and Bremen are important commercial towns. At Frankfort the Germanic Diet, or Congress of the German princes, holds its meetings. This city is celebrated for its semi-annual fairs, which attract merchants from all parts of Europe.

23. The Duchies of *Holstein* and *Lauenburg* belong to Denmark. Altona, Kiel, and Gluckstadt, are the chief towns in Holstein, and Lauenburg in Lauenburg.

24. The Grand Duchy of *Luxemburg* belongs part to Belgium and part to Holland. The title of Grand Duke, and the right of voting in the German Diet are enjoyed by the king of Holland. Luxemburg, the capital, is noted for the strength of its fortifications. Bastogne is the next most important town.

— 179 —

Map No. 20.—What bounds Germany on the north? N.-Sa., Dk., B.-Sa.—South? Sd., L. and V.—East? Pd., Ga., Hy.—West? Hd., Bm., Fe. (See table of the German States.) How many German States? How many are Empires? Kingdoms? Grand Duchies? Duchies? Principalities? Electorates? Landgraviates? Lordships? Republics? How many are Catholic? Protestant? Absolute in government?

How long and wide is Germany? Its area? Population? To what state does Holstein and Lauenburg belong? Dk.—Luxemburg? Hd.—Point out the different states on the Map. The Smaller German States which have a common title will be found under their respective heads: thus, the Saxon Duchies are under SAXE; those of Anhalt, under ANHALT, &c. The capitals designate the general position of the special divisions.

What rivers flow into the North Sea? Re., Es., Wr., Ee., Er.—Into the Baltic Sea? Or.—How long is each of these? Which is the principal river in the south of Germany? De.—Into what river do the Meuse, Moselle, Mayne, and Neckar flow? Re.—The Lech, Iser, Inn, Ens, Leitha, March, Raab, and Drave? De.—The Save also flows into the Danube. Into what river do the Hunte, Aller, Fulda, and Werra flow? Wr.—The Moldau, Mulda, Saale, Havel, and Ilmenau? Ee.—The Neisse, Bober, and Wartha, are the chief branches of the Oder. Into what sea does the Danube flow? (See Map, No. 18.)

Where is Muritz Lake? L. Schweiloch? Ammer L.? Chiem L.? Atter L.? Traun L.? L. of Constance? Cirknitz L.? The latter is an alternating lake: it is full of water in winter, which passes off

---

Kniphausen. 21. The Free cities, &c. 22. Hamburg, &c. 23. Holstein and Lauenburg. 24. Luxemburg.

---

* In the year 1842, a dreadful fire occurred in Hamburg, which destroyed property to the amount of 30 million dollars.

in the early part of summer, and the bottom of the lake becomes a pasture-ground. Where are the islands of Rugen, Usedom, and Wollin? To what state do they belong? Pa.—What island lies west of Holstein? Hd.—To what power does it belong? G.-Bn.

Where are the Mts. called the Fichtelgebirge, Erzgebirge, and Riesengebirge? These form the Sudetic Mts. Point out the Hartz, Bohmerwald, Arlberg, and Vosges Mts. How high are all the foregoing? Point out the Black Forest or Schwarzwald, Odenwald, and Hercynian Mts. The Alps. How long are they? Point out the Rhetian Alps, Julian Alps, Noric Alps, and Styrian Alps.

Where are Bohemia, Moravia, Austrian Silesia, Upper Austria, Lower Austria, Tyrol, Styria, Carinthia, and Carniola? These are the German provinces of Austria. The two last form the kingdom of Illyria. Where is Pomerania, Brandenburg, Silesia, Saxony, Westphalia, and Rhine? These are the German provinces of Prussia. For the other great divisions of Austria, see Map No. 18. They are Hungary, Galicia, and Dalmatia. Chief towns, Pest, Lemberg, and Zara. The remaining Prussian provinces are Posen and East and West Prussia. Chief towns, Posen, Konigsberg, and Dantzick.

Point out the capitals of the German States. The population of each. Point out the capitals situated on rivers that are named in the Map, and the names of the rivers. Point where universities and colleges are situated. Tell the number in each state respectively. Which is the most populous city in Germany? Va.—The next? Bn.—In what years did the battles fought in Austria take place? In Prussia? Bavaria? Saxony? Wirtemberg? Saxe Weimar.

— 180 —

Berne.

SWITZERLAND.

1. SWITZERLAND is the most mountainous country in Europe. It is remarkable for the grandeur of its scenery, and the freedom of its political institutions.

2. It is called the "Helvetic Republic;" and consists of 22 cantons, each of which is independent; but are united for national security, and governed by a general diet.*

Switzerland. Q.—1. Describe Switzerland. 2. What is it called?

* All the cantons are republics except Neufchatel, of which the king of Prussia is sovereign.

3. Switzerland is traversed by the Alps. Extensive fields of ice, called glaciers, cover their lofty summits; and avalanches, composed of vast bodies of snow, sometimes rush down upon the valleys, burying travellers, buildings, and even villages, in one common ruin.

4. Many parts of the country are but ill adapted to agriculture; but by the industry of the inhabitants, spots apparently doomed to eternal sterility are crowned with vegetation. The products are grain, wine, and various kinds of fruit; but pasturage and the making of cheese are the chief objects of the farmer.

5. The Swiss are honest, brave, and hospitable, ardently attached to liberty, and to their native country. Education is general in Switzerland; and great crimes are rare. The Protestants and Catholics are about equal in number. The languages spoken are the German, French, and Italian.

6. Berne is usually considered the capital of Switzerland; but Zurich and Lucerne share with it that honour, each being alternately the seat of government for two years at a time. Geneva is situated on the lake of the same name. It is distinguished for its literary institutions, and its extensive manufactures of clocks, watches, &c.

7. Freiburg is noted for its iron suspension bridge. It crosses the river Sarine, is 905 feet in length, and 175 above the surface of the water. It was completed in the year 1834.

8. Near Schaffhausen are the celebrated Falls of the Rhine. Morgarten and Morat were the scenes of splendid victories gained in the cause of freedom. At Morgarten, 1600 Swiss routed 20,000 Austrians. In this battle the celebrated William Tell distinguished himself. At Zurich the French defeated the Austrians and Russians.

9. Among the quadrupeds found in Switzerland are the Alpine spaniel and the ibex. The former is one of the largest animals of its

Alpine Spaniel.

Ibex.

---

3. What is said of the Alps? Avalanches? 4. Agriculture, &c.? Products? 5. Describe the Swiss. What is said of education? Lan-

kind. Several are kept by the monk of Mount St. Bernard, for the purpose of discovering travellers lost in crossing the mountains in time of snow. The ibex is a species of wild goat, and dwells among the highest precipices of the Alps, whither they are often followed by those who hunt them.

Map No. 20.—What bounds Switzerland on the north? Fe., Bn., Wg.—South? Sa., L. and V.—East? Tl.—Where are the Jura Mts.? Pennine Alps? Lepontine Alps? How high is Mt. Rosa? The Jura Mts.? Where is Lake Constance? Geneva L.? L. Neufchatel? L. Luecrne? L. Zurich? How long is each of these lakes? Where is Neufchatel and its territory? This little state is a Swiss canton, but under the government of the king of Prussia. What is the population of Geneva? Basle? Berne? Zurich? Luecrne? Which of these towns have colleges? How high are the Falls of the Rhine? When were the battles of Morgarten, Morat, and Zurich, fought? What three considerable rivers rise in Switzerland? Re., Re., In.

— 181 —

ITALY.

1. Italy forms a great peninsula, bounded on the east by the Gulf of Venice, and on the west by the Mediterranean

---

guages? 6. Berne, &c.? Geneva? 7. Freiburg? 8. Where are the Falls of the Rhine? What is said of Morgarten, &c.? William Tell? Zurich? 9. What quadrupeds are found in Switzerland?

Italy. Q.—1. What does Italy form? 2. What is it? For what is

sea. It was the country of the ancient Romans, and is filled with the remains of their splendid cities and buildings.

2. Though in a state of decline, Italy is one of the most interesting countries in the world, and almost every spot in it has been the scene of some remarkable event. The country is noted for the mildness of its climate, and for the beauty, diversity, and romantic character of its scenery.

3. The soil is generally fertile, and is in some parts well cultivated. The chief products are wheat, corn, rice, oil, wine, and silk. The principal fruits are oranges, figs, dates, and almonds.

4. The Roman Catholic is the established religion in all the Italian States. In this country are to be found the finest specimens of architecture. The churches are costly and magnificent, and the dwellings of some of the nobles rival the palaces of kings and emperors.

5. The Italians are highly distinguished for their skill in sculpture, painting, architecture, and music; but are not much noted at present for literature or science. They are naturally a lively people, with active passions and ardent imaginations, and generally have expressive countenances and animated sparkling eyes.

Italian Costume.

6. The higher ranks wear the usual European dress; but among the lower orders, there are various local peculiarities of costume. The food of the Italians is generally light; fruits and vegetables are more common articles of diet than flesh, and, as in the other parts of the south of Europe, oil and wine are much used by all classes of the people.

---

it noted? 3. What is said of the soil? 4. Religion? What are to be found? 5. Describe the Italians. 6. Their dress. Food

7. Italy comprises the kingdom of Sardinia, the kingdom of Naples, the kingdom of Lombardy and Venice, the Popedom, the Grand Duchy of Tuscany and Lucca, the Duchies of Parma and Modena, the Republic of San Marino, and the Principality of Monaco.

SARDINIA.

8. The kingdom of Sardinia embraces the north-west section of Italy, together with the large island of Sardinia. The continental part of this state is fertile and well cultivated, and there are some manufactures of silk. Savoy, Piedmont, Genoa, and Nice, are the continental provinces.

Genoa.

9. Turin, the capital, is the most regularly built of all the Italian cities. Genoa, surnamed the Superb, was long the capital of a powerful republic; it was the birth-place of Columbus. It is now the chief sea-port of Sardinia. Alessandria, Nice, Asti, Coni, and Mondovi, are important towns. Cagliari is the chief town of the island of Sardinia.

10. At Montenotte, Mondovi, and Marengo, Bonaparte gained decisive victories. That of Montenotte was the commencement of his career of conquest. Previous to the victory of Marengo, he crossed the Alps with the whole of his army. At Novi the French were defeated by the Russian General Suwarrow.

11. Monaco.—The principality of Monaco is a small independent state, under the protection of Sardinia, with 7000 inhabitants. Its capital, Monaco, is a small village. Mentone is the chief town. The reigning prince is a peer of France, and usually lives in Paris.

Map No. 21.—What Mts. bound Italy on the north? As.—What sea on the south and west? M.-Sa.—East? G.-Ve.—What islands lie west? Ca., Sa., Ea.—South? Sy.—What strait separates Italy from Turkey? Oo.—What Mts. extend through Italy? Ae.

---

7. What does Italy comprise? 8. Describe Sardinia. 9. Turin, Genoa, &c. 10 What is said of Montenotte, &c.? Marengo? 11. Monaca.

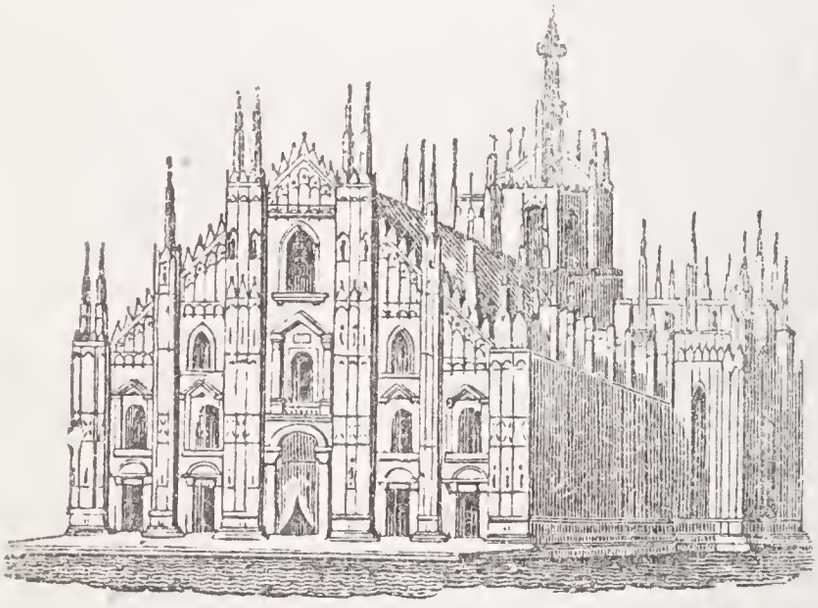
Map No. 20.—Where is the river Po? What rivers flow into it on the north? South? Into the Gulf of Venice? How long are the Po and Adige? Where is Lake Garda? L. Como? L. Maggiore? How long is each? How is Sardinia bounded on the north? South? East? West? Where are the Maritime Alps? Cottian Alps? Pennine Alps? How high is Mont Blanc? Mt. Rosa? How long and high are the Apennines? What is the population of Turin, and the other towns? On what rivers are they? Where is Monaco?

Map No. 21.—Where is the island of Sardinia? How long and wide is it? What strait separates it from Corsica? Bo.—Point out its highest Mt. What is the population of Cagliari? Sassari?

182

LOMBARDY AND VENICE, OR AUSTRIAN ITALY.

1. The kingdom of Lombardy and Venice is situated between the river Po and the Alps, and westward of the Gulf of Venice. It belongs to Austria, and is one of the best cultivated territories in Italy. Its agriculture, trade, and manufactures, are prosperous. It consists of two divisions, Lombardy in the west, and Venice in the east.



Milan Cathedral.

2. Milan, the seat of government, is on the Olona river, a branch of the Po. It is a handsome city, and was greatly improved by the Emperor Napoleon. It was founded 2400 years ago, and was forty times besieged, forty times taken, and four times destroyed and rebuilt. The public buildings are numerous and splendid. The cathedral is the finest specimen of Gothic architecture in existence, and the statues with which it is adorned are said to amount to 4000.

3. Venice, the capital of the ancient republic of that name, was long the chief maritime city of the south of Europe, and though its extensive commerce and naval greatness have departed, it is still an important place. It is a remarkable city, being built upon 72 islands,

---

Lombardy and Venice. Q.—1. What is said of Lombardy and

joined together by 500 bridges. Venice has canals for streets, and boats or gondolas for carriages. It is at the head of the gulf of the same name, or Adriatic sea.

4. Padua and Pavia are noted for their universities, Verona for the remains of a vast Roman amphitheatre, Cremona for violins, Brescia for fire-arms, Bergamo for its great fair, and Mantua for its strong fortifications. At the battle of Pavia, Francis I., king of France, was taken prisoner. Lodi, Arcola, and Rivoli, were, particularly the first, the scenes of important battles between the French and Austrians.

PARMA AND MODENA.

5. The Duchies of Parma and Modena are fertile and populous districts, situated south of Lombardy and Venice. Parma gives name to the celebrated Parmesan cheese; Modena is noted for its Carrara marble, the finest in the world.

6. In both these territories, swine, poultry, and bees, are extensively reared. Bread prepared from chesnuts is eaten by the labouring people. The capitals have the same name as the duchies to which they respectively belong. Placentia and Reggio are the next important towns.

TUSCANY AND LUCCA.*

7. The Grand Duchy of Tuscany and Lucca is the most prosperous state in Italy. Manufactures of silk, soap, and Leghorn bonnets, are carried on to a considerable extent. The latter employs a number of women and children.

8. Florence, the capital, surnamed the Beautiful, is one of the handsomest cities in Europe. Its palaces, churches, galleries, and libraries, are all celebrated. Leghorn is the chief sea-port of Italy: it has an extensive commerce, and an animation unusual in Italian towns.

9. Pisa is noted for the Campanile, or leaning tower; it is 190 feet high, and inclines 15 feet from the perpendicular. Sienna, 30 miles south of Florence, contains a vast cathedral. Its university has some reputation as a school of medicine.

THE POPEDOM, OR STATES OF THE CHURCH.

10. The territory forming the Popedom, or States of the Church, occupies the centre of Italy. It is ruled by the Pope, who is the head of the Catholic church, and is invested with absolute power, both spiritual and temporal.

Venice? 2. Milan? 3. Venice? 4. Padua, &c.? 5. What is said of Parma, &c.? 6. Of swine, &c.? Bread? 7. Tuscany and Lucca? 8.

* In 1847 the Duchy of Lucca was annexed to Tuscany, in consideration of an annual rent or pension paid by the latter to the Duke of Lucca, who now resides in Paris as a private gentleman. The sovereign of the two states takes the title of Grand Duke of Tuscany and Lucca

11. Rome, the capital of these states, was in ancient times the largest city in the world. It was 50 miles in circumference, and had a population of two million inhabitants. Though now much decayed, and a great part of it in ruins, it is still the most interesting city in Europe.

The City of Rome.

12. It contains a great number of churches, superb palaces, and magnificent remains of antiquity. St. Peter's, the largest of its churches, and the largest in the world, was 111 years in building, and cost a sum equal to 160 million dollars at the present day.

13. Bologna and Ferrara are, after the capital, the next important towns; the first is noted for its university. Ferrara was once the capital of an independent duchy. Ravenna, in the 5th century, was the capital of the Western Empire. Ancona and Civita Vecchia are the chief sea-ports. Loreto has long been a place of great resort for pilgrims, to visit its holy shrine, but the number has of late decreased.

14. San Marino.—This little republic, the smallest in Europe, is under the protection of the Pope, and has been independent 1300 years. It occupies a tract of 22 square miles, with 7600 inhabitants. The capital is on the side of a mountain, and has a population of 5500.

Map No. 20.—What bounds Lombardy and Venice on the north? South? East? West? What is the population of the chief towns? Point out those situated on rivers. When were the different battles fought? How is Parma bounded? Modena? Lucca? What is the population of the cities in those states? Where is San Marino?

Map No. 21.—What is the population of Rome? Bologna? Ferrara? Florence? Leghorn? On what river is Rome? Florence? What island west of Tuscany? Ea. — It was the residence of Napoleon Bonaparte during part of the years 1814 and 1815.

Florence? 9. Pisa, &c.? 10. Popedom? 11. Rome? 12. What does it contain? 13. What is said of Bologna, Ferrara, Ravenna, &c.? 14. Describe San Marino.

— 183 —

NAPLES, OR THE TWO SICILIES.

1. The kingdom of Naples is the most considerable in Italy for extent and population. It comprises the southern half of Italy, the island of Sicily, and the Lipari Isles.

The City and Bay of Naples.

2. All parts of this kingdom have a warm climate, and a luxuriant soil. The fig and almond tree, the cotton-plant, and sugar-cane, all flourish; yet the cities and towns are filled with beggars, and persons destitute of employment.

3. The supineness of the government, and the indolence of the people, prevent agriculture, manufactures, or commerce, from being diligently pursued. The latter is chiefly carried on by foreigners. The exports are oil, silk, wine, and wool.

Porcupine.

Quail.

4. The principal wild animals found in Italy are the wolf and wild boar. These, though rare, are occasionally seen in the mountains and forests of this kingdom; and the porcupine is met with in the south-

Naples. Q. — 1. What does Naples occupy? 2. Of the climate, soil, &c.? 3. Government? Commerce, &c.? 4. Wild animals?

ern districts. Birds in great variety inhabit all sections of the peninsula; and immense flocks of quails pass from Sicily to the more northern regions of Europe, during the spring of every year.

5. Sicily is the largest and most fertile island in the Mediterranean sea. In ancient times it was the granary of Rome. It contains Etna, the most noted volcano in Europe. Smoke and flames issue from the summit of this mountain, though covered with perpetual snow.

6. North of Sicily are the Lipari Islands; one of which, Stromboli, is a volcanic mountain, constantly burning; it is called the light-house of the Mediterranean. Its flames may be seen at night 100 miles distant. Lipari, the principal island, consists entirely of pumice-stone.

7. Naples, the capital of this kingdom, is the most populous city in Italy. It is situated on a bay of the same name, near the base of Mount Vesuvius. It is noted for the beauty of its situation, and is remarkable for the number of its nobles and lazzaroni, or vagabonds.

8. Taranto, Bari, Cava, Foggio, Lecce, and Salerno, are all considerable towns in Naples. Gaeta is strongly fortified, and is regarded as one of the keys of the kingdom. Palermo, the chief city of Sicily, has a university, and some commerce. Catania, Messina, Marsala, Trapani, and Syracuse, are the principal towns. The two first have often suffered from earthquakes. Marsala is noted for its wine.

9. Malta.—Malta is a celebrated island lying in the Mediterranean sea, south of Sicily. It is noted for the strength of its fortifications. This island formerly belonged to the knights of St. John, a powerful military order; but now it belongs to Great Britain. Valetta, the capital and port, is very strongly fortified, and has an excellent harbour. Gozzo, north of Malta, is a dependency of the latter.

10. Ionian Republic. — This republic comprises the islands of Corfu, Cephalonia, Zante, St. Maura, Paxu, Ithaca, and Cerigo, which lie chiefly on the west coast of Greece. It is under the protection of Great Britain, whose sovereign appoints the lord high commissioner, or head of the government.

11. The inhabitants are chiefly Greeks and Italians. They are an enterprising people, and carry on a considerable commerce in wine olive-oil, and currants. Zante is the largest town; but Corfu, on the island of the same name, is the capital.

Map No. 21.—How is Naples bounded? What strait separates it from Turkey? Oo.—What gulf in the south? To·—What mountains extend through it? As.—What Mt. near Naples? Vs.—In Sicily? Ea.—What islands north of Sicily? Li.—What capes in Sicily? What strait separates Italy and Sicily. What is the popula-

---

5. What is said of Sicily? Mount Etna? 6. The Lipari Islands? 7. Describe Naples. 8. Taranto, &c. Palermo, and the other towns. 9. Malta. Valetta. Gozzo. 10. Describe the Ionian republic. 11 The inhabitants. Commerce, &c. Population.

tion of Naples? Palermo? Messina? Catania? Taranto? Bari? Syracuse? How long and wide is Sicily? What island south? Ma. —What island north of Malta? Go.

Map No. 22.—On what coast do the Ionian isles lie? Ty. Ge.—Which is the largest island? Cu.—Most northern? Cu.—Southern? Co.—What is the population of the islands? Chief towns?

184

The Greeks destroying a Turkish man-of-war.

GREECE.

1. Greece is one of the most celebrated countries in the world. More than 2000 years ago, it excelled all others in civilization, learning, and the arts. It was for nearly four centuries subject to Turkish bondage; but has lately, after a protracted warfare, become independent.

2. The modern kingdom comprises the southern part of ancient Greece, together with those islands in the Archipelago called the Cyclades, and the northern Sporades. Its chief divisions are Hellas, the Morea, and the Islands.

3. The coasts of Greece are indented with numerous gulfs, and the interior is diversified with rugged mountains and fertile valleys. The climate is mild; and the soil, though badly cultivated, produces cotton, oil, wine, silk, &c., with fruits of various kinds.

Greece. Q.—1. What is said of Greece? How long was it subject, &c.? 2. What does the modern kingdom comprise? 3. What is

4. The Greeks are an active and vigorous race of people. In their late contest with the Turks, they displayed a courage not unworthy their heroic ancestors. The employment of fire-ships was with them a favourite mode of warfare, by which they destroyed some of the largest Turkish vessels.

5. The people are destitute of education; but they are anxious for improvement, and eager to rise from the degradation produced by their long political servitude. Considerable exertions are making to introduce schools, and to disseminate learning, good morals, and religion, The established religion is that of the Greek church.

6. The government chosen for this country by the great European powers, is a monarchy very nearly absolute: the selected king is Otho, son of Louis Charles of Bavaria.

7. Athens, the capital of Modern Greece, was one of the most celebrated cities of antiquity, and the birth-place of the most renowned orators, philosophers, and artists of ancient times. It was nearly all destroyed in the late war, but is reviving. Of its ancient remains, the renowned Acropolis, the pride of Athens 20 centuries ago, still exists—but is much dilapidated.

8. Tripolizza, Napoli, and Navarino, are among the chief towns. The last is celebrated for the destruction of the Turkish naval power by the combined fleets of England, France, and Russia, Oct. 20th, 1827;—an event which secured the independence of Greece.

9. Missolonghi and Patras, important Greek fortresses during the late war, are both on the gulf of Patras. At the first named, Lord Byron died, while promoting the cause of Grecian liberty. Livadia, Thebes, and Lepanto, are the only towns of any note. Corinth, once a magnificent city, is now a small village.

10. The principal Greek islands are Negropont, Andros, Naxia, Milo, Thermia, Zea, and Syra. The latter is the most flourishing, and the commerce of Syra, its chief town, is important. Hydra and Spezzia were, during the late war, renowned for the skill and courage of their sailors: their ships formed the chief part of the Greek navy.

Map No. 22.—What bounds Greece on the north? Ty.—South and west? M.-Sa.—East? Ao.—What peninsula in the south? Ma.—What isthmus unites it to the main land? Ch.—Which is the southern cape of Greece? Mn.—What island west of Greece? In.—Groups east? N. Ss., Cs.—What island near the east coast? Nt.—What gulfs on the south? East? West? What gulfs nearly separate Hellas and the Morea? Point out the chief mountains? Rivers? Lake? Tell the population of Athens? The other towns?

---

said of the coasts? Interior? Its products? 4. Describe the Greeks, &c. 5. What is said of the people? 6. The government? 7. Athens? 8. Tripolizza? Navarino? 9. Missolonghi, &c? Livadia, and the other towns? 10. Name the principal islands. What is said of Syra? Hydra, &c.?

— 185 —

TURKEY.

1. Turkey or the Ottoman empire, comprises two great divisions, Turkey in Europe and Turkey in Asia. It was once a powerful state; but has within the last hundred years greatly declined in strength and importance.

2. Its influence and territory are much diminished. Barbary is no longer tributary; Greece has become independent; while Egypt, as well as the islands of Cyprus and Candia, have fallen into the hands of Mahomet Ali, the Pacha of Egypt.

3. The government is despotic. The Sultan, or Grand Signior, is considered as reigning by divine commission; and as uniting in himself all the powers of the state. He is sometimes profanely called the shadow of God, brother to the sun and moon, and refuge of the world.

4. The court is called the Ottoman Porte, or Sublime Porte. The Divan is the great council of the nation; it is composed

Grand Signior. Grand Vizier. Mufti.

of the Grand Vizier, the Mufti, the Capidan Pacha, the Reis Effendi, and other officers of state.

5. The Turks are grave and sedate in their manners, but ignorant and bigoted: and so indolent, that nothing short of the strongest ex-

---

Turkey. Q.—1. What does Turkey comprise? What was it once? 2. What is said of its territory? 3. The government? 4. What is

citement will rouse them to activity. They are temperate in eating and drinking. Pork and wine are prohibited by the Koran. Coffee is the principal beverage; but ardent spirits and opium are also used.

6. In religion the Turks are strict Mahommedans. They call those who do not believe their creed infidels, and once esteemed it lawful to reduce to subjection all who refused to be converted to their faith. Smoking the pipe, lounging for hours cross-legged upon a cushion or sofa, and bathing, are the principal occupations of the better class.

7. Important changes have been attempted in Turkey, both by the late and present sultans; the former organized his army and navy after those of the other European nations, and favoured the study of their arts and sciences, while the latter strongly advocates the introduction of common schools and railroads into the empire, and also encourages the cultivation of cotton.

8. The Turks, or, as they call themselves, Osmanlis, are the ruling people; but they constitute less than one-half the population. The remainder consists of Greeks, Albanians, Armenians, Turcomans, Arabs, Kurds, Jews, and Gypsies. There is no hereditary nobility in Turkey; the only difference of rank being that of office.

— 186 —

Constantinople.

TURKEY IN EUROPE.

1. Turkey in Europe is the smallest of the two great divisions of the Ottoman Empire. Its surface is mountainous, and, throughout most of its extent, interspersed with beautiful and fertile valleys.

---

the court called? 5. Describe the Turks. Of eating, &c.? 6. Of religion? Principal occupations? 7. Changes? Late sultan? Present? 8. Of the Turks, and the other inhabitants? Of nobility, &c.

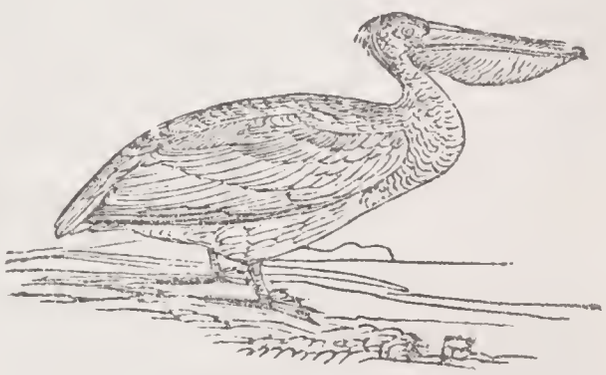
Turkey in Europe. Q.—1. What is Turkey in Europe? 2. What

2. In soil and climate it is highly favoured; and under a liberal government would doubtless become one of the most flourishing countries of Europe. The products are Indian corn, wheat, rice, cotton, silk, wine, oil, fruits, &c.

3. The operations of agriculture and manufactures are but negligently conducted. The commerce is chiefly carried on by foreigners, and is mostly confined to the port of Constantinople. The inland trade is considerable; it is in the hands of Greeks, Jews, Armenians, &c.

4. The horses and cattle are generally large and fine: the former are from the Arabian stock. The Wallachian sheep are remarkable for the singularity of their horns and wool: the latter is long and straight, but rather coarse. The birds, particularly the water-fowl, are numerous, and of various kinds, among which the pelican and flamingo are conspicuous.

Wallachian Sheep.



Pelican.

5. The provinces of Wallachia, Moldavia, and Servia, are governed by their own princes, and are in all respects independent, except that they pay an annual fixed tribute to the Porte. The people of these provinces are much oppressed by their rulers. They belong mostly to the Greek church.

6. Constantinople is the capital of the Ottoman Empire, and the third city in Europe in population. Its situation is beautiful, and its harbour commodious. It presents a fine appearance at a distance, but is found on examination to consist of narrow, crooked streets, with gloomy-looking houses, built of wood.

7. Fires occur so often, that it is said Constantinople is entirely rebuilt every fifteen years. The Mosques, or Mahomedan places of worship, are numerous, and some of them are superb structures. The

---

is said of its surface? Soil and climate? Products? 3. Of agriculture, &c.? Commerce? 4. Horses and cattle? Wallachian sheep, &c.? 5. What is said of Wallachia, &c.? 6. Describe Constanti-

mosque of St. Sophia, once a christian church, is accounted the finest in the world. The mosques of Sultan Achmet, and of Suleyman, are large and splendid, but are not marked by the same classic taste. Constantinople differs from every other capital in Europe, by having no names to its streets, no lamps, and no post-office.

8. Adrianople is the second city in European Turkey. It was long the residence of the Sultans. Bucharest, the capital of Wallachia, is a large dirty city, built in a swamp: the streets, instead of being paved in the usual way, are covered with planks. Belgrade, Widin, Silistria, and Shumla, are strongly fortified towns. Serajevo, Salonica, Sophia, and Joannina, are all places of some note.

Map No. 18.—What bounds Turkey on the north? Aa.—South? Ge., Ao., S.-Ma.—East? B.-Sa.—West? G.-Ve.—Which is the chief river? De.—How long is it? Into what sea does it flow? Bk.—Point out the principal mountains. Bn.—How long are they? What strait between the Archipelago and the sea of Marmora? Ds.—What channel leads into the Black sea? Ce.—What is the population of Constantinople? Adrianople? Bucharest? Serajevo? Salonica? Sophia? Joannina? Ibraila? Shumla? Scres? On what strait is Constantinople? On what rivers are the largest of the other cities?

187

ASIA.

1. Asia is the largest and most populous of the great divisions of the globe. It was the seat of some of the most powerful empires of ancient times, and the theatre of many of the most interesting events recorded in history.

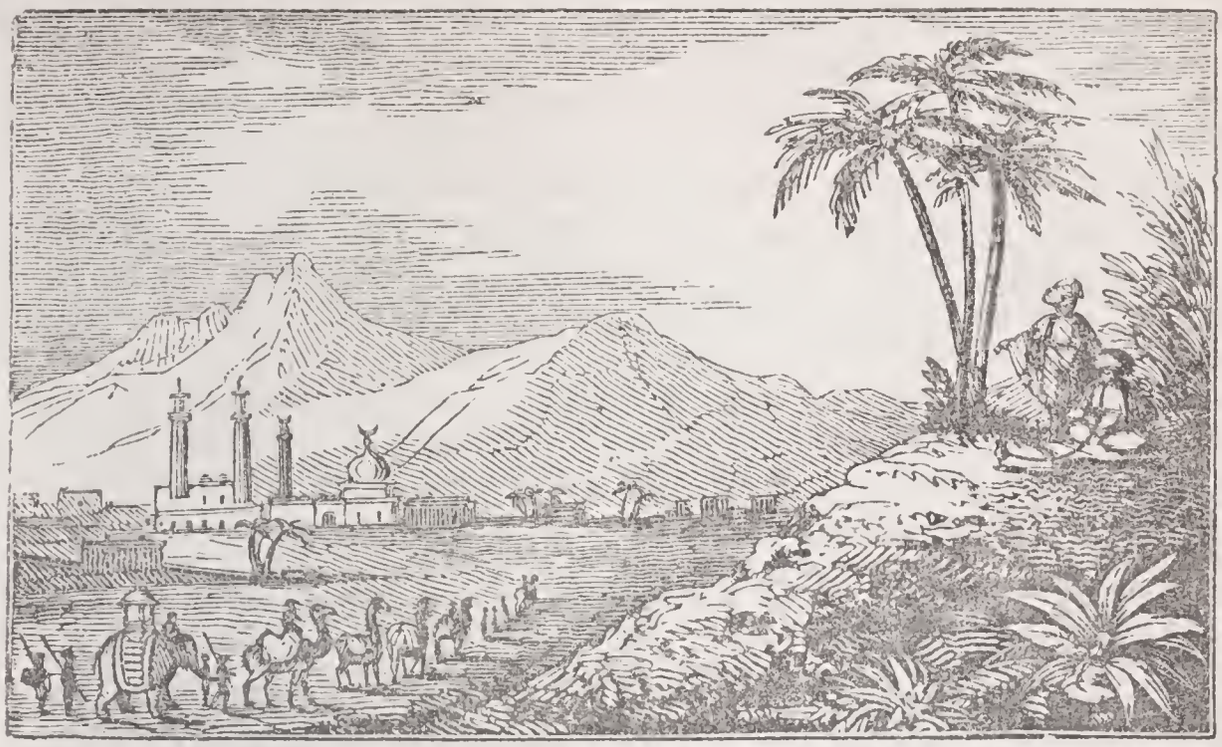
2. It was here our first parents were created, and from hence the descendants of Noah peopled the world after the flood. It was also the birth-place of our Saviour, the scene of his miracles and death, and the field on which the apostles first published salvation to man.

3. Stretching through almost 80 degrees of latitude, Asia presents every variety of soil and climate. Its large rivers are inferior only to the great streams of the Western Continent; its mountain chains are among the most extensive in the world, and attain to a greater height than those of any other region.

---

nople. 7. What is said of fires? 8. Describe Adrianople. Bucharest, &c.

Asia. Q.—1. What is Asia? Of what has it been the seat? 2. What is said of our first parents? Our Saviour? 3. Of the soil



Asia.

4. Asia is distinguished for the variety and value of its products. It supplies the other parts of the world with tea, with some of the finest spices and perfumes, and also with silk, diamonds, and precious stones of various kinds.

5. The institutions, manners and customs of the people are the same at the present as in the earliest times; and no advance appears to have been made for a long period in arts, sciences, or learning.

6. In disposition and temper the people, for the most part, are grave, serious, and recluse. The women are generally kept in ignorance, and are not taught reading or writing; they are also, in many parts of Asia, regarded almost as slaves, live in strict retirement, and do not go abroad without being closely veiled.

7. The governments of Asia are generally despotic, and their administration is frequently arbitrary and tyrannical. Robbery is often practised as a regular trade, even by chiefs and princes, and as a calling that they consider honourable and honest.

8. Agriculture is pursued in many parts of Asia with great industry and care, but not with the same skill as in Europe. Many of the manufactures, though conducted with the most simple tools and machinery, are not surpassed in richness and beauty by those of any other part of the world.

---

and climate? Rivers? Mountains? 4. For what is Asia distinguished? 5. Of the institutions, manners, &c.? 6. Disposition, &c.? Of the women? 7. What is said of the governments? Robbery? 8 Agriculture? Manufactures? 9. Commerce? Foreign trade? 10.

9. A lucrative commerce has been carried on in this quarter from the earliest times. The internal trade by caravans, though not so important as that by sea, is yet very considerable. The foreign trade, particularly that with China and India, is chiefly in the hands of the English and Americans, and is extensive and valuable.

10. Some of the most remarkable animals of Asia are the Elephant, one-horned Rhinoceros, Tiger, Leopard, and Musk Deer. The Horse, Camel, Ass, Sheep, and Goat, are supposed to have had their origin in this quarter, and with the Peacock, common Fowl, and Pheasant, have been spread hence over other parts of the world. Gigantic Cranes, as tall as a man, and the Cassowary, similar to the Ostrich, with an infinite number of birds of brilliant and varied plumage, abound.

Musk Deer.

Tiger.

11. Crocodiles, different however from those of Africa, are found in all the large rivers of the south; and serpents exist in great variety, from the gigantic genus Python, measuring from 20 to 30 feet in length, to a species of only an inch and a half long, whose venom causes the person bitten by it to fall into a deadly sleep.

12. Asia comprises a greater variety of different races of men than any other quarter of the world. The chief part of the inhabitants are Pagans, whose modes of worship embrace various forms of idolatry. Brahmins, Buddhists, worshippers of the Grand Lama, of Confucius, and of spirits or genii, are the most prevalent: they number probably 360 millions; Mahomedans, 80 millions; Christians, Jews, &c., 10 millions. Total, 450 millions.

13. Though nearly the whole of this vast multitude is involved in heathen darkness, yet the exertions of Christian missionaries, and the distribution of the Scriptures in various Asiatic languages, will no doubt in time enlighten the nations, and lead to the spiritual redemption of this great continent.

Describe the animals. Birds. 11. Crocodiles, &c. 12. What does Asia comprise? What is said of the inhabitants? How many idolaters are there? Mahomedans, &c.? 13. What is said of the missionaries, &c.

— 188 —

Map No. 23.—How is Asia bounded? Which is the largest city and river?

Siberia.....	Bounded?—Capitals?	Birmah	Bounded?—Capital?
Tartary	Bounded?—Capitals?	Siam	Bounded?—Capital?
Turkey	Bounded?—Capital?	Anam	Bounded?—Capital?
Arabia.....	Bounded?—Capital?	China	Bounded?—Capital?
Persia	Bounded?—Capital?	Chinese Em.	Bounded?—Capital?
Afghanistan	Bounded?—Capital?	Thibet	Bounded?—Capital?
Beloochistan	Bounded?—Capital?	Corea.....	Bounded?—Capital?
Hindoostan	Bounded?—Capital?	Japan	Bounded?—Capital?

Where is the sea of Kara? Kamtschatka? Ochotsk? Jesso? Japan? Yellow Sea? Eastern S.? China S.? Arabian S.? Red S.? Dead S.? Mediterranean S.? Black S.? Caspian S.? Sea of Aral?

Where is the Gulf of Obe? G. of the Lena? G. of Anadir? Tonquin? Siam? Martaban? Manar? Cambay? Cutch? Ormus? Persian Gulf? Bay of Bengal? Gulf of Oman?

Where is Behring's Strait? Strait of Matsmay? Corea? Formosa? Malacca? Babelmandel?

Where is Cape Cevero Vostochnoi? C. Chalagskoi? East Cape? Cape St. Thadeus? C. Cambodia? C. Romania? C. Comorin? C. Ras-al-Gat? C. Isolette?

Where is the Obi River? The Yenisei? Lena? Amoor? Hoang-Ho? Yang-tse-kiang? Cambodia? Meinam? Salwen? Irrawady? Burrampooter or Brahmapootra? Ganges? Godavery? Nerbuddah? Indus? Euphrates? Don? Volga? Ural? Amoo? Sihon? Cashgar?

Where are the Islands of Nova Zembla? Kotelnoi I.? New Siberia? Liaghoff I.? Behring's Is.? Aleutian Is.? Kurile Is.? Tchantar Is.? Seghalien? Jesso? Niphon? Sikoke? Kiusiu? Loochoo Is.? Formoso? Hainan? Pulo Pinang I.? Andaman Is.? Nicobar Is.? Ceylon? Laccadive Is.? Maldive Is.? Cyprus?

Where is Balcash Lake? Zaizan Nor? Altyn L.? Baikal? Poyang L.? Touting L.? Koko Nor? L. Zurrah? Ooroomiah L?

Where are the Ural Mountains? Little Altai? Great Altai? Taurus Mts.? Mt. Sinai? Ramleah? Mt. Ararat? Caucasus? Elborz? Hindoo Koosh? Ghaut? Beloor? Tsoung-ling? Thian-chan? Kuen-lun? Peling? Meling?

Where is the Peninsula of Kamtschatka? Corea? Malacca? Hindoostan? Arabia? What two seas form the western part of Turkey into a peninsula? What seas and gulf form Arabia into a peninsula? Where is the isthmus of Suez? Of Kraw?

Where is the Desert of Cobi? Of Akhaf? Great Salt Desert? Great Sandy Desert?

In what latitude is Asia? In what longitude? In which Zone is the northern part? The centre? Southern?

189

ASIATIC RUSSIA.

1. Asiatic Russia extends from the Ural Mountains to the Pacific Ocean. It comprises Siberia, the districts lying between the Volga and Ural rivers, and the region called Caucasian Russia.

SIBERIA.

2. Siberia contains nearly a third part of Asia, and is mostly a cold, dreary region, occupied by extensive plains called *steppes*. Some of its southern districts are, however, rich and fertile.

3. Siberia serves as a place of banishment for convicts and prisoners of state. Some of the latter have been men of superior talents, and have been banished only for their virtues and adherence to liberal principles.

4. The Ural and Altay Mountains contain numerous mines, which furnish gold, silver, platina, and precious stones. Fur-bearing animals abound in Siberia, the skins of which form an important article of trade. Fossil ivory, formed of the tusks and teeth of the extinct mammoth, is found in considerable quantities on the northern shores and islands. The original inhabitants are composed of various barbarous tribes, who live by hunting and fishing.

5. Omsk, the capital of Western Siberia, is strongly garrisoned and has a military school. Tobolsk is inhabited chiefly by exiles and their descendants; it is the chief commercial town in Siberia. Irkoutsk, the capital of Eastern Siberia, is a gay and lively place. Tomsk, Yakoutsk, and Ochotsk, are the next important towns. Kiachta is the only place at which the trade with China is permitted.

6. The country between the Volga and Ural rivers contains Astrachan and Orenburg: the former is noted for its sturgeon fisheries, Orenburg carries on a great trade by caravans with Khokan, Bokhara, Khiva, and other Tartar cities.

CAUCASIAN RUSSIA.

7. This country lies between the Black and Caspian seas, and on both sides of the Caucasus Mountains. It is a rough and rugged region, but contains many fertile districts, peopled

---

Asiatic Russia. Q.—1. What is Asiatic Russia? 2. Describe Siberia. 3. What is said of convicts, &c.? 4. The Ural and Altay Mts.? Furs? Fossil ivory? Inhabitants? 5. Describe Omsk, &c. 6. Astrachan, &c. 7. Caucasian Russia. Describe the country. 8. The Circassians

Circassians looking down from their mountains upon a Russian camp.

by various races, who are almost wholly engaged in war and plundering.

8. The Circassians inhabit the northern, and the Georgians the southern side of the mountains; the former maintain almost continual war with the Russians, who have long endeavoured to conquer them, but hitherto ineffectually.

9. The men are celebrated for their activity and valour, and the women for their beauty and elegance of form. Many of the latter were formerly sold by their parents as slaves to traders, who carried them to Turkey, Persia, and other countries, where they were purchased by the wealthy classes; but the Russians have abolished this barbarous traffic.

10. Teflis, on the river Kur, is the capital of Georgia; it has a strong castle, and is the residence of the Russian governor. Derbent and Kisliar are towns of some importance.

Map No. 23.—What bounds Siberia on the north? A.-On.—South? A.-Ms.—East? S.-Ka.—What great rivers flow into the Arctic Ocean? Oe., Ye., La.—How long is each of these? Which is the most northern cape of Siberia? C.-Vi.—Eastern? Et.—Southern? La.—What strait between Siberia and North America? Bs.—How wide is it? What lakes are in Siberia? Bl., Ty.—How long are they? What peninsula lies east of the sea of Ochotsk? Ka.—What tribes are in Siberia? Ss., Os., Ts., Bs., Ys., Ks., Ti.—What is the population of Tobolsk? Irkoutsk? Tomsk? Barnaule? Omsk? On what rivers are these towns?

---

9. Describe the men. The women. 10. Teflis. Derbent. Kisliar

What rivers flow into the Caspian sea? Va., Ul., Kr.—How long are the two first? What Mts. separate Circassia and Georgia? Cs.—What countries bound Georgia on the south? Ty., Pa.—What is the population of Orenburg? Astrachan? Derbent? Teflis?

— 190 —

TURKEY IN ASIA.

1. Turkey in Asia extends over some of the finest regions of that continent. It contained in ancient times a number of populous, flourishing, and important states; but ignorance, superstition, and barbarism, now cover the land; and few traces of its former civilization remain, except ruins.

2. The islands of the Archipelago, once celebrated for their wealth and prosperity, are now reduced to a more complete state of barbarism than even the continent. The principal of those still under the control of the Turks, are Rhodes, Samos, Scio, and Metelin.

3. Smyrna, on a gulf of the same name, is the chief emporium of Asiatic Turkey. Carpets, rags for paper, opium, figs, &c., are the chief exports. About 2000 Europeans, principally French, reside here, and form a society among themselves.

4. Trebisonde, on the Black sea, is the chief emporium in that part of Turkey. Brusa, Erzerum, and Diarbekir, in the interior, Bagdad, on the Tigris, and Bussorah, on the Euphrates, are important cities. On the Euphrates are the ruins of Babylon, the most splendid city of ancient times; whose walls, towers, and gates, were esteemed one of the wonders of the world; and on the Tigris, below Mosul, are the remains of Nineveh, the once renowned capital of the Assyrian empire.

SYRIA.

5. Syria has long formed one of the chief divisions of the Turkish empire. It was conquered in the year 1832, by the Pacha of Egypt; but in 1840, several of the great European powers assisted the Turks to reconquer it.

6. No country was anciently more celebrated than Syria. In the south was the country of the Israelites, and the birth-place of the Christian religion. Tyre and Sidon were renowned for their commerce; and Damascus and Antioch for their wealth and population. Baalbec and Palmyra, once splendid cities, are now in ruins.

7. Damascus, the capital of Syria, is one of the oldest places in the world; and is known to have existed in the days of Abraham. It is the most flourishing city in Syria, and carries on an extensive trade. Aleppo was the finest city in Syria. In 1822, it was nearly all destroyed by an earthquake; but is now slowly reviving. Tripoli and Beyrout, on the Mediterranean, are places possessing some trade.

Turkey, &c. Q.—1. Describe Turkey in Asia. 2. The islands of the Archipelago. 3. Smyrna. 4. Trebisonde, &c. 5. What did

Christ and his Disciples on the Mount of Olives.

PALESTINE.

8. Palestine, or the Holy Land, occupies the south-easternmost part of Syria. It is the most celebrated country in the world; and remarkable for being the scene of most of the events recorded in the sacred scriptures.

9. The surface is diversified with mountains and valleys. Of the former, Lebanon has been long noted for its tall cedars; Pisgah, for the view it gave Moses of the Promised Land; Tabor, for the transfiguration of Christ; and the Mount of Olives, for being the scene of the ascension of the Saviour to heaven.

10. Jerusalem, the once famous capital of the Jewish nation, where David and Solomon reigned, and which was so often the resort of Christ and his disciples, is now a gloomy, mean town, owing its chief support to the veneration in which it is held by Christians, Jews, and Mahomedans, which still procures it the visits of many pious pilgrims.

11. Bethlehem, six miles south of Jerusalem, is remarkable for being the birth-place of our Saviour. Nazareth, where he resided until he commenced his ministry, is, next to Jerusalem, the most holy place in Palestine. Gaza, Joppa, and Acre, are the principal towns on the coast.

Map No. 23.—How is Turkey bounded? What river flows into the Persian Gulf? Es.—What flows into the Euphrates? Ts.—How

---

Syria form? 6. What is said of the country? 7. Damascus? 8. Describe Palestine. The surface. Mountains, &c. Jerusalem. Bethlehem. Nazareth, &c.

long are these rivers? What Mts. lie north of the Mediterranean sea? Ts.—How high are they? What Mt. in the N. E? At.—What is the population of Smyrna? Erzerum? Brusa? Trebisonde? Bussorah? Diarbekir? Mosul? Bagdad? How is Syria bounded? What is the population of Damascus? Aleppo? Damascus and Aleppo are each 60 miles east of the Mediterranean, and Jerusalem 40.

Map No. 24.—What sea bounds Palestine on the west? Mn.—What river flows into the Dead sea? Jn.—How long is it? The Dead sea? What is the population of Jerusalem? The other towns.

— 191 —

Bedouins attacking a Caravan.

ARABIA.

1. Arabia is a large peninsula, consisting of sandy deserts, interspersed with fertile spots, like islands in the ocean; these, when cultivated, yield various fruits and other products.

2. It comprises several divisions; the principal are Mecca, or the Hedjaz, Nedsjed, the country of the Wahabees, and the Imamats of Yemen and Oman. Nearly all the western coast was, for a time, governed by the Pacha of Egypt; but in 1840 he transferred his authority to Turkey.

3. The inhabitants are principally Arabs, with some Turkish, Jewish, and Hindoo merchants in the towns. The people of the desert are called Bedouins; they live in tents, lead a wandering life, and keep

---

Arabia. Q.—1. What is said of Arabia, &c.? 2. The Arabian

large herds of horses and camels. They are often hospitable and courteous to those who trust and visit them; but generally attack and rob the caravans that pass through their country.

4. The Arabs are of a brown complexion, thin and spare in person, but vigorous and active. They are temperate, from necessity, but when opportunity offers they compensate for their usual meagre fare.

5. The Arab horses are the finest in the world, and celebrated for their swiftness. The most useful animal is the camel: it will travel for several days without water, carrying a burthen of 600 or 700 pounds. Coffee, dates, senna-leaves, indigo, and pearls, are the chief products. The last are obtained on the coast of the Persian Gulf.

6. Mecca, the birth-place of Mahomed, is the holy city of Mahomedans, which every one of that sect is expected to visit once in his lifetime. It is supported by the pilgrims who resort thither every year.

7. Medina is, like Mecca, considered a holy city: it is celebrated for the tomb of Mahomed. Jidda is the port of Mecca, and Yambo that of Medina. Sana, the capital of Yemen, is situated in the midst of one of the most fertile districts in Arabia.

8. Mocha is the chief sea-port on the Red sea; and is the seat of the coffee-trade Aden was once a noted city; it subsequently declined, but is now regaining some importance. It belongs to the East India Company, who have made it a station for their steam-ships.

9. Makulla and Keshin are small towns, possessing a limited share of commerce. Muscat, the capital of Oman, is a general depôt for the merchandise of India and Persia. Its commerce is extensive.

10. The Imam, or chief, of Oman has several ships of war; and his subjects are the best native sailors in the east. Besides his territory in Arabia, he possesses Zanzibar and other islands on the coast of Africa, as well as some in the Persian Gulf.

11. Petra, situated northward of the Red sea, is remarkable for its temples, tombs, &c., cut out of the solid rock. It was the capital of Edom more than 2500 years ago, and was a celebrated city. Its ancient renown, and singular remains, cause it to be often visited.

Map No. 23.—What country bounds Arabia on the north? Ty.—South? A.-Sa.—East? P.-Gf., G.-On.—West? R.-Sa.—What isthmus joins Arabia to Africa? Sz.—What Mts. in Arabia? Si., Rh.—Desert between Yemen and Oman? Af.—What divisions lie on the Red sea? Hz., Yn.—The Arabian sea? Ht., On.—Persian Gulf? La.—How long is the Red sea? Persian Gulf? What is the population of Muscat? Sana? Mocha? Mecca? Medina? Jidda? Yambo? In what part of Arabia are these places situated? Between what seas is Petra situated? Rd., Dd.

---

states? 3. Inhabitants? Bedouins? 4. Arabs, &c? 5. Describe the horses. Camels. Chief products. 6. What is said of Mecca? 7. Medina? 8. Mocha, &c.? 9. Makulla, &c? 10. The Imam? 11. Petra?

— 192 —

Teheran, the Capital of Persia.

PERSIA, AFGHANISTAN, &c.

1. Persia was, in early times, one of the most powerful empires in Asia; but the imbecility of the government, and the disastrous civil and foreign wars, have diminished its importance.

2. A large portion of the country consists of rocky mountains, sandy deserts, and valleys nearly destitute of running streams; but along the shores of the Caspian sea the soil is rich and fertile.

3. The population comprises two classes, the people of the towns, and the pastoral tribes, or Iliyats. Like the Arabs, the latter wander about with their flocks and herds, and often commit depredations on the settled inhabitants.

4. Silk, cotton, wheat, rice, tobacco, rhubarb, and assafœtida, are the chief products. The manufactures were formerly more important than at present; they consist of carpets, shawls, silk goods, guns, swords, &c. The foreign commerce is inconsiderable, and is chiefly carried on by Europeans.

5. The Persians are a handsome people, and, like the Turks, are inveterate smokers. They are the most learned of the Oriental nations, and are fond of reciting the verses, and quoting the maxims, of their chief poets. They are also polite and lively in their manners, skilful in the use of flattery and dissimulation; and are said to be insincere and intriguing.

Persia. Q. — 1. What is said of Persia? 2. The country? 3. Population? 4. Products? Manufactures? Commerce? 5. What is said of the Persians? Their manners, &c.? 6. Teheran? 7.

6. Teheran, the capital of Persia, is 70 miles south of the Caspian sea; it is a modern-built city, inhabited by the king, his court, and army, only during the winter months. The population, in consequence, fluctuates from 10,000 to 60,000.

7. Ispahan, the ancient capital, is 220 miles southward of Teheran; it ranked once among the most splendid cities in the east. Though a great part of it is in ruins, it is still a place of importance, with an extensive trade, and considerable manufactures. Shiraz is celebrated for its delightful climate, and beautiful environs. Reshd is the chief port on the Caspian sea, and Bushire on the Persian Gulf. Tabreez, Meshid, Yezd, Balfrush, and Kerman, are important cities.

8. AFGHANISTAN. — The country lying between Persia and Hindoostan was once a part of the Persian Empire. It is now divided into the separate territories of Afghanistan and Beloochistan.

9. The inhabitants are called Afghans; they are bold and warlike, and, in the late expulsion of the British from their country, displayed an energy not usual with Asiatics in recent times.

10. The population, as in Persia, consists of the inhabitants of the towns and the pastoral tribes: the latter are a simple and hospitable race. They enjoy a considerable share of political freedom, the power of the chiefs being limited by the representatives of the people.

11. Cabul, the capital, is on the Cabul river, a branch of the Indus; it enjoys a fine climate, and is surrounded by a fertile country. The next important towns are Peshawur, on the Cabul, and Candahar and Ghiznee, on the Helmund. Herat is the capital of a small independent state. Its manufactures and commerce are important.

12. BELOOCHISTAN.—Beloochistan is inhabited by a number of small independent tribes, of whom the Belooches are the chief. They are mostly of warlike habits, and often make plundering incursions upon each other. Kelat, the principal town, is the residence of a chief, or Khan, to whom several of the tribes are subject.

Map No. 23.—How is Persia bounded? What river separates it from Tartary? Ak.—From Turkey? Ts., Es.—What sea on the north? Cn.—Gulf on the south? Pn.—What Mts. extend across Persia? Ez—What desert south of the Elborz Mts.? G.-St.—What is the population of Teheran? Ispahan? Tabreez? Reshd? Meshid? Yezd? Shiraz? Kerman? What bounds Afghanistan on the north? H.-K.-Ms.—South? Bn.—East? I.-Rr.—West? Pa.—What lake? Zh.—What river flows into it? Hd.—What is the population of Cabul? Candahar? Herat? Peshawur? What bounds Beloochistan on the north? An.—South? A.-Sa.—East? I.-Rr.—West? Pa.—What is the population of Kelat? Gundava?

Ispahan? Shiraz, &c.? 8. The country between Persia, &c.? 9. The Afghans? 10. The population? 11. Cabul? 12 Beloochistan?

— 193 —

Tartar Caravan.

TARTARY.

1. Tartary comprehends all the central part of Asia, stretching from the Caspian sea to the Pacific Ocean. Its great divisions are Independent Tartary, and Chinese Tartary.

2. Independent Tartary includes several small Mahomedan states, which are governed by princes called Khans. Chinese Tartary is annexed to the Chinese Empire, and has for the most part adopted the worship of the Grand Lama.

3. The inhabitants comprise several distinct races. Those of Independent Tartary and Little Bokhara are similar to the Turks. The people of Soongaria, or the Kalmucks, and those of Mongolia, called Mongols, are the true Tartars. The Mantchoos, or people of Mantchooria, differ in some respects from all the others.

INDEPENDENT TARTARY, OR TURKISTAN.

4. Independent Tartary lies eastward of the Caspian sea. It comprises the Kirguis country and Turcomania, with the states of Khokan, Khiva, Bokhara, and Koondooz.

5. The four last are inhabited by an industrious people, engaged in agriculture and trade. The Usbecks are the dominant race, and hence

---

Tartary. Q.—1. What does Tartary comprehend? 2. Independent Tartary include? Chinese Tartary? 3. What is said of the inhabitants? 4. Describe Independent Tartary. 5. Its states. 6. What is

the country is sometimes called Usbeck Tartary. The rest of the inhabitants are called Taujiks.

6. An extensive commerce is carried on between these states and Persia, Hindoostan, China, and Russia. The caravans proceed in large bodies, and are well armed; consisting sometimes of several thousand men, horses, and camels.

7. The principal cities are Bokhara, Khokan, Tashkent, Khiva, and Samarcand. Bokhara, the capital of the territory of the same name, is the chief seat of Mahomedan learning in this quarter, and is visited by a great number of students. Khiva is rather an encampment, than a town; it is the principal slave-market in Tartary. Samarcand, once the most renowned city in Asia, is now nearly all in ruins.

8. The KIRGUIS and TURCOMANS raise large numbers of horses and camels, and wander about from place to place. The Turcomans often carry away the inhabitants from the frontier Persian villages, and sell them for slaves in the markets of Khiva and Bokhara.

CHINESE TARTARY.

9. CHINESE TARTARY comprises Little Bokhara, Soongaria, Mongolia, and Mantchooria. It is chiefly an elevated plain, bounded by ranges of lofty mountains.

10. The whole territory appears to be better suited to grazing than agriculture, and is inhabited principally by roving tribes, who live in tents, and raise great numbers of horses.

11. LITTLE BOKHARA and SOONGARIA are the best-settled and most fertile divisions in the eastern part of this territory. The chief towns are Goulja, Yarkand, and Cashgar.

12. MANTCHOORIA is watered by the river Amoor; it contains several cities and towns, and a stationary population in some parts. Chin Yang is the chief city in the district which adjoins China.

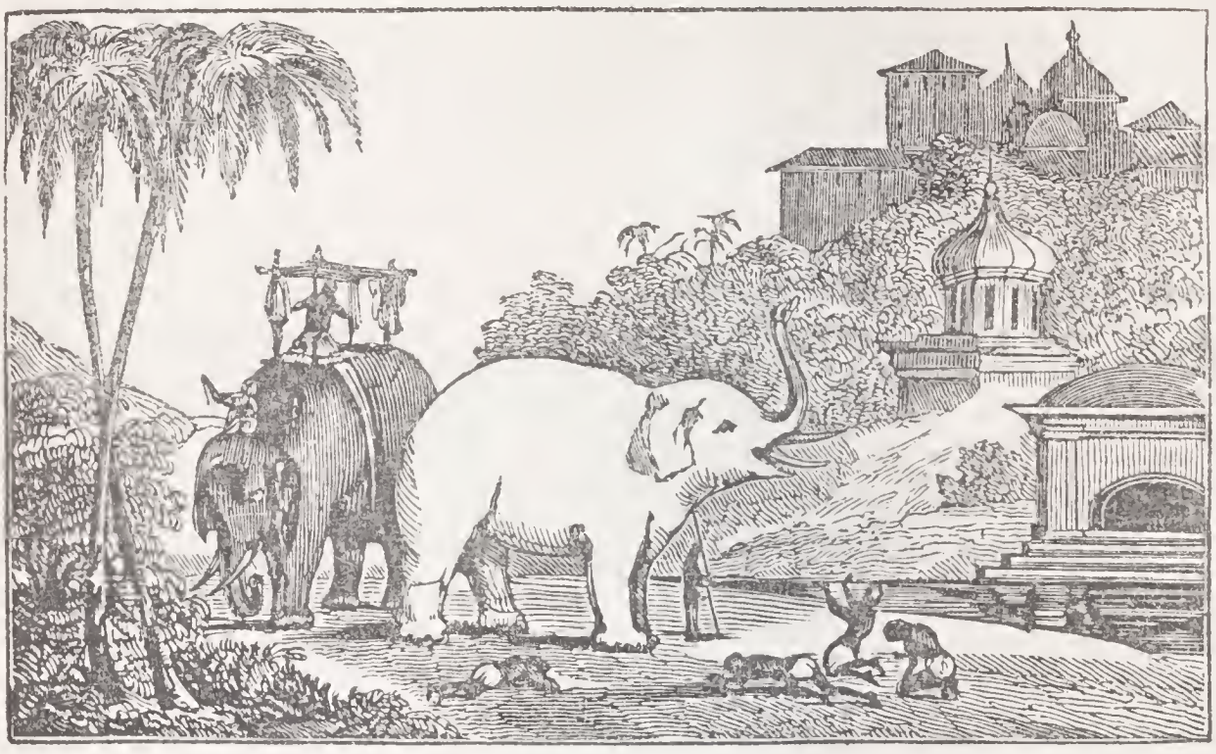
Map No. 23. — How is Independent Tartary bounded? What sea on the west? Cn. — In the centre? Al. — How long are these? What rivers flow into the Caspian sea? Ul., Ak. — The sea of Aral? Sn., Ao. — How long are these rivers? What Mts. in the country? H.-Ko., Br., L.-Ay. — What is the population of Tashkent? Bokhara? Khokan? Samarcand?

How is Chinese Tartary bounded? What are its chief Mts.? L.-Ay., Br., Tg., Tn., G.-Ay., Kn. — How high are the three last? Which are the principal lakes? Bh., Zr., Lr. — Principal rivers? Cr., Ih., Sa., Ar., Si., Ui. — What desert in the south? Ci. — How long is it? What is the population of Goulja? Cashgar? Yarkand?

---

said of commerce? 7. The cities, &c.? 8. The Kirguis and Turcomans? 9. Chinese Ta ary? 10. For what is it suited? 11. Describe Little Bucharia and Soongaria. 12. Mantchooria.

— 194 —



INDIA.

1. India has been always celebrated for its fertility, and for its valuable products. It comprises the two peninsulas which form the southern part of Asia: the western one is called Hindoostan, and the other Chin-India, or Farther India.

2. Both these peninsulas are remarkable for the number and size of their rivers, whose waters and inundations, united with the heat of the climate, make them the most productive countries on earth. The term East Indies is used frequently for the whole of south-eastern Asia and China.

3. The elephant here attains his greatest bulk and perfection; and has been rendered useful from the earliest times. White elephants though sometimes met with, are rare. In Birmah and Siam they are believed to contain the spirit of some departed monarch, as such, they have the title of a king; and when taken abroad, the people are obliged to prostrate themselves as before their actual sovereign.

HINDOOSTAN, OR HINDOSTAN.

4. Hindoostan is one of the most remarkable countries in the east. Its singular customs, and rich productions, have attracted attention from the earliest periods.

India. Q.—1. For what has India been celebrated? 2. What is said of the peninsulas? 3. The elephant? White elephant?

5. The climate of the chief part of Hindoostan is that of the torrid zone, which among the mountains is rendered temperate by elevation. With the exception of a few sandy desert tracts, the soil is generally fertile.

6. The agriculture is imperfect, yet the produce is abundant. Rice is the chief article of food, but other grains are cultivated. Cotton, silk, sugar, opium, and indigo, are all extensively produced; also, coffee, pepper, cinnamon, &c.

7. The cotton manufactures have been long celebrated for their fineness and beauty. Silk is an important manufacture; and the shawls of Cashmere are unrivalled. The Hindoos excel in working gold and silver; and in cutting, polishing, and setting precious stones.

8. The inland trade is carried on by Banians, or Hindoo merchants, Armenians, and Parsees. The foreign commerce is in the hands of the English, Americans, &c. This country produces the finest diamonds in the world; for, though those of Brazil are of greater size, the diamonds of Golconda are superior in hardness and brilliancy. Gold, iron, tin, and zinc, are among the minerals.

9. The Hindoos vary in complexion from dark brown almost to white, with straight hair, and pleasing features. They are an indolent and spiritless race, excessively superstitious; and are described as being nearly destitute of moral honesty.

10. They are divided into four castes, or classes:—1. The Bramins or priests. 2. The Rajah-pootras, or soldiers. 3. Vaisyas, or merchants and farmers. 4. The Sudras, or labourers. These castes are forbidden to intermarry, or even to eat or drink together; and every succeeding generation must belong to the same class as their parents.

11. The religion of the Hindoos is a degrading system of paganism. Bramah is the supreme deity, and there are many millions of inferior divinities. They also worship the river Ganges, the cow, ape, and other animals. There are likewise in Hindoostan a number of Mahomedans, with some Christians, both native and European, and Jews.

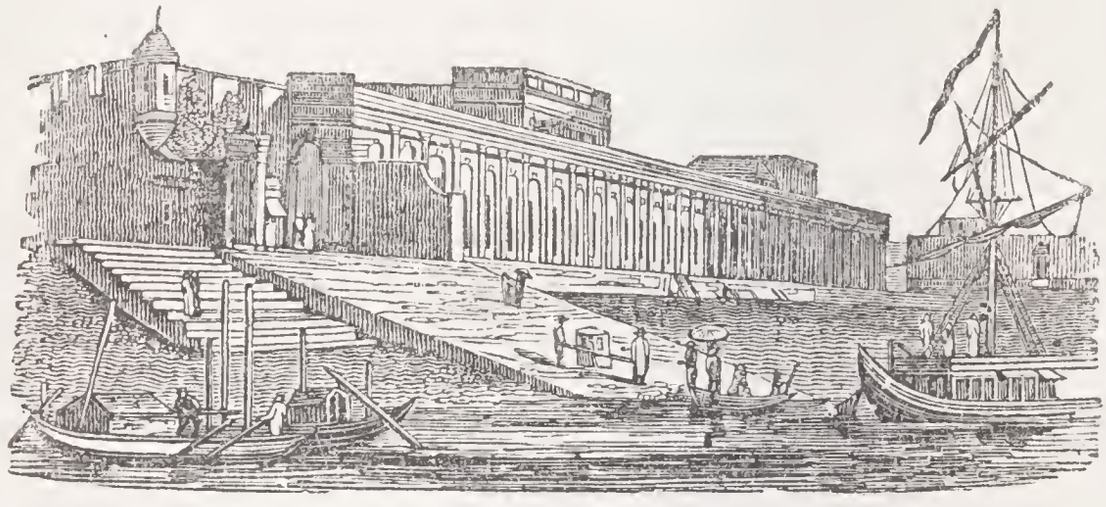
12. Hindoostan is chiefly under the control of the British East India company. Its territory contains a population of about 88 millions; the tributary states 41 millions; total of the company's subjects 129 millions. To this must be added a million for Ceylon, which belongs to the crown. Total of British India, 130 millions. Of this vast multitude, the Europeans do not exceed 50,000. The independent states contain about 15 million inhabitants.

---

4. What is said of Hindoostan? 5. The climate? 6. Agriculture? 7. Cotton manufactures, &c.? 8. Inland trade? Foreign commerce? Of diamonds? 9. Describe the Hindoos. 10. How are they divided? 11. Of religion? 12. What is said of the British East India Com

13. Great efforts are made by various missionary societies for introducing Christianity into India. Many of the natives have renounced their false gods; and some have even become missionaries.

— 195 —



View in Calcutta.

14. British India.—British India comprises three Presidencies;—1, Bengal and Agra; 2, Bombay; 3, Madras. The whole is governed by the President of the first named: he is called the Governor-General of India, and has extensive powers. The supreme authority, however, rests in the Court of Directors of the East India Company in London.

15. The chief tributary princes are the Nizam, and the Nabobs of Oude, Berar and Mysore. These rulers are mere vassals, being wholly under British direction and control. The Gwickwar and other protected princes have a nominal independence. Scindia is the ruler of an independent state in the interior. Lahore, or the Punjaub, the country of the Seiks, and Sinde, have been lately annexed to British India.

16. Calcutta, the capital of British India, is on the Hoogly branch of the Ganges, 100 miles from the sea: it comprises two divisions. Chouringee, inhabited by the English, is a city of palaces; while the Black Town, inhabited by the Hindoos, is an assemblage of huts.

17. Bombay, the capital of Western British India, is noted for its commerce and ship-building. Madras, the capital of southern British India, is situated on a flat sandy shore, and has no harbour. It presents a fine appearance from the sea.

18. Hyderabad, south of the Godavery river, is the capital of the Nizam, Nagpore, of Berar; Lucknow, of Oude; Mysore, of the state

---

pany? 13. Of missionary societies? 14. What does British India comprise? What is said of the government? 15. The native princes? The Gwickwar, Scindia, &c.? 16. Describe Calcutta. 17. Bombay,

of that name; Baroda of the Gwickwar; Lahore, of the Punjaub; and Gwalior, of Scindia's dominions. Umritsir is the holy city of the Seiks. Cashmere has long been noted for its splendid shawls.

19. Benares is the most populous place in India: it is also the sacred city of the Hindoos. Agra is noted for the Taje Mahal, the most splendid tomb in the world; Seringapatam for the tomb of Hyder Ali. Delhi was the Mogul, and Poonah the Mahratta capital. Surat was long renowed for its commerce; Oojein as the first meridian of the Hindoo geographers, and Dacca for its fine muslins. Pondicherry is the capital of the French, and Goa of the Portuguese Indian dominions.

20. Ceylon is a beautiful fertile island, belonging to the British crown, and independent of the East India company. It is noted for producing the finest cinnamon in the world, and for its pearl-fisheries. Columbo is the chief city.

21. The Coralline isles comprise the Laccadive and Maldive groups. They lie west and south-west from Hindoostan. Though numerous, they are small in extent; and produce cocoa-nuts in considerable abundance. The inhabitants of the Laccadives are called Moplays.

Map No. 23.—How is Hindoostan bounded? What rivers flow into the Arabian Sea? Is., Nh. — The bay of Bengal? Gs., Br., Gy., Ka. — How long are these? What Mts. are in the north-east? Hh. — South-west? Gt. — How long and high are the first? What island south of Hindoostan? Cn. — How long and wide is it? What gulf separates it from Hindoostan? Mr. — What islands west and south-west of Hindoostan? Ce.-Is. — What is the population of Benares? Calcutta? Surat? Delhi? Lucknow? Patna? Madras? Bombay, and the other large cities? Point out the capitals named in the text? What is the south-east coast of Hindoostan called? Cl. — The south-west? Mr. — On what rivers are the principal cities?

— 196 —

CHIN INDIA, OR FARTHER INDIA.

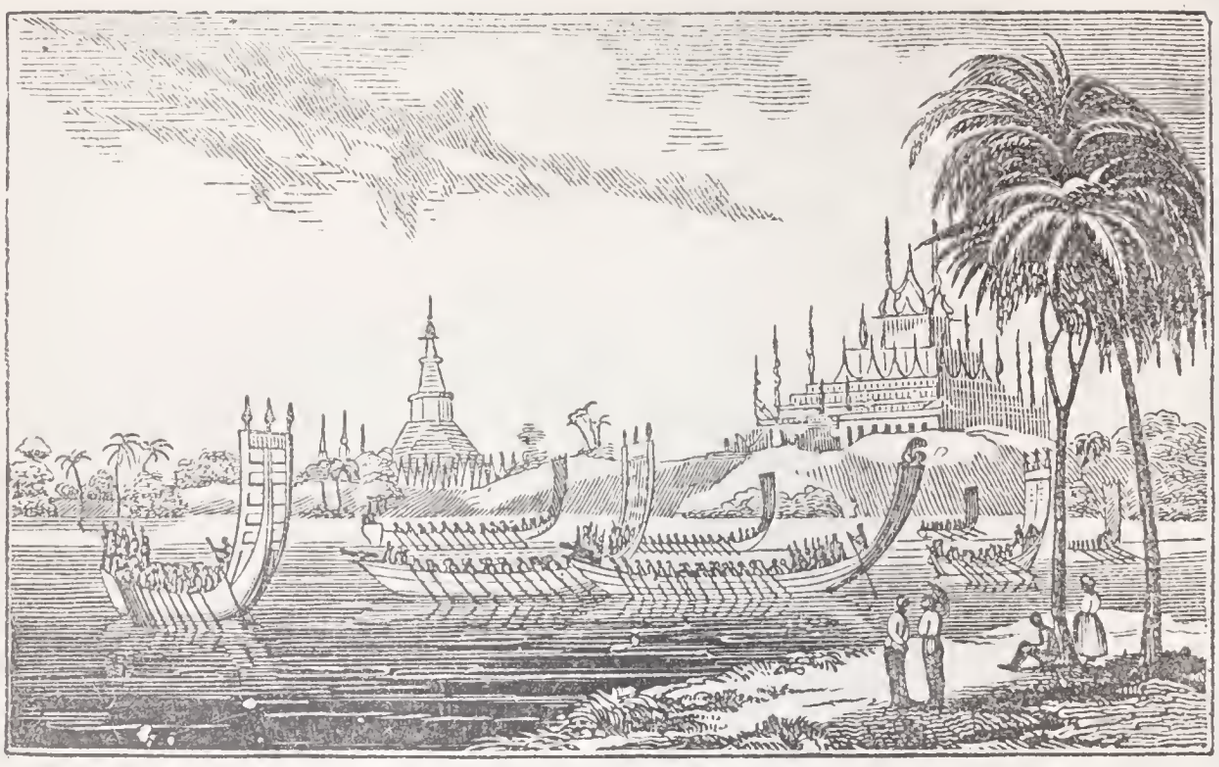
1. Chin India lies south of Thibet and China. The empires of Birmah and Anam, the kingdom of Siam, and the British territories, are its chief divisions. It is a well-watered, fertile region, with productions nearly similar to those of Hindoostan.

2. Nearly all its inhabitants profess the religion of Buddha, or Guadama. Some of their temples are very large, and are gaudily ornamented with gilding, painting, &c. The war-boats

---

&c. 18. What is said of Hyderabad, Nagpore, &c.? 19. Benares, Agra, &c.? 20. Describe Ceylon. 21. The Coralline Isles.

Chin India. Q.—1. Describe Chin India. 2. The inhabitants. The



Birman Temples and War-Boats.

of these nations, particularly those of the Birmans, are often 100 feet long, but are very narrow. They carry from 80 to 100 men each, with a small cannon at the prow.

3. The governments of Chin India are absolute despotisms: the nobles are profoundly submissive to their sovereign, and creep on their hands and knees when they approach him. The morals of the people are in a low state; the women are little better than slaves; they perform the principal part of the labour, and in Anam they conduct all the operations of buying and selling.

4. *Extent and Population of Chin India.*

	Square Miles.	Inhabitants.		Square Miles.	Inhabitants.
Anam	350,000	9,000,000	British territories	77,000	1,400,000
Birmah	254,000	5,350,000	Malacca	55,000	450,000
Siam	184,000	3,800,000	Total,	920,000	20,000,000

5. Birmah.—The Birman Empire was founded about the middle of the last century, by the conquest of Pegu and some other territories. It was for a time a powerful state, but has lately lost its pre-eminence.

6. Ummerapoora and Ava were successively the capitals of Birmah. Monchaboo is now the seat of government; Rangoon is the chief seaport. These cities are all on the Irrawaddy river.

---

temples. War-boats. 3. What is said of the governments? Nobles? Morals, &c.? Of the women? 4. How many inhabitants has Chin India? What is its extent in square miles? Which is the largest division? The most populous? 5. When was the Birman Empire founded, &c.? What is said of Ummerapoora, Ava, &c.? 7. What

7. Anam.—This Empire is of recent origin, dating only from the beginning of the present century. It comprises Tonquin, Cochin China, Cambodia, and part of Laos. The late king of Cochin China, Caung Shung, aided by French officers, organized his army and navy in the European manner, and was thus enabled to conquer Tonquin and Cambodia.

8. Hue, the capital of Anam, is on a small river 10 miles from the sea. It is a vast fortress in the European style—5 miles in circumference, and would require 50,000 men to garrison it. Saigon, on the Donnai river, a branch of the Cambodia, is the chief sea-port of Anam, and its largest city. Kesho, in Tonquin, is an important town.

9. Siam.—This kingdom lies between Birmah and Anam: it is highly fruitful in rice, sugar, and other products. The people are mild and courteous, but cunning and avaricious.

10. Bangkok, the capital, is on the Meinam: the houses are built partly on its banks, and partly on rafts in the river, which can be easily moved about from place to place. The latter are inhabited chiefly by Chinese emigrants.

11. The British Possessions.—These territories comprise Assam and Arracan, and a narrow district south of the Salwen river; also Pulo Pinang, or Prince of Wales Island, Wellesley, a small province on the main land, east of Pulo Pinang, the territory and town of Malacca, and the island and city of Singapore. The latter is an important city; it is a free port, and has an extensive commerce.

12. Malacca.—The peninsula of Malacca is occupied by a number of small independent states, of which but little is known. The inhabitants are chiefly Mahomedans; they are called Malays, and are by turns merchants, pirates, and robbers.

13. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands lie in the Bay of Bengal. The former are inhabited by a fierce Negro race, and the latter by a people similar to the Malays, but peaceable in their habits.

Map No. 23.—How is Birmah bounded? Siam? Anam? Malacca? What rivers flow into the Gulf of Martaban? Iy., Sn.—Gulf of Siam? Mn.—China sea? Ca.—How long are all these? What isthmus connects Malacca with Siam? Kw.—What strait separates it from Sumatra? Ma.—Which is the south cape of Birmah? Ns. —Of Malacca? Ra.—Cambodia? Ca.—What is the population of Bangkok? Ava? Hue? Saigon? Ummerapoora? Arracan? Singapore? What islands west of Siam? An. Nr.—The Nicobar Islands belong to Denmark: there are no Europeans on them at present.

---

is said of Anam? The late king? 8. Describe Hue. Saigon. 9. What is said of Siam? 10. Bankok? 11. Describe the British Possessions. 12. Malacca. 13. Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

— 197 —

Group of Chinese.

CHINESE EMPIRE.

1. The Chinese Empire embraces China, Chinese Tartary, Corea, and Thibet. The inhabitants are estimated at 230 millions, being the greatest number subject to any one goverment. They consist principally of Chinese; but the ruling race, to which the Emperor belongs, is the Mantchoo, by whom China was conquered in 1644.

CHINA PROPER.

2. China comprises a territory about three-fourths the size of the United States. It is noted for the antiquity of its government, the singularity of its manners and customs, and for its reserved policy towards other nations.

3. The soil and climate, from the great extent of country, are extremely various. The former is cultivated with the greatest care in every part: even the mountains and rocks are made to yield some useful product; yet the agriculture is less skilfully conducted than in Europe or the United States.

4. Manufactures are numerous; and many of them have been carried by the Chinese to a state of considerable perfection. In fine porcelain or China ware, rich silks, and in ornamental works in ivory, mother of pearl, and tortoise shells, they excel.

5. Foreign commerce is carried on at Canton and the other free ports, chiefly with the English and Americans, in tea, silks, nan-

---

China. Q.—1. What does the Chinese empire embrace? What is said of the people? 2. What does China comprise? For what is it noted? 3. What is said of the soil? 4. Manufactures? 5. Foreign

keens, articles of ivory, &c. The export of tea alone to Great Britain and the United States is about 60 million pounds annually.

6. In return, along with other merchandize, the Americans supply the Chinese with ginseng; the English supply them with opium. The latter is prohibited by law: it is smoked in a pipe, and is extremely pernicious. Ginseng, though not prized with us, is regarded in China as a most valuable drug.

7. The inland trade of China, by means of the numerous rivers and canals, is very extensive. The Grand, or Imperial Canal, is 600 miles in length. It is said to have employed 30,000 men upwards of 40 years in its construction.

8. The Great Wall which bounds China on the north is, probably the greatest work ever constructed. It is 1500 miles long, 24 feet high, and so thick that six horsemen can easily ride abreast upon it It was built 2000 years ago, as a defence against the Tartars.

9. The chief beauty of the women in this country is thought to be the smallness of their feet, which are bound up from infancy to prevent their increasing in size. The shoes of a Chinese lady are about 4 inches long, and 2 wide. Women of the lower order do not compress the feet.

10. The principal food of the Chinese is rice; but the poor eat rats, mice, and puppies, and any thing they can procure that will sustain life; yet they often suffer from famine. Soups made of edible birds'-nests, sea-slug, and other gelatinous substances, are among the luxuries of the rich. Pork is the favourite animal food; sharks' fins and fish maws are regarded as delicacies.

11. Learning is highly esteemed by the Chinese. They have many books on various subjects, yet are very deficient in true literature and science. The Mandarins, or great officers, employed in the administration of the government, owe their rank and title to their skill in letters. They are divided into nine ranks, each of which is designated by a different coloured button on the top of the cap.

12. The Chinese army amounts to 800,000 men; but their equipments and discipline are entirely different from ours. They wear paper helmets, wadded gowns, quilted petticoats, and clumsy satin boots. Their arms are bows and arrows, matchlock guns, and cannon without carriages. There are a number of armed junks employed by the government to suppress smuggling and piracy, but they are of little importance as a naval force.

198

13. The Chinese are distinguished for order, industry, and regularity; but their treatment of females, worshipping of idols, and general disregard of truth, are circumstances which lower them in the scale of nations, and rank them below the least civilized Christian communities.

---

commerce? 6. What is said of Americans? English? Opium? Ginseng? 7. Inland trade? The Grand Canal? 8. The Great Wall? 9. What is said of the women? 10. The food? 11. Learning? 12. The army? Arms? Armed junks? 13. Chinese?

Chinese Military.

14. The religion of Fo or Buddha is professed by the chief part of the people; but the learned men worship the spirit of their great philosopher, Confucius. There are some Roman Catholics, Jews, and Mahomedans in China.

15. The government is despotic, and is conducted with great form and ceremony. The Emperor is styled the Son of Heaven; and when he goes abroad the houses and shops must be shut, and all that he meets must prostrate themselves on the ground.

16. Pekin, the capital, is one of the largest cities in the world. It contains two distinct towns, the Chinese and Tartar: the former is the most elegant and populous; but the latter is adorned by the imperial palace and gardens. The shops are numerous: they are decorated with flags, paintings, and lanterns. The streets are immensely crowded, for the Chinese spend much of their time in the open air.

17. Nankin, the ancient capital, is larger than Pekin; but it is now greatly decayed. It is noted for its porcelain tower, and its manufactures of nankeen. Canton was until lately the only port at which Europeans were allowed to trade and reside. Its commerce is very great. The boat town of Canton is composed of thousands of boats arranged in streets, and occupied by individuals, who live all their lives on the water.

18. By the late treaty between China and Great Britain, the ports of Canton, Amoy, Foutchow, Ningpo, and Shanghae, called the "Free Ports," are now open to Europeans and Americans. Shanghae is next to Canton for extent of commerce. Teentsin is the port of Pekin, and a great emporium for salt.

19. Sootchow, Hongtchow, Kingteching, and Voutchang, are all populous cities, and situated in the midst of rich and fertile districts.

---

14. Religion? 15. The Government? Emperor? 16. Describe Pekin. The shops. 17. Nankin. Canton. 18. What ports are now open to Europeans, &c.? What is said of Shanghae? Teentsin? 19. Sootchow, &c.? Hongkong? Victoria? 20. Describe the Chinese islands?

Hongkong, an island at the mouth of the river on which Canton stands, was ceded by China to the British. Victoria is the chief town.

20. The principal Chinese islands are Hainan, Formosa, and the Loo-choo group. The first two are partly Chinese and partly independent. The native tribes of Formosa tattoo their bodies. The Loo-choo Islands lie about 450 miles east of China. The climate is fine, and the soil fertile: the inhabitants are friendly and hospitable; they speak the language of Japan, but are tributary to China.

Map No. 23. — How is China bounded? What sea between China and Corea? Yw. — What rivers flow into the Eastern sea? H.-Ho., Yg., H.-Kg. — How long are they? What islands east of China? Lo., Fa. — South? Hn. — How long are Formosa and Hainan? What Mts. in China? Pg., Mg. — Lakes? Tg., Pg., K.-Nr. — Population of Pekin? Canton? Teentsin? Nankin? Voutchang? Soutchow? Hangtchow? Kingteching? On what rivers are the first five of the foregoing cities? Point out the Free Ports. Hongkong.

— 199 —

THIBET, COREA, &c.

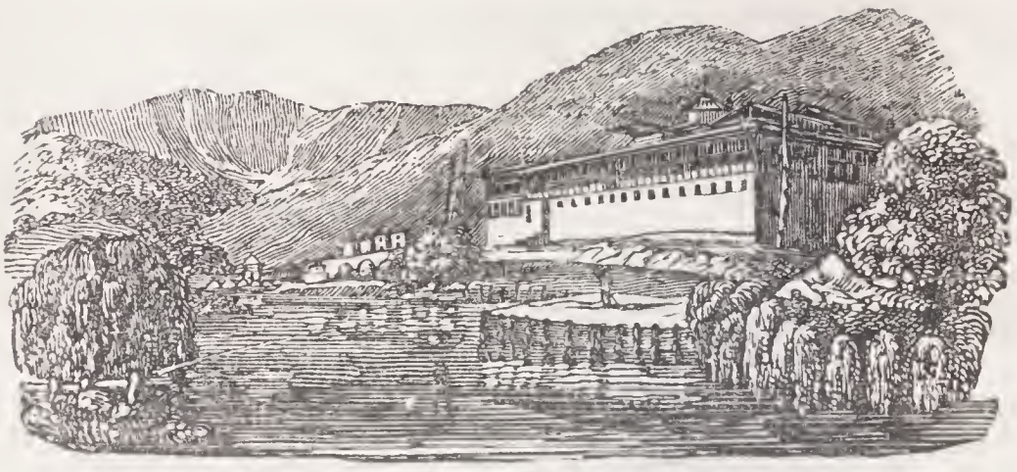
1. THIBET is a cold, elevated region, bounded by ranges of the highest mountains on the globe; and some of the largest rivers on the eastern continent rise within its territory. Thibet, including Little Thibet, is tributary to China.

2. The soil of Thibet is sterile, and vegetation is scanty; but the people possess large herds of cattle. The musk deer, grunting ox, and shawl goat, are some of the chief animals of this country; the latter furnishes the fine wool, of which the valuable shawls of Cashmere are made. Both sheep and oxen are used as beasts of burden.

3. Thibet is the chief seat of the religion of Buddha, called Fo in China, and Shamanism in Tartary. The Grand Lama is the head of this system, and is considered as the Creator himself, dwelling in a human form; and when he dies, the divine spirit is supposed to pass into another body, known by certain signs to the priests only.

4. Lassa is the religious capital of Central Asia, and the residence of the Chinese governor. Not far from the city, is the temple or palace of the Grand Lama; it is said to contain 10,000 rooms: the towers and obelisks of the building are covered with gold and silver, and there are innumerable images of Buddha of gold, silver, and other metals. This city is on a small branch of the Burrampooter river.

Thibet and Corea. Q. — 1. What is Thibet? 2. What is said of the soil? Cattle? 3. Religion? Grand Lama? 4. Describe Lassa.



Palace of Teshoo Lomboo.

5. Teshoo Lomboo is the seat of an inferior Lama, who resides in a large monastery, composed of 400 houses, encompassed by a high wall. Jigagungar is the most populous city in Thibet.

6. Little Thibet lies on the northern side of the Himmaleh Mountains, and is but little known. It is usually represented as subject to China; but some of its districts are said to be independent. Ladak, the chief town, is noted for its trade in shawl wool.

7. Corea.—Corea is a peninsula, situated between China and Japan. The people have but little intercourse with any nation, except the Chinese and Japanese.

8. This kingdom is ruled by a sovereign, who pays homage and tribute to China. The arts, learning, and written language of that country are in use in Corea; but the spoken language is different.

9. For its latitude, the climate of Corea is mild. Cotton, rice, and hemp, are the staple products; tobacco is also cultivated. The potato was introduced only so lately as the year 1832. The inhabitants are of larger size than either the Chinese or Japanese. Among the domestic animals are a breed of horses only 3 feet in height. Kingkitao, the capital, is situated nearly in the centre of the country.

Map No. 23.— — How is Thibet bounded? What rivers rise in it? Br., Iy., Ca., Yg. — How long are these? What Mts. on the north? Kn. — South-west? Hh. — How high are these? What Mt. west of Lassa? Ce. — How high is it? What river in Little Thibet? Is. —What town is on it? Lk. —What is the population of Jigagungar? Of Lassa? What sea bounds Corea on the west? Yw. — East? S. Jn. — How wide is the sea of Japan? What country bounds Corea north? Ma. —What sea south? En.

Lassa. 5. Teshoo Lomboo. 6. Little Thibet. Ladak. 7. What is said of Corea? 8. The sovereign? Arts, learning, &c.? 9. Climate? Productions? Inhabitants, &c.? Kingkitao?

— 200 —

EMPIRE OF JAPAN.

1. The empire of Japan comprises the islands of Niphon, Jesso, Kiusiu, and Sikoke, with the southernmost of the Kurile Islands. The people, like the Chinese, are jealous of Europeans; so that our knowledge of the country is limited.

2. The soil is tilled with great care; the law enacting that every owner of land shall render it as productive as possible. Rice and tea are the chief staples, but sugar, tobacco, cotton, and wheat, are cultivated. Besides large plantations of the tea-plant, all the hedges are formed of it.

3. The manufactures are numerous, and include silk, cotton, porcelain, and lackered or Japan ware, in which, and the working of metals, the Japanese excel. Gold, silver, and copper, are the principal minerals.

4. The Japanese are one of the most civilized nations in Eastern Asia, and educate their children of both sexes with great care. Women hold a higher rank here than in China; they enjoy the same degree of liberty as in Europe.

5. Foreigners are rigorously excluded from the empire, and none but the Chinese, Coreans, and Dutch, are permitted to have intercourse with it. The latter are subject to much indignity, yet submit to it for the sake of the trade.

6. The worship of Buddha, of Confucius, and of spirits, or genii, prevails in Japan. The last is called the religion of Sinto. The government is absolute; and there are two monarchs, the Kubo, and the Dairi. The former is the commander-in-chief of the army, and is the real sovereign; while the latter is the spiritual head of the empire. He lives retired, in his palace at Miaco, and seldom goes abroad: his person is regarded as sacred.

7. The laws are severe, and are rigorously executed; but the security of person and property is thus rendered very complete. Great crimes and capital punishments are rare. Cutting to pieces, immersion in boiling oil, and impalement on the cross, are common modes of punishment. The parent is made to suffer for the crimes of the child, and the child for those of the parent.

8. Jedo, the capital, is on the east side of Niphon, and is one of the largest cities in the world. It is 7 miles long, and 5 wide; and con-

---

Japan. Q. — 1. What does Japan comprise? 2. What is said of the soil? Products? 3. Manufactures? Gold, &c.? 4. Japanese? What is said of education? Women? 5. Foreigners? 6. The worship of Buddha, &c.? The government? Monarchs? 7. What is said

tains many palaces of the great lords, who must reside here part of the year. The buildings, on account of the frequency of earthquakes, are of one and two stories only, and are constructed of bamboo covered with mortar. The city is subject to dreadful fires, one of which, in the year 1701, consumed 100,000 houses.

9. Miaco is the religious capital of Japan; it is also the centre of its learning and science. It contains some very large palaces and temples. One of the latter, Fokosi, is 1000 feet long; in it is an image of Buddha, 83 feet high.

10. Osaca is, like Venice, intersected by canals. Nangasaki, in Kiusiu, is the only port at which foreigners are allowed to trade. The Dutch are here restricted to a small island, where they are allowed a space of only 600 feet long, by 120 wide, in which to carry on their business. Matsmay is the chief town on the island of Jesso.

Map No. 23.—What strait separates Corea from Niphon, &c.? Ca.—Which is the largest of the Japan Islands? Nn.—The next in extent? Jo.—How long is each of these islands? What strait separates Niphon and Jesso? My.—What island lies north of Jesso? Sn.—How long is Seghalien? What channel separates it from Mantchooria? Ty.—What islands north-east of Jesso? Ke.—Which is the largest of these? Sn.—What bounds Japan east? Pc.—How long and wide is the Pacific ocean? How far from Japan to Mexico? How many inhabitants has Jedo? Miaco? Osaca? Matsmay?

201

AFRICA.

1. Africa is the third in size among the great divisions of the globe, being about one-third less than Asia, and three times larger than Europe. It is a vast peninsula, joined to Asia by the Isthmus of Suez.

2. It is almost wholly in a state of barbarism; yet, in ancient times its northern countries were among the most enlightened in the world. They still have written languages, but rank among the lowest of the half-civilized nations.

3. Africa is the hottest region on the globe. It lies mostly within the tropics; and the influence of its burning climate extends even to those regions which are in the temperate zones. The most striking feature is the Great Desert, which is 3000 miles in length, and 1000 in breadth. It is covered with sand and gravel; and appears like the bottom of a dried-up sea.

---

of the laws? Cutting to pieces, &c.? 8. Describe Jedo. 9. Miaco. 10. Osaca. Nangasaki. Matsmay.

Africa. Q.—1. What is said of Africa? 2. Of its state, &c.?

Africa.

4. The rivers of Africa are few in number; and none are navigable to any extent for large vessels. The principal are the Niger and the Nile. The latter is remarkable for flowing 1600 miles without receiving a single tributary.

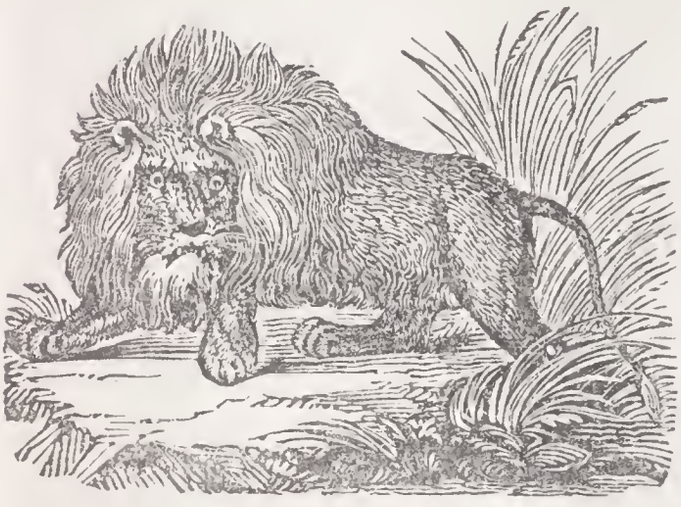
5. The mountains are generally distinguished more for extent than elevation. The Atlas Mountains in Barbary, the Mountains of the Moon in central, and the Snow Mountains in southern Africa, are the principal. Other ranges, as the Crystal Mountains in Congo, and the Lupata Mountains on the east coast, are but little known.

6. The principal African animals are the elephant, hippopotamus, camelopard or giraffe, and the two-horned rhinoceros, with the lion, leopard, zebra, &c. The African lion is the noblest animal of his race; those found elsewhere being much inferior in size and strength. The antelopes comprise not less than sixty different species: of these, the springbok is found in troops of several thousands. The camel in northern, and the ass in western Africa, are the chief beasts of burden.

7. The ostrich is the largest African bird, and the largest in the world. It runs with rapidity, but does not fly; and its feathers are used as ornaments of dress. The secretary vulture, or serpent-eater, is remarkable for devouring the most noxious of the serpent tribe. The sociable vulture is as large as the condor, and similar in its habits; it

---

3. The climate? Great Desert? 4. Rivers? 5. Mountains? 6. Describe the animals. 7. Birds. 8. Crocodiles, &c. 9. What is said



African Lion.

Springbok.

is found among all the high mountains of the interior. The bustard and guinea-fowl, with grouse, partridges, and water-fowl of various kinds, are numerous.

8. Crocodiles are found in all the rivers of the tropical parts of Africa; and serpents, scorpions, and lizards of various kinds, abound. The white ants are singular insects: they build nests 10 or 12 feet high, which are divided into apartments, with magazines for provisions, arched chambers, and galleries of communication.

9. Africa has but few great kingdoms; it is chiefly divided into a number of petty states, whose governments are despotic. The agriculture and manufactures are rude and imperfect; yet, owing to its fertility, the products of the soil are in many places very abundant.

10. The chief trade of the interior is carried on by caravans, consisting of camels, which cross the desert in various directions; and perform, on this sea of sand, the business accomplished by ships on the ocean. Commerce, on the northern and western coasts, is carried on mostly by Europeans, and on the eastern by the Arabs.

11. Africa has furnished slaves to Christian and other nations for hundreds of years; and the traffic, though somewhat checked, is still carried on. Great Britain and the United States were once engaged in this trade; but both nations have forbidden it; and it is punished as piracy by the latter power. The Spanish and Portuguese still pursue it on certain parts of the African coast.

12. The people of Africa are estimated at almost 60 millions. They belong to two races, the African and Caucasian. The former are the most numerous, and comprise the chief part of the inhabitants south

---

of its great kingdoms? Agriculture? Manufactures. 10. Trade of the interior? Commerce? 11. What is said of slaves? Great Britain and the United States? 12. What number of inhabitants? To what do they belong, &c.?

of the Great Desert. They are nearly all pagans. The Moors, Arabs, Berbers, Egyptians, Abyssinians, Fellatas, &c., belong to the Caucasian race. They are chiefly Mahomedans; and though superior to the African races, are still rude and barbarous.

— 202 —

Map No. 25. — How is Africa bounded?

Morocco ... Bounded?—Capital?	Ashantee... Bounded?—Capital?
Algiers .... Bounded?—Capital?	Dahomey .. Bounded?—Capital?
Tunis ..... Bounded?—Capital?	Benin ..... Bounded?—Capital?
Tripoli..... Bounded?—Capital?	Congo ..... Bounded?—Capital?
Egypt ..... Bounded?—Capital?	Angola .... Bounded?—Capital?
Nubia..... Bounded?—Capital?	Benguela... Bounded?—Capital?
Abyssinia .. Bounded?—Capital?	Cape Colony Bounded?—Capital?
Liberia .... Bounded?—Capital?	Mozambique Bounded?—Capital?

Where is the Gulf of Sidra? Gulf of Guinea? Gulf of Aden? Strait of Gibraltar? Strait of Babelmandel? Channel of Mozambique?

Where is Great Fish Bay? Walwisch? Santa Cruz? St. Helena? Delagoa? Bombetok? Anton Gils? Vohemaire?

Where is Cape Bon? C. Guardafui? C. Bassas? C. Delgado? C. Corrientes? C. Agulhas? C. of Good Hope?* C. Cross? C. Frio? C. Palmas? C. Verde? C. Blanco? C. Bojador? C. Ambro? C. St. Mary?

Where is the River Nile? The Senegal? Gambia? Grande? St. Paul's? Niger? Congo? Ambriz? Coanza? Orange? Manice? Zambeze? Ozee? Webbe? Yeou? Shary? Misselad?

Where are the Atlas Mountains? Mts. of Kong? Mts. of the Moon? Crystal Mts.? Lupata Mts.? Snow Mts.? Red Mts.? Radama Mts.?

Where are the Azores Islands? Madeira Is.? Canary Is.? Cape Verde Is.? Fernando Po I.? Prince's I.? St. Thomas I.? Annobon I.? Ascension I.? St. Helena? Ethiopian Archipelago? Mascarenha Is.? Mauritius I.? Bourbon I.? Seychelle Is.? Almirante Is.? Comoro Is.? Monfia I.? Zanzibar I.? Pemba I.? Socotra I.?

Where is the Great Desert? Libyan Desert? Nubian Desert? Desert of Challahengah? This is called also the Karri Harri Desert.

What three great circles pass through Africa? T.-Cr., Er., T.-Cn. — In what zones is Africa situated? Td., Te. — In what zone is it mostly? Td. — Africa contains 37 degrees of north and 35 of south latitude. In what latitude then is it mostly? Nh. — It contains 50 degrees of east and 18 of west longitude. In what longitude then is it chiefly? Et.

---

* Called, by way of distinction, the "Cape." Seamen say of a vessel bound to India or China, "she has gone round the Cape."

— 203 —

Arab Families removing.

BARBARY.

1. Barbary is that part of northern Africa which includes Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, together with the interior region called Beled el Jerid, or Land of Dates.

2. Some distance inland are the Atlas Mountains: between these and the coast the climate is mild, and the soil is generally fertile, but poorly cultivated. Wheat and barley are the principal products; but grapes, olives, almonds, dates, and other fruits, are raised in perfection.

3. The foreign commerce of the Barbary states is very limited, and much burdened with arbitrary exactions. The exports consist principally of the raw produce of the soil. The most active traffic is that carried on by the caravans with the interior country south of the Great Desert.

4. Piracy was once the chief employment of the people of this region. Many vessels were captured, and numbers of European and American sailors were enslaved by them; but this practice, so long permitted to the disgrace of Christendom, has ceased.

5. Barbary is inhabited by several distinct races. The Moors, who are the ruling people, inhabit the towns. The Arabs, originally from the Great Desert, live in tents; and raise cattle and grain. In re-

---

Barbary. Q. — 1. What does Barbary include? 2. What mountains in this country? What is said of the climate? Soil, &c? Products? 3. Commerce? 4. Piracy? 5. Describe the Moors. 6.

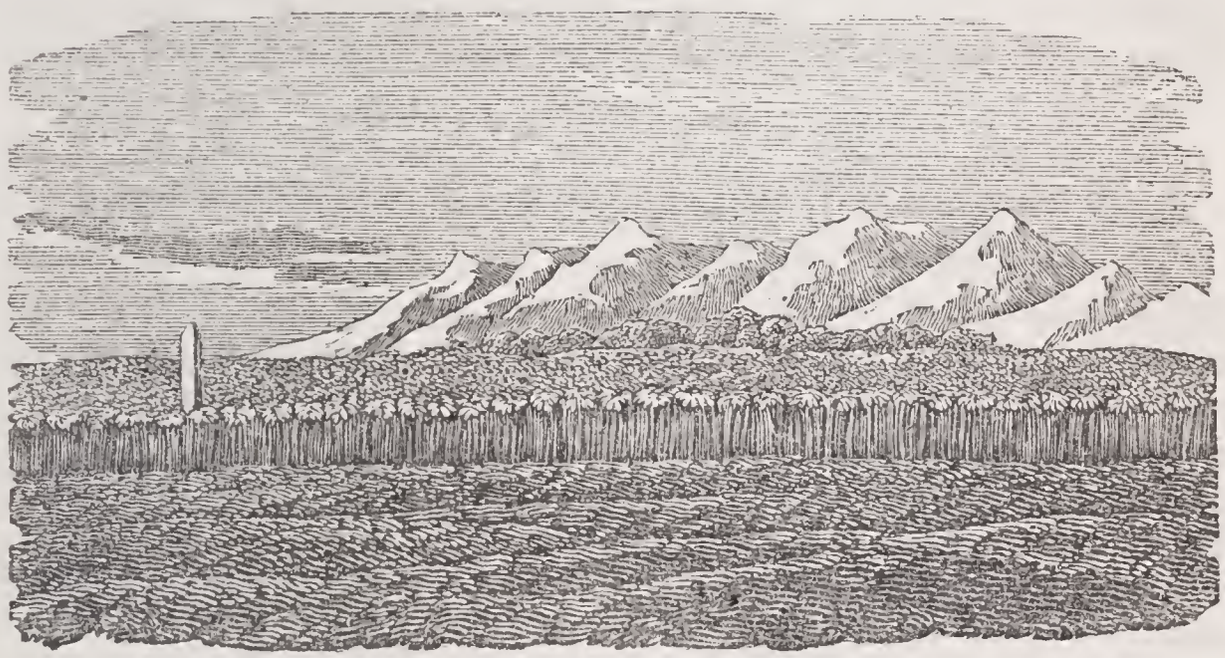
moving from one spot to another, the women, children, &c., are carried on camels. The men, on horseback, drive the cattle; and are armed, ready to defend their property, or repel aggression.

6. The Berbers, Shelluhs, and Kabyles, inhabit the Atlas Mountains, and live chiefly by agriculture. They belong to the Berber race, supposed to have been the first that inhabited this part of Africa. The Tuaricks of the Great Desert, and the people of Lower Nubia, are also of the same race.

7. Jews are numerous in Barbary: they are much oppressed, but, being allowed to engage in trade, often become wealthy. There are also some negroes, brought as slaves from Soudan, who are occasionally manumitted. In Morocco, the body-guard of the sultan is composed of negroes.

8. *Extent and Population of the Barbary States.*

	Square Miles.	Population.	Pop. to Sq. M.
Morocco	190,000	6,000,000	31.5
Algiers	90,000	1,500,000	16.6
Tunis	50,000	1,000,000	20
Tripoli	100,000	600,000	6
Beled el Jerid	140,000	900,000	6.4
Total,	570,000	10,000,000	17.5



View of the Plain of Morocco, and the Atlas Mountains.

THE EMPIRE OF MOROCCO.

9. Morocco is the most important of the Barbary powers. It includes the kingdoms of Morocco and Fez; and has also a nominal control over those of Suse and Tafilet. The sultan or emperor is a despot, whose will is law.

10. This empire is less flourishing than formerly: the acts of its government are calculated to discourage agriculture, and every branch

Berbers, &c.? 7. Jews, &c. 8. Which is the largest and most populous state in Barbary? The next in extent? In population? 9. What

of useful industry; and its commerce is now almost destroyed. The only important manufacture is that of Morocco leather, which, owing probably to local circumstances, is superior to any made elsewhere.

11. The city of Morocco, the capital, is situated in a fertile, thickly wooded plain, near the foot of the Atlas Mountains, 180 miles from the sea. It is enclosed by a wall, and is surrounded by numerous gardens. Fez, 230 miles nearly north of Morocco, is the largest city in the empire, and was for a time the most splendid of western Africa; it is now much decayed, and a great portion of it is in ruins.

12. Mequinez is occasionally the residence of the sultan. Its inhabitants are the most civilized and humane of any in the empire. Mogadore, or Sweara, is the chief sea-port. Rabat is one of the most important towns on the coast. Sallee, almost adjoining it, was long noted for its piracies, but is now nearly deserted. Tangier and Ceuta are towns situated on the Strait of Gibraltar. The first is the residence of the foreign consuls; the other has belonged to Spain since the year 1640.

Map No. 25. — What bounds Morocco north? M.-Sa. — South? G.-Dt. — East? As., B.-Jd., G.-Dt. — What strait separates it from Spain? Gr. — What islands west of Morocco? Ma., Cy. — What Mts. extend through Morocco? As. — The principal peak? M.-Mn. — How high is it? Population of Morocco? Fez? Mequinez? Rabat? Mogadore? Santa Cruz? How far from Morocco to Florida?

— 204 —

THE COLONY OF ALGERIA, OR ALGIERS, &c.

1. Algiers occupies the country of the ancient Numidia. Its inhabitants were once the most daring pirates in Barbary, and committed such depredations on the seas as rendered the name of Algerine a terror to southern Europe.

2. In the year 1815 Commodore Decatur chastised the Algerines, and compelled the Dey to pay 60,000 dollars, as an indemnity to the United States. In the following year Lord Exmouth cannonaded the city of Algiers with a powerful British fleet, and compelled the government to liberate all the Christian slaves.

3. The French in 1830, on account of an affront offered to their Consul, landed an army of 38,000 men, and took the capital. They found in it nearly 10 million dollars in money, besides ships' stores and ammunition. This conquest has entailed a vast expense on France, since, to repel the incessant attacks of the Arabs and Kabyles of the interior, she has to maintain an army of 80,000 men.

---

is Morocco? 10. What is said of its condition? 11. Describe the city of Morocco. Fez. 12. Mequinez, and the other towns.

Algeria. Q. — 1. What is said of Algeria? Its inhabitants? 2. What took place in 1815? In the following year? 3. In 1830? What was found in the capital? What is said of the conquest, &c.?

4. The city of Algiers is about 500 miles eastward of the Straits of Gibraltar. It has a good harbour, is strongly fortified, and carries on a considerable trade. Algiers is now partly a French and partly a Moorish city; full half of the population being Europeans.

5. Constantina, Mascara, and Tlemsen, are the most important towns in the interior. Oran in the western, and Bona in the eastern part of the country, are the chief sea-ports after Algiers. Bona is the seat of the noted coral-fishery, which yields to the value of from 300,000 to 400,000 dollars annually.

6. Tunis.—Tunis is the best cultivated part of Barbary, and the inhabitants are the most civilized and industrious portion of its population. Olive-oil and wool are exported to some extent, and there is some traffic with interior Africa. The Bey has recently abolished slavery in his dominions.

7. The city of Tunis, the capital, is situated about 10 miles south-west of Carthage, the most renowned commercial city of ancient times. It is the largest place in Barbary; and being no longer engaged in piracy, its inhabitants have applied themselves to manufactures and commerce: of the former the beretti, or red caps of Tunis, so well known all over the Mediterranean, are the chief. Kairwan, Cabes, and Monastir, are the next important towns.

8. Tripoli.—Tripoli is the most eastern, and it is also the least fertile state in Barbary. The chief part of its territory is a desert; but there are some fertile districts along the coast.

9. The people are vicious in their habits, and, what is not common with Mahomedans, are much addicted to drunkenness; but they are more tolerant to Christians than Mussulmen usually are. An extensive commerce, by means of caravans, is carried on with the countries of interior Africa. Fezzan, the chief emporium of the caravan tribe, is tributary to Tripoli. Barca and Augela also belong to it.

10. Tripoli, the capital, has a good harbour, and carries on a considerable commerce. The streets are narrow, with low, mean houses; but the palace of the Dey and some of the mosques are handsome structures. Mesurata is, next to the capital, the most important town.

11. Barca.—Barca, the ancient Libya, belongs to Tripoli, but is separated from it by an extensive desert. It was in ancient times noted for its fertility, but hardly any part of its soil is now cultivated. The inhabitants are chiefly Arabs, who wander about the country with their flocks and herds.

---

4. Describe the city of Algiers. 5. Constantina, &c. 6. Tunis. 7. The capital. Other towns. Tripoli. What is said of the people? Commerce? 10. The capital? 11. Barca? 12. Ruins, &c.? Augela?

Tombs of Cyrene.

12. The ruins of ancient cities are numerous; of these, Cyrene, with its Necropolis, or city of the tombs, is the most interesting. Derne and Bengazi are the only places that can be called towns. The first was captured by the American general, Eaton, in 1805. Augela, an oasis, 200 miles south of the Mediterranean sea, is famous for its dates.

Map No. 25.—What bounds Algiers north? M.-Sa.—South? B.-Jd.—East? Ts.—West? Mo.—What Mts. in the south? As.—How long are they? Population of Algiers? Constantine? Bona? Oran? What bounds Tunis north? M.-Sa.—South? B.-Jd.—East? M.-Sa., Ti.—West? As.—What cape north? Ba.—What lake south? Lh.—Population of Tunis? Kairwan? What bounds Tripoli north? M.-Sa.—South? G.-Dt.—West? Ts., B.-Jd.—What gulf separates Tripoli from Barca? Sa.—Population of Tripoli? What bounds Barca north? M.-Sa.—South? L.-Dt.—East? Et.—West? G.-Sa.

205

THE BELED EL JERID, &c.

1. The Beled el Jerid, or Land of Dates, stretches along the northern edge of the Great Desert, from the Atlas Mountains on the west, to the frontiers of Tripoli on the east.

2. The soil, though dry and arid, produces dates in abundance, which form the chief article of food. This region comprises several petty states, which are peopled by various tribes of Berbers and Arabs.

Beled el Jerid. Q.—1. What is said of the Beled el Jerid? 2. Soil?

3. Nearly all the towns are surrounded by walls, and are inhabited some by two and others by three different tribes. They are in consequence divided into corresponding sections. Furious contests often occur between the tribes in these towns, in which event the gates connecting the different quarters are closed, until peace is restored. Eghwaat, Tuggurt, and Gadames, are the principal towns.

THE GREAT DESERT.

4. The Great Desert stretches from the Atlantic ocean almost to the river Nile. It is composed of vast sandy plains, swept by hot winds, and parched by a burning sun.

5. The Desert is here and there diversified with watered and fertile spots, called *oases;* of these, Fezzan, Tibesty, Bilmah, Agdass, and Tuat, are the principal. That part of the Great Desert extending from Fezzan to the Atlantic is called by the Arabs the Sahara, while the eastern and smaller section is most usually termed the Libyan Desert.

6. Fezzan is the largest of the oases, and is tributary to Tripoli. It is principally important as the centre of the caravan trade. Its inhabitants are reckoned at 70,000; they possess but little energy, and are imperfectly acquainted with the arts. Mourzouk, the capital, a small mud-walled town, is 600 miles nearly south from Tripoli.

7. The central part of the Desert is occupied by the Tibboos and the Tuaricks. The former are as black as negroes, but of a different

---

States, &c.? 3. Towns? 4. Describe the Great Desert. 5. How is it diversified? What is the Sahara, &c.? 6. What is said of Fezzan?

aspect. Bilmah appears to be their principal district. The Tuaricks are a tall, handsome race, with bright sparkling eyes, and complexions but little darker than southern Europeans. Agdass and Timbuctoo are said to be in their possession.

8. In crossing the Great Desert, travellers are often plundered by the inhabitants; their lives also are endangered by the sand blown up by tempests, which fills and darkens the air, and threatens to suffocate and overwhelm them. The occasional failures of water at the usual stopping-places, is likewise often attended with fatal consequences; from the latter cause, in the year 1805, a caravan of 1800 camels, and 2000 men, perished with thirst.

9. On the sea-coast of the Desert are various wandering and predatory tribes, who often meet with a rich booty in the vessels shipwrecked on their shores, and which are always plundered with the greatest avidity. In different parts of the Desert there are mines of rock salt; the extensive demand for which in Soudan causes the surface of this dreary region to be enlivened by the passage of numerous caravans.

Map No. 25. — How is the Beled el Jerid bounded? How is the Great Desert bounded? What tribes are in the centre? Ts., Ts. — On the west? Ms., Ws., Ts., Bs. —What salt-mines are in the Great Desert? Ty., Tt., An. —What oases are in the Great Desert? Fn., Ty., Bh., As., Tt., Aa., Sh., E.-Dl., E.-Kh. —What country in the south? Lr. — How long and wide is the Great Desert? What capes are on the coast? Br., Bo. — How far is it to Mexico? To Cuba?

206

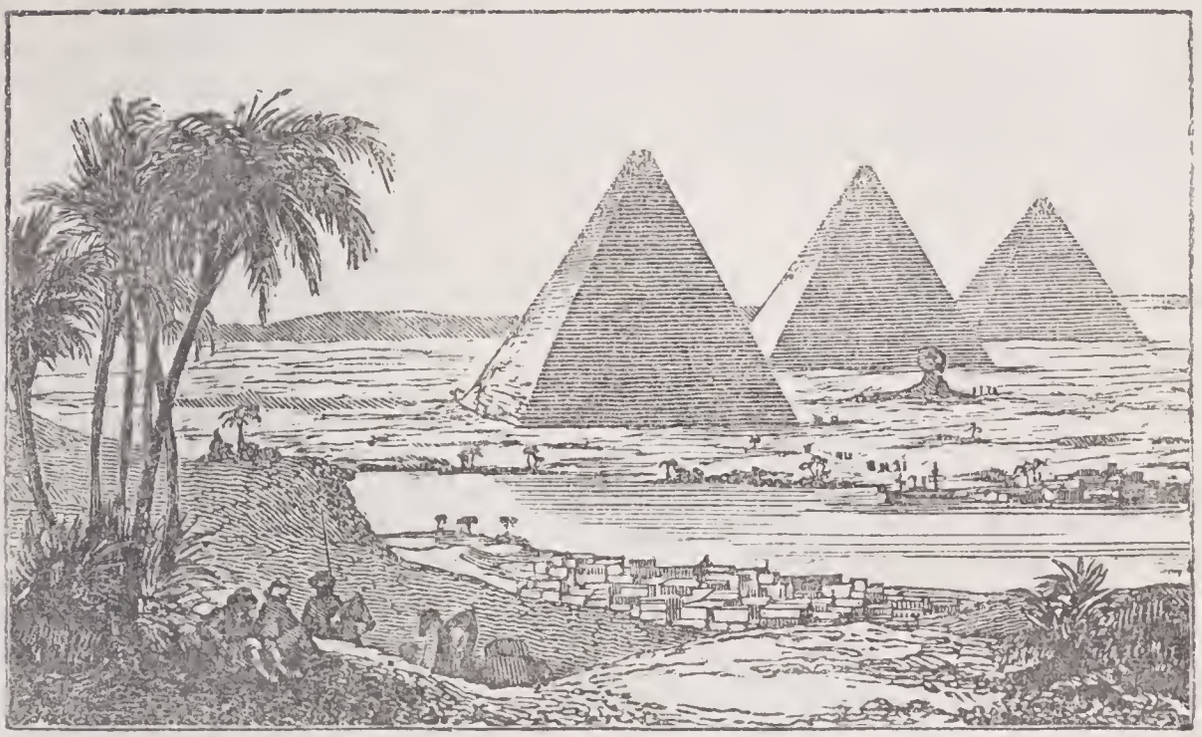
THE REGION OF THE NILE.

1. The Region of the Nile includes all that part of Africa watered by the river Nile and its tributaries; comprising Egypt, Nubia, Abyssinia, Kordofan, Darfur, and Fertit.

EGYPT.

2. Egypt is celebrated for its great antiquity, and the early civilization of its inhabitants. Its mighty pyramids, splendid obelisks, and the ruins of its ancient cities, all attest its former magnificence. It includes the Bahari, or Lower, the Vostani, or Central, and the Said, or Upper Egypt.

7. The Tibboos? Tuaricks? 8. Travellers? 9. The sea-coast? — *The Region of the Nile. Q.* — 1. What does the region of the Nile include? 2. What is said of Egypt? 3. Of its present ruler? The



3. It is nominally a Turkish pashalic; but the late Pacha rendered himself independent, and introduced, to some extent, the arts, learning, and civilization of Europe into Egypt. But the people were, and are still, greatly oppressed, being often torn violently from their families and compelled to serve as soldiers and sailors.

4. Egypt is naturally barren, and owes all its fertility to the annual overflowing of the Nile, and to the fertile mud left on the land by its waters. Agriculture is diligently pursued; and in many parts of the country three crops of some products are raised annually. Indian corn, rice, wheat, sugar-cane, indigo, tobacco, cotton, &c., are the chief productions. Rain is frequent in Lower, but is of rare occurrence in Upper Egypt.

5. The inhabitants are of various races. The Arabs are the most numerous; the Turks are the ruling people; the Copts are the descendants of the ancient Egyptians. There are also some Jews and Europeans: the latter are chiefly in the service of the government.

6. The foreign possessions of Egypt are Nubia and Kordofan, in Africa; together with the islands of Cyprus and Candia, in the Mediterranean Sea. The population of the whole state is about 5 millions.

7. Egypt abounds in remarkable antiquities. The pyramids are astonishing monuments of human labour: the largest is 500 feet high, and its base covers 11 acres of ground. Ancient historians state that 100,000 men were employed for 20 years in its construction.

---

people? 4. The soil? Agriculture? Products? 5. The inhabitants? 6. Foreign possessions? 7. In what does Egypt abound?

8. At Thebes, in Upper Egypt, are remains which fill the beholder with astonishment. Almost the whole extent of 8 miles along the river is covered with magnificent portals, decorated with sculpture, forests of columns, and long avenues of colossal statues.

The great square in Cairo.

9. Cairo, the capital of Egypt, is on the river Nile, 130 miles from the sea. It is the largest city in Africa; and is called Musr by its inhabitants. The streets are very narrow; dogs are numerous; and camels and asses are used, instead of wheel carriages, for carrying burdens. There are 400 mosques, besides a number of other public buildings. Many schools, hospitals, factories, &c., have been established by the present Pacha. Most European nations have consuls here; and hotels are kept on the plan of those in London and Paris.

10. Alexandria was one of the most celebrated cities of ancient times, and long the seat of the arts and sciences. After being for ages in a state of decay, it is at length reviving. It is now the chief sea-port and naval station of Egypt: vessels of nearly every European nation are to be found in its harbour; and steam-boats run to all the principal ports and islands in the Mediterranean. Damietta and Rosetta are the chief towns in Lower, and Siout and Girge in Central Egypt. Suez and Cosseir, on the Red sea, possess some trade.

Map No. 26.—What bounds Egypt on the north? M.-Sa.—South? Na.—East? R.-Sa.—West? G.-Dt.—What river flows through Egypt? Ne.—How long is it? What isthmus connects Egypt with Arabia? Sz.—How wide is it? What is the country at the mouth of the Nile called? Da.—What is a Delta? (See page 72.) What is the population of Cairo? Damietta? Alexandria? Siout? Rosetta? Cosseir? Suez? What three oases are included in Egypt? Sh., E.-Dl., E.-Kh.—What is on the west side of the Nile near Cairo? Ps.—What ruins are in the south part of Egypt? Ts.

---

8. Describe Thebes. 9. Cairo. 10. Alexandria Damietta, &c.

— 207 —

NUBIA, ABYSSINIA, &c.

1. Nubia is an extensive region, composed chiefly of rocky and sandy deserts. Since 1821 it has belonged to the Pacha of Egypt. It comprises two divisions, Upper and Lower Nubia.

2. Lower Nubia, or Nubia Proper, extends from the river Tacazze northward to Egypt. Its only productive soil is a narrow strip chiefly on the west side of the Nile, which is irrigated by water raised from the river.

3. Upper Nubia extends southward from the Tacazze river to Abyssinia. It is watered by the tributaries of the eastern branch of the Nile, but is indifferently cultivated. Sennaar, Halfay, and Shendy, are its chief districts.

4. The Nubians Proper, or inhabitants of Lower Nubia, are of the Berber race; the people of the desert are Arabs. The latter were noted robbers, but are now kept in check by the Pacha of Egypt.

5. The remains of ancient temples are common in Nubia. These are either under ground or cut out of the solid rock. That of Ipsambul is the most splendid, and rivals any of the Egyptian monuments.

6. Derr is considered the capital of Lower Nubia. New Dongola was the capital of the Mamelukes, after their expulsion from Egypt in 1812. Shendy is a noted slave-market: near it are the ruins of Meroe, a noted ancient city. Sennaar was once a large city, but is now decayed. Khartoom was lately founded by the Egyptians. Suakem is the port where pilgrims from the interior take passage for Mecca.

7. Darfur is a dry, sandy country, but the tropical rains cause it to produce, to some extent, wheat and millet. Camels, horses, and cattle, abound. Bergoo, or Waday, lying westward from Darfur, is imperfectly known, but is reported to be well peopled.

8. Kordofan, situated westward of Sennaar, was conquered in the year 1820 by the Pacha of Egypt. Its soldiers, like those of Bornou, wear armour in time of war. Fertit and Donga are known only by report: the former is said to abound in copper. The Shilluks are a nation of negroes, of unusual size and strength.

ABYSSINIA.

9. Abyssinia, the ancient Ethiopia, is a country of rugged mountains, intersected by deep and fertile valleys. Though situated in the torrid zone, the climate is generally temperate.

Nubia, &c. Q.—1. What is said of Nubia? 2. Describe Lower Nubia. 3. Upper Nubia. 4. The inhabitants. 5. Ancient temples. 6. Derr, &c. 7. Darfur, &c. 8. Kordofan, &c. 9. Abyssinia. 10. What is

Wheat, barley, and teff, a very small grain, are the chief products; and salt is the principal mineral.

10. The people are in some respects superior to the nations around them; yet their manners are cruel and licentious. At their feasts they eat raw flesh, cut from the animal while yet warm. Human life is but little regarded. Intoxication is frequent, a plurality of wives is common, and great depravity of manners prevails.

11. The religion is a corrupt kind of Christianity, intermixed with Jewish rites and ceremonies. Circumcision is practised; baptism and the Lord's Supper are administered, and Saturday and Sunday are both observed as a sabbath. The churches are much adorned with paintings. Learning is extremely limited, being confined to the priests, and connected principally with their system of religion.

12. Abyssinia was formerly under one government, but now comprises three divisions — Tigre, Amhara, and Shoa, or Shwa. In the year 1841 an embassy was sent to Shoa by the British East India Company. Some of the southern and western provinces of Abyssinia have been conquered by the Galla, a most ferocious and brutal people, who in their incursions spare neither age nor sex.

13. Gondar, the capital of Amhara, was once the largest city and capital of Abyssinia: it now contains only 6000 inhabitants, but covers a great extent of ground. It is in the hands of the Galla. Antalo and Adowa are the other principal towns. Axum, the ancient capital of Abyssinia, is now in ruins, but is remarkable for its antiquities. Massuah, which belongs to Egypt, is the sea-port of Abyssinia.

Map No. 25. — How is Nubia bounded? What river in Nubia? Ne. — Desert? Nn. — What is the population of Khartoom? Sennaar? Suakem? Shendy? New Dongola? Derr? What bounds Abyssinia on the north? Na. — South? Ea. Al. — East? R.-Sa. — West? Ss. — What lake in the centre? Da. — What river flows from it? Ni. — What is the population of Gondar? Antalo? Massuah? Axum? What countries lie west of the Nile? Kn., Dr., Bo. — South of Darfur? Ft., Da. — What river flows through Bergoo? Md. — The capitals of these countries? It., Cc., Wa. — The population of Cobbe? What towns are on the Nile? On the Bahr el Azrek?

— 208 —

WESTERN AFRICA.

1. This region extends from the Great Desert to the Tropic of Capricorn. Its chief divisions are Senegambia, and Upper and Lower Guinea. A highly productive soil, a rich luxu-

---

said of the people? 11. Religion? 12. Government? Describe the Galla. 13. Gondar, and the other towns.

riance of vegetation, and a great variety and abundance of animals, distinguish this part of the continent.

2. The inhabitants are ignorant and barbarous: their chiefs are despotic, and in some parts are regarded by their subjects as a sacred race. Mahomedanism is the religion of many tribes; but Fetichism, or the worship of snakes, lizards, and other disgusting objects, is prevalent. The Mahomedan tribes are less barbarous than the others.

3. The slave-trade has been carried on by Europeans from this region to a greater extent than from any other part of Africa; and, notwithstanding the exertions made to suppress it, it still continues.

SENEGAMBIA.

4. Senegambia extends from the Great Desert to the Colony of Liberia. It contains a number of small states, of which Foota Jallo, Bambouk, and Soolimana, all in the interior, appear to be the principal. Bambouk is noted for its gold.

5. The inhabitants of Foota Jallo belong to the Foulah nation, who are widely dispersed over Western and Central Africa. They are the most civilized people of this region, and have dark olive complexions, with high and often pleasing features. The Jaloffs and Mandingoes are also important races, but differ from the Foulahs in their complexion and general appearance.

6. The French, English, and Portuguese, have settlements established on various parts of the coast, for the purpose of trading with the natives for slaves, ivory, gum-arabic, and gold-dust.

Western Africa. Q. — 1. Describe this region. 2. The inhabitants. Religion. 3. Slave-trade. 4. What is said of Senegambia? 5. The Foulahs? Jaloffs, &c.? 6. The French, &c.?

COLONY OF SIERRA LEONE.

7. The British Colony of Sierra Leone was established in 1787, for the purpose of introducing the Christian religion and civilization into Africa, but has not realized the expectations of its founders.

8. The bulk of the inhabitants are liberated slaves, taken from captured slave-ships. The population is about 43,000, of whom not more than 100 are whites; the extreme unhealthfulness of the climate rendering it unsafe for them to reside here. Freetown, or St. George, is the capital of Sierra Leone: there are also 8 or 10 small villages.

REPUBLIC OF LIBERIA.

9. Liberia, lately an American colony, became in 1847 an independent Republic. It was founded in 1821 by the American Colonization Society, as a place of refuge for the free negroes and emancipated slaves of the United States.

10. Many have emigrated thither, and the colony is in a flourishing condition. Several of the neighbouring tribes have put themselves under its protection, and are endeavouring to imitate its customs and learn its arts. The slave-trade has been abolished within the limits of Liberia. Several vessels, built at Monrovia, trade along the coast with the native tribes, for gold, ivory, palm-oil, &c., in exchange for American and European manufactures.

11. The first settled and chief town is Monrovia; it contains about 300 houses, including churches, schools, a public library, &c. There are several other towns and settlements situated at various points on the coast, from the St. Paul's river to Cape Palmas. The territory of Liberia extends along the sea-shore about 300 miles: it contains 3,500 colonists, and 20,000 natives.

Map No. 25. — How is Senegambia bounded? Which rivers are the principal? Sl., Ga., Nr., R.-Gc. — How long are the three first? What cape on the west? Ve. — On the south? Ps. — What French settlement on the Senegal river? St.-Ls. — British settlement on the Gambia? Bt. — What settlement on the Rio Grande? Pc. — What islands lie west of Cape Verde? C.-Ve. — What British colony in the south? S.-Lc.

Map No. 27. — What are the principal rivers of Liberia? How long is the St. Paul's river? Which is the most northern cape? Mt. — Southern? Ps. — There are nine colonial towns — which are they? Native towns? What colony at Cape Palmas? Md. — At the St. John's river? Pa. — Near what cape is the town of Monrovia? Mo.

Sierra Leone. Q. — 7. Describe Sierra Leone. 8. What is said of the inhabitants? 9. Describe Liberia. 10. What is said of the colony? The neighbouring tribes? The slave-trade? 11. The chief towns, &c.? How far does the territory extend?

— 209 —

UPPER AND LOWER GUINEA.

1. Upper Guinea extends from Senegambia to Biafra. The coast is divided by navigators into the Grain, Ivory, Gold, and Slave Coasts: these are so named from the chief objects of trade at the respective places.

2. Besides part of the colony of Liberia, this region contains the native kingdoms of Ashantee, Dahomey, Benin, &c.; also some English, Dutch, and Danish settlements.

3. The kingdom of Ashantee is situated to the north of the Gold Coast, and is the most important native state in Western Africa. The inhabitants possess some of the comforts of civilization, but live, notwithstanding, in a state of shocking barbarity.

4. The horrid custom of sacrificing human beings at the decease of the sovereign, or any of the royal family, prevails to a great extent, and three thousand victims are said to have been immolated on the grave of the king's mother, on one occasion only. The houses in Coomassie, the capital, are neat and well-built. The streets are all named, and are each under the charge of an officer.

5. The Gold Coast contains a number of European settlements or factories, founded for the purpose of trading with the natives for gold-dust, the most valuable product of the country. Cape Coast Castle is the principal of the British factories, Elmina of the Dutch, and Christiansburg of the Danes; these are all fortified, and garrisoned.

6. Dahomey, on the Slave Coast, is a fertile country: it is inhabited by a warlike and ferocious people, whose manners and customs are even more cruel than those of the Ashantees. Abomey is the capital.

7. Benin is but little known: the king is not only absolute, but is considered a god in the eyes of his subjects, and all crimes against him are punished both as treason and impiety. Benin is the capital: for a Negro town it is remarkably clean, and is under judicious regulations.

LOWER GUINEA.

8. The principal countries comprised in Lower Guinea are Loango, Congo, Angola, and Benguela. The sea-coast of these countries is known to navigators by the name of the Coast of Angola, or simply the Coast.

9. Biafra, Calbongas, and Gaboon, lying south of the Niger river, are reported to be fertile and populous countries, but are seldom visited.

Upper Guinea. Q.—1. Describe Upper Guinea. 2. Kingdoms, &c. 3. Ashantee. 4. What is said of human sacrifices? Coomassie? 5. The Gold Coast? 6. Dahomey? 7. Benin? 8. Describe Lower

Loango possesses a fine climate and a fertile soil; the slave-trade is carried on to some extent from its chief ports, Cabenda and Loango.

10. Congo, Angola, Benguela, and Matemba, are situated to the southward of the river Congo. The whole region is said to be fertile, though in some parts but thinly peopled. These territories were discovered by the Portuguese in 1487, and have ever since been under their control; but their authority in the interior is merely nominal.

11. Cassange and Moolooa are countries reported to be far inland. The inhabitants of the latter are more civilized and industrious than those of the coast, yet the atrocious custom of human sacrifice prevails. St. Salvador is the principal town of Congo. St. Paul de Loando and St. Felipe de Benguela are the chief sea-ports in Angola and Benguela: from these the slave-trade is carried on to some extent.

12. The Cimbebas Country extends 500 miles southward from Benguela: the whole coast is a desert, and fresh water is very scarce; but the interior is a pastoral country. The inhabitants are clothed in ox-hides, and possess large herds of cattle. Ichaboe, a small island on the coast, has furnished great quantities of guano.

Map No. 25.—What bounds Upper Guinea on the north? Sn.—South? G.-Ga.—East? L.-Ga.—West? Sa., La.—What Mts. on the north? Kg.—What is the population of Coomassie? Abomey? Benin? How is Lower Guinea bounded? Which are its rivers? Co., Az., Ca., Be.—Mts.? Cl.—What islands in the Gulf of Guinea? F.-Po., Ps., S.-Ts., An.—To what power do the three last belong? What river divides Upper from Lower Guinea? Nr.—What is the population of Loango? St. Salvador? St. Paul de Loando? How far is it from Guinea to Brazil? From Angola to Brazil?

210

SOUTHERN AFRICA.

1. Southern Africa comprises nearly all that part of the continent which lies south of the tropic of Capricorn. Its subdivisions are the Cape Colony, Caffraria, the country of the Hottentots, and the country of the Boshuanas.

2. The Cape Colony was settled by the Dutch in 1650. It was twice conquered by Great Britain, and was finally confirmed to that power in 1815. The population consists of Dutch, British, and Hottentots. The latter were formerly slaves, but were emancipated in the year 1829. The inhabitants amount to 160,000 in number.

3. The soil along the coast is generally fertile, and productive in grain, wine, and fruits. In the interior is the Great Karroo, a dry plain,

---

Guinea. 9. Biafra, &c. 10. Congo, &c. 11. Cassange, &c. 12. Cimbebas country.

Southern Africa. Q.—1. What does Southern Africa comprise? 2. What is said of the Cape Colony? 3. The soil? Farmers? 4. Cape

nearly destitute of vegetation. It is much frequented by the ostrich. The farmers of the Colony, called Boors, occupy extensive farms, and raise large herds of cattle.

4. Cape Town is situated at the base of Table Mountain, over which is frequently seen a singular white cloud, called the table-cloth. It is an important station, being the only place of refreshment for vessels, between Europe and America on the one side, and the East Indies, China, and Australasia, on the other. Graham's Town is the next most important place.

5. Caffraria.—Caffraria extends north-eastward from the Cape Colony to St. Lucia river. It is now of less extent than formerly; the south-west portion has been recently annexed to the Cape Colony. The inhabitants, called Caffres, are divided into several tribes. They are an athletic, vigorous people, of a deep brown colour, and with frizzled, though not woolly hair.

6. War, hunting, and tending their large herds of cattle, are the employment of the men. The women cultivate the soil, build huts, cut wood, and make baskets of reeds that will hold milk.

7. Previous to the recent war between them and the Colonists, the missionaries had made a favourable impression on some of the Caffres; but that event destroyed, in a measure, the good effects of their labours, and obliged most of them to leave the country.

Bushman disguised as an Ostrich.

8. Country of the Hottentots.—This tract of country is inhabited by the Damaras, Namaquas, Corannas, Griquas, and other tribes, all known by the general name of Hottentots. They are a

---

Town? 5. Describe Caffraria. The inhabitants. 6. Their employments. 7. Missionaries. 8. What is said of the country of the Hot-

quiet, inoffensive, ignorant race; filthy in their habits, and ugly in person: their language is singular, and has been compared to the clucking of turkeys. Some have been taught by the missionaries to cultivate the ground, raise cattle, and work at a few of the most common trades.

9. The Bushmen, or Wild Hottentots, go almost naked, and reside in holes in the ground, or clefts in the rocks. They use poisoned arrows in war, or in destroying wild beasts. They display some ingenuity in disguising themselves in imitation of the ostrich, and are thus enabled to approach that shy animal sufficiently near to destroy it.

Kurreechane.

10. Country of the Boshuanas. — The Boshuanas appear to be of the same race as the Caffres; but have made more progress in industry and the arts. They dwell in towns; and cultivate the ground, raising millet, beans, water-melons, &c. These people have large herds of cattle, the robbing of which from each other is the cause of frequent wars. Lattakoo, Mashow, and Kurreechane, the chief towns, are from 600 to 800 miles distant from Cape Town.

Map No. 25. —What countries south of the Tropic of Capricorn? Hs., Bs., C.-Cy., Ca.—Which is the most southern cape? Ls.—What other cape? G.-He.—What rivers in this region? Oe., Ke., G.-Ki., S.-La., Me. — How long is the first? What Mts.? Sw. — How high are they? What desert extends north-west from the Boshuana country? Ch. This is also called the Karri-Harri Desert. — How far from Cape Colony to Swan River Colony? Population of Kurreechane? Mashow? Lattakoo? Cape Town? Graham's Town?

— 211 —

EASTERN AFRICA.

1. Eastern Africa comprises a vast extent of coast, reaching from Caffraria to Abyssinia, 3000 miles in length. Scarcely any part of the world is so imperfectly known, as

---

tentots? 9. The Bushmen? 10. Country of the Boshuanas? Towns, &c.? Herds of cattle?

Eastern Africa. Q. — 1. What does Eastern Africa comprise? 2.

the interior of this region, or opposes so many obstacles to the investigations of the traveller.

2. The states of this territory are generally occupied by dark brown or black nations, who, however, bear but little resemblance to negroes except in colour. In some of them, the inhabitants are not entirely destitute of arts and industry.

3. The Country of the Somaulies extends from Abyssinia to Cape ardafui. The people are an active, industrious race, who trade with the Arabs, Hindoos, and the interior tribes. The country is hilly and beautiful, and may be considered as the native region of incense, myrrh, and sweet-smelling gums.

4. Berbera and Adel are the chief states on the coast, of which the principal towns are Berbera and Zeyla; Hurrur, in the interior, is the residence of the Sultan of the Somaulies. The inland country is scarcely known, but appears to be occupied by the savage Galla, and by the kingdom of Gingiro, whose inhabitants are equally barbarous.

5. Ajan, or Azania, stretching southward from Cape Gardafui, is sandy, hilly, and, except in the northern parts, barren. The want of harbours, and the fierce character of the inhabitants, have prevented it from being much frequented by traders.

6. Zanguebar extends from Cape Bassas to Cape Delgado. It contains several states, of which Magadoxa, Mombas, and Quiloa, appear to be the chief: the latter is under the control of the Arabs of Muscat. Melinda, once an important city, is now in ruins, having been, with the whole of its territory, desolated by the savage Galla.

7. The commerce of this region is carried on principally by the Arabs of Muscat, in vessels called dows, the planks of which, instead of being fastened in the usual manner, are sewed together. The ports of Mombas, Lamoo, and Brava, are sometimes visited by American ships.

8. The Portuguese Possessions commence at Cape Delgado; the authority of this nation was once very extensive, but it is now little more than nominal. Mozambique is the residence of the Governor General: it was settled by the Portuguese as early as the year 1506. Quilimane at the mouth of the Zambeze river, and Sofala and Inhambane, are the other chief stations on the coast; those in the interior are Sena, Tete, and Manica. The trade, now greatly reduced, is chiefly in slaves, gold, and ivory.

9. Monomotapa, or Motapa, a once powerful empire, is now destroyed: its territory is mostly occupied by the Maravis, a warlike, plundering tribe, whose chief, called the Changamera, resides at Zimbao, the ancient capital. Farther inland is the country of the Movizas, an industrious and peaceable race.

What is said of its states? 3. Somaulies? 4. Berbera and Adel? 5. Ajan? 6. Zanguebar? 7. Commerce? 8. What is said of the Portuguese possessions? 9. Monomotapa? 10. The Bororas, &c. Cazembe?

10. The Borgras and Makooas are populous tribes in the interior: the latter are reported to be cannibals. Cazembe, a kingdom situated in the centre of the continent, is fertile and populous, and is subject to a despot; it yields iron and copper: its trade is in slaves and ivory.

Map No. 25.—What gulf separates Berbera from Arabia? An.—What capes on the coast of Ajan? Gi., Oi., Bs.—How far is it from Ajan to Ceylon? What country of Zanguebar lies north of the Equator? Ma.—Which lie south? Ma., Ms., Qa.—How far from Zanguebar to Sumatra? What rivers are in Zanguebar? We., Oe.—In Mozambique? Ze., Me.—What Mts.? La.—Capes? Do., Cs.—What channel separates Mozambique from Madagascar? Me.

212

CENTRAL AFRICA.

1. Central Africa comprises all the interior regions south of the Great desert. Its northern division, Soudan, or Nigritia, has been partially explored by Europeans; but the southern, called Ethiopia, has never been visited by white men, and is, consequently, unknown.

2. The Niger, its principal river, (called by the natives the Joliba, or Quorra), was long a subject of intense interest to the civilized world, in consequence of the various opinions entertained concerning it. Mr. Park, in 1795, determined the upper part of its course; and the lower

---

Central Africa. Q.—1. Describe Central Africa. Northern division. Southern. 2. What is said of the principal river? 3. Soudan? 4.

part, and termination in the Gulf of Guinea, were ascertained by the brothers Lander, in 1830. Since that time it has been ascended by steam-boats, for a distance of 400 or 450 miles.

3. Soudan is, in most parts, fertile and populous; and the inhabitants generally excel those of the coast in industry and intelligence. It contains a great number of states, various in extent and character.

4. In the year 1822, &c., the British travellers, Denham and Clapperton, crossed the desert from Tripoli to Soudan; they explored Bornou and Houssa. Four years afterwards, Major Laing, a British officer, travelled from Tripoli to Timbuctoo, and remained there a month; but he was murdered a few days after leaving that city, on his return home. In 1828 M. Caillé, a French traveller, reached Timbuctoo from the west coast, and then crossed the Sahara to Morocco. Our chief knowledge of the interior is derived from these intrepid travellers.

5. Kaarta, the most western state in Soudan, is a considerable kingdom, but of moderate fertility; the capital is Kemmoo. Boure and Wassela on the Niger, and Kong, extending along the mountain range of the same name, are imperfectly known. The first abounds in gold. Beeroo and Massina on the western, and Baedoo on the east side of the Niger, are countries known to us only by name. Walet, the capital of Beero, is reported to carry on a great trade in salt.

6. Bambarra, lately the most important state in Soudan, is now divided into two distinct kingdoms. Lower Bambarra, the last formed of the two, is governed by a Fellata chief. Jenne, the capital, is one of the most commercial towns in this part of Africa. Sego, the capital of Upper or Old Bambarra, stands on both sides of the river Niger, and is enclosed by a wall. The houses are built of clay, and whitewashed.

7. Timbuctoo lies 8 miles north of the river Niger. It has for a long time excited attention, from its supposed riches; and is the point at which most European travellers have aimed to arrive; but M. Caillié has dispelled the reputation it enjoyed for wealth and importance.

8. The Fellatas are the most powerful nation in Soudan. They are similar to the Foulahs; but are more warlike. They have conquered Houssa, the most civilized country in the interior; besides several small states on the Niger. Soccatoo, or Sackatoo, is their capital. Kano and Cashna are important cities in Houssa. Zegzeg is a fine fertile district, the capital of which is Zaria.

9. Boussa and Youri are considerable towns on the Niger. The former is the capital of Borgoo, a confederacy of states on that river; and Youri is the place at which Mr. Park lost his life. Nyffe and Yarriba are fertile and populous countries; the people of which are the most improved and industrious of all the Negro nations. Eyeo, the capital of Yarriba, is said to be 15 miles in circuit.

What occurred in 1822? In 1828? 5. Kaarta, &c.? 6. Bambarra? 7. Timbuctoo? 8. The Fellatas? 9. Boussa, &c.? 10. Bornou? 11. Begharmi? Darkulla? Mandara?

10. Bornou is is one of the most important states of Soudan. A considerable trade is carried on across the Sahara with Tripoli, in slaves, ivory, and ostrich feathers. Kanem, lying north of Lake Tchad, is dependent on Bornou; and furnishes to that state its bravest soldiers. Kouka is the capital of Bornou; Angornou is its largest town.

11. Begharmi, lying south-east of Lake Tchad, is often at war with Bornou. The cavalry of these nations cover themselves, and even their horses, in time of war, with iron armour, and fight with long spears. Darkulla is inhabited by a fierce Pagan race, called El Fellati, who fight with poisoned arrows. Mandara occupies a fine fertile valley containing several populous towns, of which Mora is the chief.

Map No. 25. How is Soudan bounded? What are its rivers? Nr., Yu., Sy., Ta., Bc.—How long is the first? What lakes are in Soudan? Td., Fe., Dc.—How long is the first? What Mts.? Kg., Mn.—What is the population of Sego? Jenne? Timbuctoo? Soccatoo? Kano? Zaria? Boussa? Bornou? Angornou?

— 213 —

AFRICAN ISLANDS.

1. Africa comprises a number of single islands and groups of islands, belonging chiefly to different European states; most of them are populous, and produce a variety of valuable commodities.

2. The Azores, or Western Isles, lie in the Atlantic ocean, about 1200 miles west from Portugal; they have a fine climate and good soil: the products are grain, wine, and fruits of various kinds. The chief towns are Ponte Delgada, in St. Michael's, and Angra, in Terceira: the latter is the capital of the whole group.

3. Madeira is a beautiful, healthful, and fertile island; it is a resort for invalids, and has been long celebrated for its excellent wines, the trade in which is less important than formerly. Funchal is the capital.

4. The Canary Islands are noted for their wines, fruits, and Canary birds. These islands contain numerous mountains, of which the most celebrated is the Peak of Teneriffe. Santa Cruz, in the island of Teneriffe, is the capital. Orotava is the largest town.

5. The Cape Verde Islands have a hot and unhealthful climate, and a dry and arid soil. Many of the inhabitants died of famine in 1831, from the effects of a long-continued drought. Fogo, one of the islands, contains an active volcano. Salt, goat-skins, and some cotton, are the chief articles of trade. The capital is Porto Praya.

6. Ascension Island was long uninhabited, and was famous for its

---

African Islands. Q.—1. What is said of the African continent? 2. Describe the Azores. 3. Madeira islands. 4. Canary islands. 5. Cape Verde Islands. 6. Ascension and St. Helena. 7. What does the Ethi-

turtle; it has now a small garrison. St. Helena is a high rocky island, and has but one harbour and town (Jamestown): it is noted for having been the residence of Napoleon Bonaparte for six years: he died there in May, 1821. In 1840, his remains were conveyed to France.

7. The Ethiopian Archipelago, situated on the eastern side of Africa, comprises Madagascar, the Mascarenha, Seychelle, Almirante, Comoro, and some other smaller islands.

8. Madagascar is the largest of the African islands. It has a healthful climate, a fertile soil, and is said to be rich in minerals. The inhabitants consist of Arabs, Malays, and Negroes. Some of these cultivate the ground, and are not destitute of arts: others are pirates, and commit depredations on the neighbouring islands.

9. Imerina, or the kingdom of the Ovahs, the most important state in this island, was founded by Radama. This prince patronized the missionaries, and endeavoured to civilize his subjects by introducing among them European arts and sciences. He was poisoned by his wife in 1828. Since his death, the kingdom has been the scene of anarchy and confusion. Tananarivou is the capital. Bombetok Bay, and the other bays and ports, are sometimes visited by American vessels.

10. Eastward from Madagascar are the Mascarenha Islands. These are Bourbon, and Mauritius or the Isle of France; both are well settled, fertile islands: coffee and sugar are the chief products. Mauritius is the scene of the inimitable tale of Paul and Virginia. Bourbon contains a volcano constantly burning, which serves at night as a lighthouse to mariners. Port Louis, in Mauritius, and St. Denis, in Bourbon, are the chief towns.

11. The Seychelle and Almirante Islands are a dependency of Mauritius: they produce cotton and cocoa-nuts. Mahe, on Mahe island, is the capital of the first-named group. The Comoro Isles are mountainous but fertile. The inhabitants have been nearly all extirpated by the ravages of the Madagascar pirates.

12. Monfia, Zanzibar, and Pemba, are fertile, well-settled islands, and belong to Muscat. Zanzibar, on the island of the same name, contains 50,000 inhabitants; it is the largest town in the dominions of the Sultan of Muscat. Socotra is subject to the Sultan of Keshin in Arabia, and is chiefly noted for the superior quality of its aloes.

Map No. 25. — Tell the population of the following islands, and the nations to which they belong: Azores, Madeira, Canary, Cape Verde, Ascension, St. Helena, Mauritius, Bourbon, Almirante, and Seychelle. Population of Madagascar? How long is it? Its northern cape? Ao.—Southern? S.-My.—How far from Madagascar to Australia? What islands west of Madagascar? Co.—What islands belong to Muscat? Pa., Zr., Ma.—What island belongs to Keshin?

---

opian Archipelago comprise? 8. What is said of Madagascar? 9. Imerina? 10. Describe the Mascarenha Islands. 11. The Seychelle, &c. Comoro. 12. Monfia, &c. Socotra.

— 214 —

Inhabitants of Oceanica.

OCEANICA.

1. Oceanica comprises the islands lying south of Asia, together with the greater part of those in the Pacific Ocean, situated between Asia and America. They form three great divisions: Malaysia, Australasia, and Polynesia.

2. It extends from north to south about 6200 miles, and from east to west 11,000 miles, and comprises almost a third part of the superficies of the globe. The land area is about one-eleventh part of the land surface of the earth.

3. The discovery of this quarter of the world commenced soon after America was known to Europeans. Magellan, the first navigator who sailed round the globe, passed through the strait which bears his name, more than 300 years ago, and crossed the Pacific Ocean in a direction from south-east to north-west.

4. After Magellan, the Spaniards, Dutch, and English, continued the progress of discovery. Of the latter, Captain James Cook contributed more to our knowledge of the islands in this quarter than any other individual. Since his time, numerous navigators and whalers, principally English, French, and Americans, have traversed the Pacific Ocean in every direction, and have probably left but little to be ex-

---

Oceanica. Q. — 1. Describe Oceanica. 2 Its extent. 3. What is said of its discovery, &c.? 4. What took place after Magellan? What

plored. In the year 1841 the American Exploring Expedition visited many of the islands in these seas.

5. The islands of Oceanica are situated principally within the tropics, and are exposed to a considerable degree of heat. The temperature, however, is various. Some of them enjoy a delightful climate, and are among the most favoured and fertile countries on the globe.

6. Nearly all the large islands are elevated. Some contain mountains of great altitude. Volcanoes are numerous, and occasionally cause dreadful ravages. The smaller islands are low, many of them scarcely rising above the surface of the water, and are often destitute of vegetation and inhabitants: some again are covered with groves of cocoanut and other trees, and are well peopled.

7. Most of the animals found in these islands are similar to those of the south of Asia; but there are several varieties peculiar to this quarter. The orang-outang abounds in Borneo, and the Malay tapir in Java and other islands. The kangaroo, emeu, duckbill, and black swan, exist only in Australia.

8. The natives of Oceanica are various in manners, customs, and condition. They consist, for the most part, of two distinct races, the Malays, or brown variety of the human family, and the Papuan, Oriental, or Melanesian Negroes.

9. The Malays are found in different stages of civilization, and comprise two distinct classes, nobles and slaves. Some of them are comparatively improved; others are extremely barbarous, and in many instances they are cannibals. The people of Polynesia are principally pagans; those of Malaysia are partly Mahomedans and partly pagans.

10. The Papuans constitute a variety of the black race, but are, for the most part, smaller in person, and not so dark in complexion, as the African negroes. They are generally destitute of clothing or dwellings, often live on the most disgusting food, and are supposed to have no definite ideas of a Supreme Being.

— 215 —

MALAYSIA.

1. Malaysia derives its name from the Malays, the most numerous people in this region. It is also called the East India Archipelago; and contains the islands of Sumatra, Java, and Borneo, usually called the Sunda Isles, together with the island of Celebes, the Moluccas, or Spice Islands, the Philippine Islands, and some smaller groups.

---

is said of Captain Cook? What has occurred since his time? In 1841? 5. What is said of the islands, &c.? 6. Larger islands? 7. Animals? 8. Natives of Oceanica? 9. The Malays? 10. Papuans?

Malaysia. Q.—1. What is said of Malaysia? What does it contain?

2. The climate of Malaysia is that of the torrid zone. The soil is productive, and yields in abundance the most exquisite spices and fruits. The clove, nutmeg, mace, cinnamon, and pepper, abound; also sugar, coffee, cotton, rice, tobacco, and indigo.

3. The commerce is extensive, and is carried on mostly by Europeans and Chinese. The latter, in their uncouth vessels, called junks, trade in great numbers to the different islands. Tripang, sea-slug, and edible birds'-nests, luxuries not in use among Europeans, form important articles of the traffic with China, where they bear a high price.

Malays capturing a European Vessel.

4. The Malays, the prevalent race in this region, are, generally, of a yellowish brown complexion. They are chiefly Mahomedans, and have a strong passion for gambling. Many of the Malays are pirates; they often surprise and capture European and other merchant-vessels. A number of Chinese emigrants have settled in various parts of Malaysia, and are noted for their industrious and quiet habits.

5. Sumatra, the most western of the Sunda Islands, is nearly equal in extent to our Middle and Eastern States united. It is divided into several petty native kingdoms; and is partly under the dominion of Holland. Some of the interior tribes are cannibals. Among the Battas, the punishment of several crimes, by their laws, is to be eaten alive. They also eat the prisoners they take in war.

6. Java is a fine fertile island, about three-fourths of which belongs to the Dutch; the remainder of the island is governed by two native princes, the emperor and the sultan. The natives are well acquainted with many arts. They carry on a lucrative trade with the Chinese.

---

2. What is said of the climate? 3. Commerce? 4. The Malays? 5

7. Batavia is the capital of Java, as well as of all the Dutch possessions in the East. It is a great commercial emporium. Samarang is the next important town. Djockokarta is the capital of the emperor's, and Surakarta of the sultan's dominions.

8. Eastward from Java are the Islands of Bally, Sumbawa, Floris, and Timor. Sumbawa is noted for its terrific volcano. Timor belongs jointly to the Dutch and the Portuguese. Banca is noted for its tin.

9. Borneo is one of the largest islands in the world. It is nearly four times larger than Great Britain. The interior is inhabited by ferocious, warlike tribes. Among one of these, the Dyaks, no one is considered a man, or can obtain a wife, until he can show the head of at least, one enemy, as a proof of his prowess. Gold and diamonds are found in Borneo. The principal trade is at Benjarmassin.

10. North-eastward from Borneo are the Sooloo Islands. The people are all noted pirates; they are the Algerines of the eastern seas. Celebes is a large, irregular-shaped island; the northern part is inhabited by the Bugis, and the southern by the Macassars. The women here mingle freely in all the affairs of life, and are even sometimes called to the throne. The town of Macassar belongs to the Dutch.

11. The Spice Islands, or Moluccas, produce the precious spices, cloves, nutmegs, and mace. Gilolo, Ceram, Bouro, Banda, and Amboyna, are the principal islands. Nassau, a small town on the island of Neira, is the residence of the Dutch governor.

12. The Philippine Islands comprise two large and a number of smaller islands. They are rich in natural resources, and furnish many valuable articles of commerce. These islands belong to Spain; but the inhabitants are chiefly of the native races, the Tagalas, Bisayas, &c. Among these nations are several small independent states.

13. Manilla, on the west side of the island of Luzon, is the capital of all the Spanish colonies in the East, and is a large and flourishing city. It is the centre of an extensive commerce, and its harbour is thronged with European, American, and Chinese vessels.

Map No. 28. — What great circle passes through the middle of Malaysia? Er. — In what zone is Malaysia? Td. — How long is Sumatra? Java? Celebes? Luzon? Mindanao? How long and wide is Borneo? What is the population of Sumatra? Java? Borneo? Celebes? Philippine Islands? Manilla? Batavia? Samarang? Acheen? Palambang? What strait separates Sumatra from Malacca? Ma. — Sumatra from Java? Sa. — Borneo from Celebes? Mr. — How wide are the straits of Sunda?

Sumatra? 6. Java? The natives? 7. Batavia, &c.? 8. Bally, &c? 9 Borneo, &c.? 10. Sooloo Is.? 11. Spice Is.? 12. Philippine Is.? 13. Manilla?

— 216 —

Convicts landing at Botany Bay.

AUSTRALASIA.

1. Australasia comprises a number of islands lying south-eastward from Malaysia: of these, Australia or new Holland, New Guinea, and New Zealand, are the most extensive. The inhabitants are chiefly Papuan Negroes, and rank among the lowest of the human family.

2. Australia, formerly called New Holland, is the largest island in the world. It is now a part of the British Empire. New South Wales, North Australia, South Australia, and West Australia, are its chief divisions. The Blue Mountains are the highest range, and the Murray the largest river, yet discovered.

Native on his Log.

3. The aborigines of Australia are very rude and degraded: those in the interior exist on roots, grubs, worms, and what they kill in the chase. Those on the coast live mostly on fishing, yet their canoes are of the rudest description. Some are merely a large piece of bark folded and tied up at each end, and some only a log, on which they sit and guide with their hands.

Australasia. Q.—1. What is said of Australasia? 2. Australia? Its three great divisions, &c.? 3. Describe the aborigines. 4. Botany

4. In the south-east part of Australia is the Botany Bay Colony founded in 1787: to this place many thousand criminals have been transported from Great Britain. The bulk of the population is, however, formed of free settlers: to these the convicts are apportioned as labourers during the period for which they were sentenced.

5. The Colony extends along the coast about 300 miles: it is divided into counties, and contains several towns. The country is better adapted for grazing than tillage; sheep are abundant, and their wool forms a large part of the exports: wheat, Indian corn, and potatoes, are the principal products. Sydney, the capital, has a good harbour, with considerable commerce.

6. In West Australia is the Swan River Colony; in which no great improvement has yet taken place. South Australia and Port Philip district, in the south, are flourishing colonies. Adelaide is the chief town of the first named, and Melbourne of the last.

7. Van Diemen's Land, or Tasmania, settled in 1804, is nearly equal in size to South Carolina. The climate of this island is cooler, but the productions are nearly the same as in the other colonies. About one-third of the population are convicts. Hobarton is the capital.

8. New Zealand comprises two large and one small island. The area of the whole somewhat exceeds that of the State of Virginia. The soil is fertile, and produces Indian-corn, wheat, yams, potatoes, and a species of strong and serviceable flax.

9. The natives are a well-formed race, varying in complexion from a chesnut colour to a dingy white. They were, until recently, very warlike and ferocious, and were all cannibals. Tattooing was general, and the faces of the chiefs were almost entirely covered over with figures of various kinds. The New Zealanders make good sailors, and many of them now serve on board merchantmen in that capacity.

New Zealand Chief.

10. In the northern island the exertions of the missionaries have produced an important change: 35,000 of the population now profess the gospel, 15,000 are in the schools, and there are 300 native preachers. New Zealand is annexed to the British empire. The towns of Auckland, Wellington, and New Plymouth, all on the northern island, have been founded by British colonists: the first named is the capital.

11. Papua, or New Guinea, is believed to be one of the most fertile countries in the world, but the interior has never been explored. Louisiade, New Britain, New Ireland, Solomon's Archipelago, the New Hebrides, and New Caledonia, occupy the N. E. part of Australasia,

---

Bay Colony. 5. What is said of it? Country, &c.? 6. Swan River Colony? South Australia? 7. Van Diemen's Land? 8. New Zealand? 9. What is said of tattooing? 10. Of Papua, &c.? Louisiade, &c.?

and are but little known. The inhabitants, like all savages, are divided into petty tribes, and are at constant war with each other.

12. About 2000 miles south of Australia is the Antarctic Continent discovered, in the year 1840, by the American Exploring Expedition, commanded by Lieutenant C. Wilkes. Nearly about the same distance south of New Zealand is Victoria Land, discovered in 1841, by Captain J. C. Ross, of the British navy. (See Map No. 3.)

Map No. 28.—What great circle forms the north boundary of Australasia? Er.—What tropic crosses Australia? Cn.—In what zones is Australasia? Td., S.-Te.—How long and wide are Australia and Van Diemen's Land? How long are New Guinea and the two largest islands of New Zealand? What strait separates Australia and New Guinea? Ts.—Australia and Van Diemen's land? Bs.—How wide are they? What island is inhabited by convicts from New South Wales? Nk.—What is the population of the Botany Bay Colony? Van Diemen's Land? South Australia? New Hebrides? New Caledonia? Swan River Colony? Sydney? Hobarton? How far is it from Hobarton to London? To New York? Name the New Zealand Isles.*

— 217 —

Sandwich Islanders burning an Idol.

POLYNESIA.

1. Polynesia comprises the islands situated in the Pacific Ocean, between Malaysia, Australasia, and South America. Its climate is similar to that of the West Indies, but is more mild and regular.

Polynesia. Q.—1. Describe Polynesia. 2. Products. 3. The peo-

* See the account on Map 28, near New Zéaland.

2. The chief products are the bread-fruit, yam, taro root, sweet potato, plantain, banana, and cocoa-nut, besides various fruits, comprising oranges, limes, citrons, pine-apples, figs, &c.

3. The people of Polynesia are often called the South Sea Islanders; they are in general mild and gentle, yet fierce and warlike when stimulated by interest or revenge; and their wars have been carried on with such ferocity, that some islands have been entirely depopulated. The cruel customs of sacrificing human beings, eating human flesh, and the murder of infants, were common, and were sanctioned by their native religion.

4. The Ladrone Islands were the first known to Europeans of and in this region, having been discovered by Magellan in 1521. The original inhabitants have been nearly all exterminated by the Spaniards. The Caroline Islands are situated in a tempestuous ocean, and exposed to furious hurricanes. Both these groups belong nominally to Spain.

5. The Sandwich Islands are the most important of this region. Hawaii, or Owhyhee, the largest of the group, is nearly the size of Connecticut. The people, in 1819, destroyed their idols, and in the following year the Christian religion was introduced by American missionaries.

6 A large proportion of the inhabitants have been taught reading, writing, and arithmetic, by the missionaries. Churches have been erected: the press is established, and the Scriptures, school-books, newspapers, &c., are printed in the language of the country.

7. The town of Honolulu, in the island of Oahu, is the capital of the Sandwich Islands; it contains about 7000 inhabitants, of whom 300 are Americans and English. Many American and European ships are always in port: some small vessels belong to the natives. Laheina, on the island of Maui, is also a considerable town.

8. The Mendana Archipelago comprises the Marquesas and Washington islands: they are very fertile, and furnish food to the inhabitants almost without labour; the people are among the most finely formed of any known race, and are but little darker than Southern Europeans. They are now, or were very recently, cannibals. The Marquesas Islands have been taken possession of by the French.

9. The Society and Georgian Islands were the first in Polynesia of which the inhabitants embraced Christianity. Eimeo is the chief station of the English missionaries. Otaheite, or Tahiti, the largest of the Georgian Islands, is governed by a queen. Papeta is the capital. Dancing, once the chief amusement of the people, was performed on all occasions of pleasure, worship, state, or ceremony, but is now less practised.

10. The Pearl or Paumotu Islands comprise an extensive range of small islands; they are but little known, and many are uninhabited. The Austral, Hervey, and Palliser Islands are situated at various distances from Otaheite; the people speak a language similar to that of the Otaheitans, and have all been converted by the missionaries.

---

ple, &c. 4. Ladrone. Caroline. 5. Sandwich Islands. 6. What has been done by the missionaries? 7. Honolulu? 8. Mendana Archipelago? 9. Society and Georgian Is.? 10. Pearl? Austral, &c.?

Otaheitan Dance.

11. The Friendly Islands comprise the Navigator's, Tonga, Hapai, and Feejee islands; the inhabitants of the latter are the most ferocious and savage of any in Polynesia; they are large and muscular, and of very dark complexion. In the Tonga and Habaai islands, a great number of children are instructed in the schools; and many of the natives are church members.

12. Pitcairn's Island is settled by the descendants of the mutineers of the ship Bounty; the inhabitants are an amiable, religious, and moral people, and speak the English language. The Central Archipelago, the archipelagoes of Magellan and Anson, and the Bonin group, are composed of a number of small islands; they are but little known, and are seldom visited.

Map No. 28.—What great circles pass through Polynesia? T.-Cr., Er., T.-Cn.—What zones is Polynesia in? N.-Te., Td., S.-Te.—What is the population of the Sandwich Islands? Washington Is.? Marquesas Is.? Society and Georgian Is.? Paumotu Is.? Cook's Is.? Austral Is.? Navigator's Is.? Vavou? Hapai Is.? Tonga Is.? Feejee Is.? Gambier Is.? Pitcairn's Is.? Easter Is.? How far is it from the Sandwich Islands to London? To New York? To the coast of Mexico? To the Columbia River? To China? From the Marquesas to the coast of Peru? What islands have been converted to the Christian religion? Which have been partially converted? How many miles does the Pacific Ocean extend from east to west? From north to south?

---

11. Friendly Islands? Tonga, &c.? 12. Pitcairn's Island? Central Archipelago, &c.? Bonin Islands?

THE END.

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: April 2015

PreservationTechnologies
A WORLD LEADER IN COLLECTIONS PRESERVATION
111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 019 895 402 0